EMORY UNIVERSITY

INSTITUTIONAL REVIEW BOARD

POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

9/22/2015

Emory University
1599 Clifton Road, 5th Floor - Atlanta, Georgia 30322
Tel: 404.712.0720 - Fax: 404.727.1358 - Email: irb@emory.edu - Web:
http://www.emory.edu/irb
An equal opportunity, affirmative action university
EMORY UNIVERSITY STANDARD POLICY FORMAT COVER SHEET

POLICY: EMORY UNIVERSITY INSTITUTIONAL REVIEW BOARD (IRB)

POLICIES AND PROCEDURES (P&PS)

RESPONSIBLE OFFICIAL: INSTITUTIONAL OFFICIAL

ADMINISTERING OFFICE: IRB OFFICE

LAST REVISION: SEPTEMBER 22, 2015

POLICY SECTIONS: SEE TABLE OF CONTENTS

OVERVIEW: POLICIES APPLICABLE TO HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH CONDUCTED UNDER THE AUSPICES OF EMORY UNIVERSITY.

APPLICABILITY: University-Wide

POLICY DETAILS: See specific P&P Sections.

DEFINITIONS: Included within specific P&Ps and within P&Ps' Glossary.

RELATED LINKS: http://www.irb.emory.edu

CONTACT INFORMATION:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Contact</th>
<th>Phone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clarification of Policy</td>
<td>IRB Director</td>
<td>404-712-0720</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. **EMORY UNIVERSITY HUMAN RESEARCH PROTECTION PROGRAM & DEFINED TERMS**  
2. **PRINCIPLES GOVERNING EMORY HRPP**  
3. **INSTITUTIONAL AUTHORITY**  
4. **FEDERALWIDE ASSURANCE (FWA)**  
5. **ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES UNDER THE EMORY HRPP**  
6. **NUMBER OF IRBS AND REGISTRATION**  
7. **ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR ENSURING ADEQUATE RESOURCES TO PROTECT HUMAN SUBJECTS**  
8. **APPLICABILITY OF STATE LAW**  
9. **EMORY UNIVERSITY IRB OFFICE**  
10. **EMORY IRB P&PS**  
11. **AUTHORITY AND RESPONSIBILITY OF THE EMORY IRB**  
12. **JURISDICTION OF THE EMORY IRB**  
13. **EMORY IRB RELATIONSHIPS WITH OTHER REGULATORY COMMITTEES**  
14. **EMORY IRB COORDINATION WITH OTHER UNIVERSITY COMPLIANCE ENTITIES**  
15. **EMORY IRB RELATIONSHIPS WITH OTHER INSTITUTIONS; RELIANCE ARRANGEMENT FOR IRB REVIEW**  
16. **LOCAL RESEARCH CONTEXT; RESEARCH CONDUCTED AT NON-EMORY SITES**  
17. **HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH AT THE ATLANTA VETERANS AFFAIRS MEDICAL CENTER (AVAMC)/ATLANTA RESEARCH AND EDUCATION FOUNDATION (AREF)**  
18. **DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD) SUPPORTED RESEARCH**  
19. **EMORY IRB ADMINISTRATION AND OFFICIALS**  
20. **SUBCOMMITTEES OF THE EMORY IRB**  
21. **CONDUCT OF QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY IMPROVEMENT ACTIVITIES FOR EMORY IRB OPERATIONS**  
22. **IRB MEMBERSHIP**
<p>| 23 | ORIENTATION AND EDUCATION FOR IRB CHAIRS, MEMBERS, AND STAFF | 87 |
| 24 | IRB MEMBER LIABILITY, INSURANCE AND INDEMNIFICATION | 90 |
| 25 | CONSULTANTS AND AD HOC REVIEWERS | 91 |
| 26 | CONFIDENTIALITY OBLIGATIONS FOR IRB OFFICIALS, MEMBERS, CONSULTANTS, STAFF, &amp; GUESTS | 93 |
| 27 | DOCUMENTATION AND RECORD RETENTION | 95 |
| 28 | IRB PROTOCOL TRIAGE AND ASSIGNMENT OF REVIEW CATEGORY | 100 |
| 29 | DETERMINATIONS OF ENGAGEMENT IN HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH OR CLINICAL INVESTIGATION | 102 |
| 30 | EXEMPT RESEARCH | 106 |
| 31 | EXPEDITED REVIEW | 111 |
| 32 | FULL COMMITTEE REVIEW | 116 |
| 33 | IRB MEETINGS | 118 |
| 34 | MINUTES OF AN IRB MEETING | 123 |
| 35 | CONFLICTS OF INTEREST – INVESTIGATORS | 126 |
| 36 | CONFLICTS OF INTEREST ON THE PART OF IRB MEMBERS AND IRB STAFF | 129 |
| 37 | INDEPENDENCE OF EMORY IRB WITH RESPECT TO INSTITUTIONAL AND INVESTIGATOR INFLUENCE | 132 |
| 38 | POSSIBLE IRB ACTIONS ON HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH PROTOCOLS | 134 |
| 39 | CONTINUING REVIEW | 142 |
| 40 | PROTOCOL MODIFICATIONS (AMENDMENTS) | 146 |
| 41 | CLOSURE OF PROTOCOLS | 150 |
| 42 | CRITERIA FOR EMORY IRB APPROVAL OF RESEARCH | 151 |
| 43 | INFORMED CONSENT | 155 |
| 44 | INFORMED CONSENT OF NON-ENGLISH SPEAKING SUBJECTS | 162 |
| 45 | LEGALLY AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVES AND SURROGATE CONSENT | 165 |
| 46 | WAIVER OF DOCUMENTATION OF INFORMED CONSENT | 168 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>WAIVER OR ALTERATION OF INFORMED CONSENT FOR <em>RESEARCH</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>WAIVERS OF, AND EXCEPTIONS FROM, INFORMED CONSENT FOR PLANNED EMERGENCY RESEARCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>CONSENT MONITORING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>DATA AND SAFETY MONITORING PLANS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>REVIEW OF RESEARCH PROTOCOLS INVOLVING VULNERABLE POPULATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td><em>RESEARCH INVOLVING CHILDREN</em> – ADDITIONAL PROTECTIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td><em>RESEARCH INVOLVING WARDS OF THE STATE</em> – ADDITIONAL PROTECTIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td><em>RESEARCH INVOLVING PRISONERS</em> – ADDITIONAL PROTECTIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td><em>RESEARCH INVOLVING PREGNANT WOMEN, HUMAN FETUSES AND NEONATES</em> – ADDITIONAL PROTECTIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td><em>RESEARCH INVOLVING PERSONS WITH MENTAL DISABILITIES OR PERSONS WITH IMPAIRED DECISION-MAKING CAPACITY</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>REQUIREMENTS FOR <em>RESEARCH INVOLVING HUMAN EMBRYONIC STEM CELLS, GERM CELLS, STEM CELL-DERIVED TEST ARTICLES AND THE TRANSPLANTATION OF HUMAN FETAL TISSUE FOR THERAPEUTIC PURPOSES</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>COMPLAINTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>COMMUNICATION CHANNELS FOR HUMAN SUBJECTS ABOUT RESEARCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>REVIEW OF INSTANCES OF NON-COMPLIANCE FOR DETERMINATION OF SERIOUS OR CONTINUING NON-COMPLIANCE AND REPORTING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>PROTOCOL OVERSIGHT AND PROCEDURES FOR HANDLING AUDITS AND VIOLATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>SUSPENSIONS AND TERMINATIONS OF PREVIOUSLY APPROVED RESEARCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>REPORTING TO GOVERNMENTAL REGULATORY AUTHORITIES, SPONSORS, AND INSTITUTIONAL PERSONNEL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>USING FDA-REGULATED PRODUCTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>INVESTIGATIONAL MEDICAL DEVICES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>EMERGENCY USE OF INVESTIGATIONAL MEDICAL DEVICES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>TREATMENT USE (“COMPASSIONATE USE”) OF INVESTIGATIONAL DEVICES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>HUMANITARIAN USE DEVICES: EXEMPTIONS &amp; USES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>INVESTIGATIONAL NEW DRUGS (OTHER THAN EXPANDED ACCESS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>INVESTIGATIONAL NEW DRUGS - EXPANDED ACCESS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>SPONSOR-INVESTIGATOR DRUG SAFETY REPORTING OBLIGATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>INVESTIGATOR SAFETY INFORMATION REPORTING OBLIGATIONS TO IRB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>REPORTING TO EMMORY IRB OF PROTOCOL DEVIATIONS/PROTOCOL NON-COMPLIANCE; NON-COMPLIANCE WITH APPLICABLE LAWS, REGULATIONS, OR IRB POLICIES AND PROCEDURES; AND REPORTS REQUIRED BY PROTOCOL OR CONTRACT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>HIPAA AND OTHER APPLICABLE PRIVACY LAWS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>RESEARCH DATA AND/OR SPECIMEN REPOSITORIES CONTAINING PHI – HIPAA REQUIREMENTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>CERTIFICATES OF CONFIDENTIALITY &amp; INCLUDING RESEARCH INFORMATION IN THE MEDICAL RECORD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>MANDATORY REPORTING TO LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCIES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>RECRUITMENT OF SUBJECTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>PAYMENT OF SUBJECTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>EMMORY UNIVERSITY AND OTHER STUDENTS AS SUBJECTS - INCLUDING DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION REQUIREMENTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>EMMORY EMPLOYEES AS SUBJECTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>INVESTIGATOR QUALIFICATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>RESEARCH CONDUCTED BY STUDENTS AND TRAINEES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>IRB REVIEW OF ORAL HISTORY PROJECTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>GENETIC STUDIES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>COLLECTION, PROCESSING AND/OR BANKING OF HUMAN RESEARCH SUBJECTS SPECIMENS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>RESEARCH INVOLVING CODED PRIVATE INFORMATION OR BIOLOGICAL SPECIMENS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 EMORY UNIVERSITY HUMAN RESEARCH PROTECTION PROGRAM & DEFINED TERMS

POLICY:

Emory University has established a Human Research Protection Program (Emory HRPP) to safeguard and promote the health and welfare of human research subjects by ensuring that their rights, safety and well-being are protected.

DEFINED TERMS: All defined terms used in this document are capitalized and in bold Italic typeface. Complete definitions of defined terms as well as any acronyms used herein, are set forth in the Glossary at the end of this document.

PROCEDURES:

Mission of Emory University HRPP: Emory University fosters a Research environment that promotes the respect for the rights and welfare of individuals recruited for, or participating in, Research conducted by or under the auspices of Emory University. Emory University is guided by applicable laws, regulations and principles in its review and conduct of Human Subjects Research. To fulfill this mission, Emory University has established a Human Research Protection Program.

The mission of the Emory HRPP is:

- To safeguard and promote the dignity and well-being of participants in research conducted at or by Emory by assuring their rights, safety and welfare are protected;
- To provide timely and high quality review and monitoring of human subjects research; and
- To facilitate excellence in human subjects research by providing accurate guidance and education to Emory investigators, IRB members, and research officials.
- To ensure compliance with all regulatory and ethical obligations involved in Human Subjects Research conducted at or by Emory.

The HRPP is a multi-tiered program involving the administration of the University, the Institutional Official, the Institutional Review Board, other research administrative and compliance offices, investigators and research support staff.

The HRPP includes mechanisms to:

- Establish a formal process to monitor, evaluate and continually improve the protection of human research participants.
- Dedicate resources sufficient to do so.
- Educate investigators and research staff about their ethical responsibility to protect research participants.
- When appropriate, intervene in research and/or respond directly to concerns of research participants.

Institutional Authority: The Emory HRPP operates under the authority of Emory University IRB.
Policies & Procedures, which govern the conduct and review of all human research conducted under the auspices of Emory University. These P&Ps are made available to all Emory University investigators, staff, and the general public at the Emory IRB website: http://www.irb.emory.edu.

Governing Laws, Regulations and Principles: The Emory HRPP is established pursuant to and in accordance with the laws, regulations and principles listed below regarding the protection of Human Subjects. Emory University will adhere to these laws, regulations and principles with regard to Research conducted by or under its auspices:

The Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) policy and regulations at 45 CFR Part 46, also known as the Federal Policy for the Protection of Human Subjects or the “Common Rule” (collectively referred to in this document as the “HHS Regulations,” found at http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/policy/common.html;

Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulations at 21 CFR Parts 51 and 56 (collectively referred to in this document as the “FDA Regulations,” found at http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/reg-2.html;

The principles (i.e., respect for persons, beneficence and justice) set forth in the Ethical Principles and Guidelines for the Protection of Human Subjects of Research (collectively referred to in this document as the “Belmont Report,” found at http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/humansubjects/guidance/belmont.htm;

The Department of Veterans Affairs policies for Human Subjects Research protection, including the regulations at 38 CFR Part 16 and the VHA Handbook Section 1200.05 (collectively referred to in this document as the “VA Regulations,” found at http://www.access.gpo.gov/nara/cfr/waisidx_98/38cfr16_98.html and http://www.va.gov/vhapublications/ViewPublication.asp?pub_ID=3052 respectively) for Research involving the Atlanta Veterans Administration Medical Center (AVAMC) or Atlanta Research & Education Foundation (AREF);

For projects subject to a DOD Addendum, any DOD Requirements.

All other applicable federal, state and local laws and regulations.

Agreement to Abide by Principles and Regulations:
Emory University agrees to uphold the ethical principles of the Belmont Report and to abide by all requirements of the applicable HHS, FDA, DOD and VA Regulations. In this regard, Emory University has charged the Emory IRB with carrying out all responsibilities of a duly constituted Institutional Review Board as set forth in these governing regulations and principles. Emory University agrees to provide the Emory IRB with meeting space and sufficient staff and resources to support its review, oversight, record-keeping and other duties.

Provision of Resources: Emory University is committed to providing adequate staff, physical space, and resources to adequately maintain and operate the Emory HRPP, including the IRB. The IO is tasked with evaluating the needs of the Emory HRPP, including the IRB and the IRB Office, and ensuring that they are provided with adequate resources, including staff, legal
counsel, meeting and office space, equipment and supplies (e.g., copiers, office supplies, computers, internet access, etc.) and financial resources for conducting IRB business such as carrying out the HRPP education program, identifying and managing conflicts of interest, carrying out the HRPP quality improvement plan and community outreach activities. The resources provided for the Emory HRPP shall be reviewed and evaluated during the university’s annual budget review process. Modifications to resources required to support IRB operations shall be made as necessary.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR §§ 46.103(b)(1)-(2); 46.109; 46.111 & 46.112
21 CFR Parts 50 and 56, including 21 CFR §§ 56.109 & 56.112
38 CFR Part 16, including 38 CFR §§ 16.103(b)(1) – (2); 16.1-09; 16.111; 16.112 & VHA Handbook Section 1200.05

For defined terms, see specific regulatory references above for each term.
2 PRINCIPLES GOVERNING EMORY HRPP

POLICY:

The Emory HRPP (including the Emory IRB) is guided by the ethical principles set forth in the Belmont Report regarding Human Subjects Research. All institutional and non-institutional Research performance sites for Emory University will be obligated by Emory University to conform to ethical principles which are at least equivalent to those of Emory University (i.e., the Belmont Report principles) or as may be determined by the Secretary of HHS hereinafter the “HHS Secretary.”

PROCEDURES:

Principles Considered by the Emory IRB in Reviewing Research: It is the duty of the Emory IRB to review and make decisions on all protocols for all Human Subjects Research. The primary responsibility of the Emory IRB is the protection of Human Subjects from undue risk and from deprivation of personal rights and dignity. This protection is best assured by consideration of the three principles of the Belmont Report, which are the touchstone of ethical Research:

- **Respect for Persons:** That voluntary participation by the Human Subjects, indicated by free and informed consent, is assured;

- **Beneficence:** That an appropriate balance exists between the potential benefits of the Research to the Human Subject or to society and the risks assumed by the Human Subject; and

- **Justice:** That there are fair procedures and outcomes in the selection of Research subjects.

Implementation of Belmont Report Principles by the Emory IRB in its Review of Research – Respect for Persons:

The Emory IRB shall implement this principle by striving to ensure voluntary informed consent of Human Subjects through careful review of the recruitment and consent process and of the consent form or information sheet to be used with Human Subjects. The assurance of voluntary informed consent is one of the most important elements in any Research involving Human Subjects. Any person who is to be a Human Subject in a study, whether the study is designed for his/her own direct benefit or for the advancement of scientific knowledge in general, must understand as completely as possible what is to be done and what the potential risks and benefits are. The person must give his/her consent freely without pressure or inappropriate inducement.

The Emory IRB shall extend the informed consent concept to those studies in which the subjects are not able to give personal consent for themselves. In these instances, the consent document is addressed to those who have been designated responsible for the Human Subject’s well being (e.g., parents of Children). The Emory IRB’s concern is to verify that the consent process and document are likely to assist these persons to make
an informed decision, which is in the best interest of the Human Subject.

The Emory IRB shall consider the nature of the study population in determining the capacity of that population for truly informed and voluntary participation in Research. At one extreme, there may be ample understanding and manifest freedom from coercion; at the other, there may be degrees of understanding and freedom that affect the consent of potential subjects. The Emory IRB must exercise special care when considering subjects whose ability to give free and informed consent may be compromised in any way and ensure that additional safeguards are completed as appropriate.

Implementation of Belmont Principles by the Emory IRB in its Review of Research – Beneficence

The Emory IRB shall implement this principle by examining the risk-benefit ratio of the Research it is reviewing. The IRB is charged with deciding for any proposed activity which falls under its jurisdiction, whether, “[r]isks to subjects are reasonable in relation to anticipated benefits, if any, to subject and the importance of the knowledge that may reasonably be expected to result.” [45 CFR Section 46.111(a)(2)].

In assessing the risk-benefit relation, the Emory IRB may include consideration of the following factors: (a) risks of injury or discomfort to the individual that can be physical; psychological and/or social; and (b) potential benefits to the individual, a group to which the individual belongs and/or to society. In reviewing Research protocols, the IRB must carefully assess the types and degrees of both risks and benefits for a given subject population, as well as the investigator’s communication of these risks and benefits in the consent process and form.

While the Emory IRB is not charged with reviewing scientific design of Research per se, it must sometimes do so in order to assess the risk/benefit ratio. If a study’s design does not seem adequate to attain the stated aim of the study, then no benefit can be anticipated from conducting the study, and there is no justification for placing any Human Subject at risk, however, minimal. Thus the design of the study must be sound and the nature and likelihood of all risks and benefits must be made clear in any application to the IRB.

Implementation of Belmont Principles by the Emory IRB in its Review of Research – Justice

The Emory IRB shall implement this principle by ensuring that the Research involves a fair selection of Human Subjects through a fair (a) sharing of Research risks and (b) sharing of Research benefits. Both the risks and potential benefits of Research should be spread fairly among potential individual Research subjects and Research subject groups. Study design and selection of subjects should avoid bias for or against particular social, racial, sexual, or ethnic groups.

Sharing Research Risks: The guiding principle in the ethical selection of Research subject groups is that any risks of the Research should fall upon the groups who might benefit from the Research. If the results of a risky protocol might benefit the general
population, it would be unethical to focus subject recruitment on vulnerable or disadvantaged groups (e.g., institutionalized people or Prisoners; or patients at free clinics primarily patronized by people unable to afford other medical care) simply because they are easily accessible or can be persuaded to participate. An undue share of Research risks also should not burden groups already burdened by other factors. Rather attempts should be made to include a fair sampling of the populations who might benefit from the study. When Research involves persons whose autonomy is compromised, it is expected that the Research bear some direct relationship to the conditions or circumstances of the Research subject population. In addition, groups fully able to consider Research risks and informed consent should be asked to face Research risks before more Vulnerable Populations. For example, Investigational Drugs are usually tested in Adults before they are tested in Children. Certain Investigational Drugs and procedures may be tested in healthy volunteers before being tested in patients.

Sharing Research Benefits: The Emory IRB should consider the desires of various groups to be included in Research. As individuals, and through advocacy groups, many patients have come to insist on having access to experimental treatments, as these experimental treatments may potentially provide the best medical care available. In addition, Researchers, ethicists and public officials have recognized that because many clinical trials focused primarily on white middle-class Research subject groups, the results of some trials were of questionable value to members of other social, racial, sexual and ethnic groups. As a result both the National Institutes of Health (NIH) and FDA now require that study design include as broad a range of Research subjects as feasible and the data be analyzed to uncover responses that differ between groups. Whereas women of child-bearing potential, Pregnant Women, and nursing women previously were routinely excluded from new drug trials, it is now required that whenever possible these women be asked to make their own choices regarding participation after being fully informed of the risks of the Research.

Ethical principles from other sources (e.g., International Conference on Harmonization) may also be applied to research covered by the HRPP, for example:

- To an individual protocol because its particular circumstances raise a type of ethical issue that most other protocols do not
- When they are recognized by the federal or other funding source or the state or country where the research will occur
- When they have been developed for specific areas or types of subjects (e.g., embryos and fetal tissue, illiterate subjects)

In general, when Sponsor terms and conditions require application of another set of ethical principles, specifically ICH-GCP, the Emory office reviewing the contract attempts to remove the requirement, and if the terms and conditions remain, that office will alert the IRB.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR § 46.111(a)(2)
45 CFR § 56.111
3 INSTITUTIONAL AUTHORITY

POLICY:

The President of Emory University has the power and authority to designate the individual within the University who may serve as the Institutional Official (IO) responsible for carrying out Emory University’s Human Research Protections Program (HRPP). The person designated as Institutional Official must meet the qualifications set forth in these IRB Policies & Procedures (P&Ps). The President of Emory University has designated the Emory IRB as the body within Emory University that has jurisdiction over all Human Subjects Research conducted under the auspices of Emory University.

PROCEDURES:

Appointment of the Institutional Official (IO): The President of Emory University shall appoint the IO in writing. As of the effective date of these P&Ps, the President of Emory University has appointed the person named in Appendix 1 to serve as the IO. This Appendix 1 shall be updated by the IRB Director as necessary to reflect any changes in this appointment.

Qualifications of the IO: In order to be eligible for appointment as the IO, an individual must be an employee of Emory University who holds a position within the University per which he/she has the legal authority to act and speak for Emory University as a whole, and per which he/she can ensure that Emory IRB will effectively fulfill its Research oversight functions.

Term of Appointment of the IO: The IO shall serve in this position, until the earlier of the date on which:

- The IO leaves Emory University;
- The IO no longer has the ability or capacity to fulfill the role of IO;
- The President of Emory University, at his/her discretion, requests the IO's resignation and appoints a new IO; or
- Until IO tenders a resignation from the position and the President appoints a new IO. Resignation shall be required at any time at which the IO does not meet the qualifications for holding this position.

Designation of Emory IRB: The President of Emory University has designated the Emory IRB as the body within Emory University that has jurisdiction over all Human Subjects Research conducted under the auspices of Emory University, as described in the provision immediately below entitled Human Subjects Research Subject to Emory IRB Authority.

Human Subjects Research Subject to Emory IRB Authority: The Human Subjects Research under the auspices of Emory University that is subject to the authority of the Emory IRB includes:
**Human Subjects Research** conducted at Emory University;

**Human Subjects Research** conducted by or under the direction of any employee or agent of Emory University in connection with his/her institutional responsibility;

**Human Subjects Research** conducted by students of Emory University in connection with their institutional responsibilities;

**Human Subjects Research** conducted by or under the direction of any employee or agent of Emory University using any property or facility of Emory University or involving Emory University non-public information to identify or contact **Human Subjects**.

**Institutions In Addition to Emory University that Rely on the Emory University IRB:**

Per specific, written agreements with Emory University, other institutions may rely on the Emory University IRB and are thereby subject to these P&Ps.

The Emory IRB provides review for **Human Subjects Research** conducted at the AVAMC under the **AVAMC Memorandum of Understanding**.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR §§ 46.103(b)(1)-(2); 46.109; 46.111; & 46.112.

21 CFR Parts 50 and 56, including 21 CFR §§ 56.109; 56.111 & 56.112.

4 FEDERALWIDE ASSURANCE (FWA)

POLICY:

Emory University holds a Federalwide Assurance (FWA) #5792, approved by the Office for Human Research Protections (OHRP). The terms of the FWA apply whenever Emory becomes engaged in Human Subjects Research that is conducted or supported by any U.S. department or agency that has adopted the requirements set forth at 45 CFR Part 46 (the “Common Rule”), unless the Research is otherwise exempt from the Common Rule requirements or the federal department or agency conducting or supporting the Research determines that the Research shall be conducted under a separate assurance. All activities of the Emory IRB regarding any Human Subjects Research that is covered by the Common Rule, as set forth above, are governed by and subject to the terms and conditions of the FWA. With regard to Human Subjects Research that is not conducted or supported by any U.S. department or agency that has adopted the Common Rule, Emory applies the standards and requirements of its internal Human Research Protections Program.

The Emory FWA and its terms are integral to the Emory HRPP. The terms of the FWA can be found on the OHRP website at:
http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/humansubjects/assurance/filasurt.htm

Emory has a Department of Defense (DOD) Addendum to its FWA. This DOD Addendum contains general requirements that apply to research conducted by or at Emory that is conducted or supported by a DOD component that utilizes this Addendum (i.e., Navy, Marine Corps, Air Force, DOD). Emory’s DOD Addendum contains requirements specific to the Department of the Navy, the DOD component that issued the Addendum and conducts/supports the research covered by the Addendum. Research supported by any other DOD component is subject to that component’s specific requirements.

PROCEDURES:

Information Regarding the Emory FWA: Emory holds FWA 5792. Current information regarding the Emory FWA can be found at the following OHRP website:
http://ohrp.cit.nih.gov/search/

Contact Information at OHRP Regarding the FWA: Contact information for OHRP personnel responsible for processing FWAs and answering related questions can be found at the following OHRP website:
http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/daqistaff.html#staff

Emory’s Execution of the FWA: The Emory University FWA, and any modifications or amendments thereto, shall be executed by the IO.

Emory’s Agreement to Terms of FWA: Emory University, including the Emory IRB, is subject to and agrees to abide by the Terms of Assurance required by the OHRP. The Emory IRB agrees to
provide oversight to Human Subjects Research conducted or supported by a U.S. department or agency that has adopted the Common Rule that is carried out under its jurisdiction and it shall provide this oversight in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Emory FWA. In addition, for DOD supported research, Emory University shall adhere to the terms and conditions of the DOD Addendum.

**Emory University-Related Components Covered by the Emory FWA:** The components of Emory University that are covered by the Emory FWA are as follows: Emory University and Emory Healthcare. The IO must grant approval to any additions or withdrawals of the components covered by the Emory FWA.

The IRB Director shall be responsible for filing any necessary documentation with Office of Human Research Protections (OHRP) for the addition/withdrawal of a component from the Emory FWA.

**Other Institutions that Rely on the Emory FWA:** Per agreement with Emory University, all institutions that rely on the Emory FWA are subject to the terms thereof and to these P&Ps.

**Emory FWA Renewal:** The Emory FWA must be renewed every thirty-six months, even if no changes have occurred, in order to maintain an active OHRP-approved FWA. The IRB Director is responsible for ensuring that the Emory FWA is renewed in a timely fashion and is not permitted to expire. A copy of the complete current Emory FWA shall be kept in the IRB offices.

**DOD Addendum** Renewal – The DOD Addendum shall be renewed and kept in effect for so long as any DOD supported research is being carried out in or at Emory University. A copy of the DOD Addendum shall be kept at the IRB offices.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §§ 46.103 & .107.
56 CFR § 56.107.
32 CFR § 219.103; DOD Directive 3216.2 E2.1.1

DOD Addendum
5 ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES UNDER THE EMORY HRPP

POLICY:

The IO is ultimately responsible for ensuring that all responsibilities are carried out under the Emory HRPP, which includes the Emory FWA. The IO is responsible for ensuring that the Emory IRB upholds and carries out its responsibilities under the Emory FWA. Other persons and committees within Emory University also have responsibilities in fulfilling the requirements of the HRPP. It is incumbent upon all faculty and staff who play a role in the administration of the Emory HRPP, or in the conduct or administration of Human Subjects Research subject to the jurisdiction of the Emory HRPP including the Emory FWA, to carry out all responsibilities that are assigned to those roles.

PROCEDURES:

Principal Investigator (PI) Responsibilities: In fulfilling Emory University's responsibilities under the Emory HRPP, each PI is responsible for:

- **Training and Knowledge:** Ensuring, prior to initiating any Human Subjects Research, that he/she, and all study staff/key personnel involved in his/her Research protocol, have acquired the appropriate knowledge and training regarding protections, ethical conduct of Research, and applicable federal regulations, as well as the specific knowledge needed to properly conduct his/her specific protocol(s).

- **Completion of Required Training Programs:** Ensuring, prior to beginning any Human Subjects Research that he/she, and all study staff/key personnel involved in his/her Research protocol, have each completed any training programs mandated by the Emory IRB or by other Emory University departments or committees that have jurisdiction over the Research in which the PI is participating (e.g., CITI Training Course, HIPAA training, radiation safety training, blood borne pathogens training), including individually, without any assistance from others, attaining a passing score on any required examinations or tests covering the training materials. See the P&P entitled “Investigator Qualifications” for more information.

- **DOD Addendum:** For protocols conducted under the auspices of a DOD Addendum, PIs shall insure that they, and the research personnel who work on their studies, complete the training described in the P&P entitled Department of Defense (DOD) Supported Research The IRB may request written documentation of completion of any required training or certification.

- **Knowledge of Protocol and Related Documentation:** Prior to initiating work under any Research protocol, thoroughly reading and understanding the Research protocol and any informed consent document and HIPAA Authorization, and understanding and properly completing the IRB Protocol Application (including all appropriate materials) submitted to the Emory IRB for review and approval. All PIs are also responsible for ensuring that all personnel involved in carrying out the Research protocol are familiar with these documents and also abide by all of these requirements.
Regulatory Compliance: Ensuring that he/she and all key personnel involved in the Research protocol comply with all Emory IRB P&Ps, which are an integral part of the University HRPP, as well as all applicable Emory University policies and all requirements imposed by the FDA Regulations, HHS Regulations, HIPAA Regulations, VA Regulations (for Human Subjects Research that involves the AVAMC), DOD requirements and any other applicable laws and regulations.

IRB Committee and Associated IRB Chair/Vice Chair Responsibilities: In fulfilling Emory University’s responsibility under the Emory HRPP, each IRB Committee and its associated Chair/Vice Chair(s) is responsible for:

Review: Providing initial and continuing review of all Human Subjects Research subject to its jurisdiction;

Documenting Review: Documenting its review and decisions regarding its review of Human Subjects Research including documentation of any findings/decisions regarding risk/benefit evaluation, ethical considerations, scientific merit, access to Individually Identifiable information regarding Human Subjects and other information, privacy considerations and compliance with the HHS, FDA and HIPAA Regulations and VA Regulations (when applicable).

Audits and Post-Approval Monitoring: The IRB may audit or monitor on-going Human Subjects Research for adherence to HHS, FDA and HIPAA Regulations and, as applicable, VA Regulations and/or DOD Regulations, as well as adherence to Emory IRB P&Ps, which are an integral part of Emory’s HRPP. The Emory IRB shall provide further monitoring, when applicable, to ensure that corrective and preventive action (CAPA) plans are fulfilled.

Addressing Inquiries/Complaints: Appropriately inquire into and address complaints, concerns or questions received regarding Human Subjects Research under the IRB’s jurisdiction.

IRB Director/Assistant Director Responsibilities: In fulfilling Emory University’s responsibilities under the Emory FWA, the IRB Director, and the Assistant Director, as designated by the IRB Director, shall be responsible for:

FWA: Updating and renewal of the Emory FWA.

Registration: Updating and renewal of Emory IRB registration.

Membership Rosters: Updating of IRB Committee membership rosters and providing updates to OHRP.

P&Ps: Participating in review/revision and maintaining updated versions of P&Ps to ensure compliance with HHS, FDA and HIPAA Regulations and, as applicable, DOD and VA Regulations.
**Agreements for Emory IRB Review:** Ensuring that appropriate agreements are in place with non-Emory persons and entities relying upon the Emory IRB for review of *Human Subjects Research*, as well as with non-Emory IRBs that are providing review for Emory-related *Human Subjects Research* and further ensuring that any applicable OHRP notification/approval regarding such agreements occurs.

(For the purposes of this document, unless noted otherwise, the Assistant Director may perform the duties of the Director, when the latter is unavailable or has delegated that task to the former.)

**IRB Staff (Protocol Analyst) Responsibilities:** In fulfilling Emory University responsibilities under the *Emory HRPP*, each Emory IRB staff member who serves as a *Protocol Analyst* is responsible for:

- **Assisting IRB Committees:** Assisting the *IRB Committees* in on-going review and monitoring activities.

- **Assisting in Review and Monitoring:** Assist in the receipt, pre-review and regulatory analysis of Research applications for review by the *IRB Committees*.

- **Assisting in Review of P&Ps:** Participate in the review and revision of Emory IRB P&Ps as applicable.

**Roles and Responsibilities of the AVAMC Facility Director in relation to the AVAMC HRPP:**

The VA Facility Director:
- Is responsible for the facility’s research program, and is assisted by the Research and Development Committee
- Oversees both the IRB (other than external IRB) and all VA Researchers and Research Staff
- Ensures that IRB members (when reviewing VA research), Researchers and Research Staff are appropriately knowledgeable to conduct research in accordance with ethical standards and all applicable regulations.
- Develops and implements an educational plan for IRB members and staff (in collaboration with the Emory IRB Director), Researchers, and Research Staff including initial and continuing education
- Fulfills all educational requirements mandated by the VA Office of Research and Development (ORD) and OHRP
- Appoints one or more research compliance officers (individuals whose primary responsibility is auditing and reviewing research projects relative to requirements for the protection of human participants) to conduct annual research consent document audits and triennial regulatory audits, and to assist in the VA facility’s assessments of regulatory compliance
- Must report any appointment, resignation, or change in status of the research compliance officer to Office of Research Oversight VHA Central Office, with a copy to the relevant ORO research officer, within 10 business days after the appointment, resignation, or change takes effect
• Reports to ORO in writing within five business days after being notified of a research problem or event (including serious and continuing non-compliance, unanticipated problems involving risks to participants or others, and suspensions and terminations) for which such reporting is required
  o The medical center director’s written report is required regardless of whether disposition of the event has been resolved at the time of the report.
  o Follow-up reports detailing any additional findings and appropriate remedial actions must be provided to the relevant ORO office at intervals and in a manner specified by that office.
• Provides a copy of any ORO compliance reports regarding the research program to the associate chief of staff for research, Research and Development Committee, any relevant research review committee(s), and the research compliance officer in a timely fashion
• Reports the following research events to ORO Central Office, with a simultaneous copy to the appropriate ORO research officer, as indicated in the following:
  o IRB changes in number of IRBs and changes in membership rosters.
  o Substantive Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) changes must be reported to ORO Central Office within five business days.
• Reports accreditation problems must be reported to ORO Central Office within five working days.
• Ensuring the provision of adequate resources to support the operations of the HRPP so that those operations are in compliance with all VA and other federal requirements that govern human participants’ research protection.
• Ensuring an annual evaluation of the facility’s HRPP. This function may be delegated to the Research and Development Committee. The Emory IRB does not have responsibility over studies reviewed by the VA Central IRB.
• Ensuring a local research participant outreach program is implemented that includes a reliable mechanism for research participants to communicate with Researchers and with an informed VA representative who is independent of the research study in question (e.g., providing contact information in the consent document

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR § 46.103; Emory FWA.
38 CFR §46.103.
DOD Directive 3216.2, Para. 4.5, SECNAVINST 3900.39D, Para. 6a(2).
6 NUMBER OF IRBS AND REGISTRATION

POLICY:

Emory University is committed to allocating sufficient resources, meeting space, and staff to support IRB review, education, quality assurance, and recordkeeping duties. Further, Emory University ensures that it designates and establishes sufficient numbers of IRB committees or panels to conduct compliant review of research involving human subjects in a timely manner.

The Emory IRB holds an OHRP-approved Federalwide Assurance, FWA # 5792 and has registered its IRB committees with OHRP. The Emory IRB is composed of two separate committees: one for social-humanist-behavioral (SHB) and one for biomedical research. The biomedical committee has seven (7) panels. The SHB committee and each biomedical panel have a standing monthly meeting date. Thus, in each month, eight (8) convened IRB meetings may be held, unless there is a lack of quorum, or a lack of agenda items obviates the need for a convened meeting.

A Chair or Vice Chair presides at each biomedical panel and the SHB committee meetings. Each committee or panel is referred to in these P&Ps as an “IRB Committee” and collectively they are referred to as the “IRB Committees.”

In addition to the aforesaid internal IRB Committees, Emory University has an agreement with the commercial IRB, Western Institutional Review Board (WIRB), per which the WIRB serves as an IRB for Emory for the review of certain Human Subjects Research.

Prohibition of Use of Commercial IRB for VA-Sponsored Research: In accordance with VA Regulations, however, neither the WIRB, nor any other commercial IRB, shall be used to review any VA-supported Research.

Moreover, on occasion Emory will enter into an IRB Authorization Agreement with another FWA-holding institution, by which Emory can rely on the other institution’s IRB. (See the P&P entitled Emory IRB Relationships with Other Institutions; Reliance Arrangements for IRB Review.)

PROCEDURES:

Chair and Vice Chairs of IRB Committees: A single individual serves as the Chair of all of the IRB Committees; however, with the IO’s approval, two Co-Chairs may share this role and its responsibilities. One or more individuals from each of the IRB Committees shall serve as Vice Chairs, with one assigned to preside at each panel’s convened meetings. Unless otherwise specifically indicated throughout these P&Ps, the term “Chair” shall refer to both the IRB Chair or Co-Chairs, and to any Vice Chair, when the Vice Chair is acting for or on behalf of the Chair.

Appointments of Chairs and Vice Chairs of IRB Committees by the IO: The IO shall appoint the IRB Chair and any Vice Chairs. The following specifications shall be followed with regard to appointments:

In appointing the IRB Chair and any Vice Chairs for IRB Committees that primarily review biomedical Research, the IO shall consult with the following individuals, as
appropriate, depending upon whether the IO also serves in one of these capacities: the Executive Vice President for Health Affairs; the Deans of the Schools of Medicine and Nursing (or their designees), as well as the Dean of any other School within which a candidate for Vice Chair has an appointment; and the Vice President for Research Administration.

In appointing any **Vice Chairs** for IRB Committees that primarily review social, behavioral, humanist Research, the IO shall consult with the following individuals, as appropriate, depending upon whether the IO also serves in one of these capacities: University Provost; the Dean of the College of Arts and Sciences, Dean of the School of Public Health (or their designees), as well as the Dean of any other School within which a candidate for **Vice Chair** has an appointment; the Executive Vice President for Health Affairs; and the Vice President for Research Administration.

The IO also may appoint other individuals to assist the IO in overseeing the IRB and ensure that the IRB operates to uphold the **Emory FWA**.

The IO’s appointment of the **IRB Chair**, any **Vice Chairs** and any other individuals to assist the IO, shall be in writing.

The term of the **IRB Chair’s** and **Vice Chairs’** appointments shall be set forth in these P&Ps.

As of the effective date of this P&P, all persons currently appointed by the IO to assist the IO in carrying out the responsibilities and oversight of the **Emory IRB**, including the IRB Chair and all Vice Chairs, are set forth by name, title and role in Appendix 2. The **IRB Director** shall be responsible for keeping this list updated.

**Registration of IRB Committees with OHRP and the FDA:** All of the **IRB Committees** must be registered with OHRP and the FDA regarding the membership of each IRB Committee. The WIRB also is registered with OHRP and the FDA. Any other institution’s IRB upon which Emory may rely for review of research subject to DHHS, FDA, VA, or DOD regulations regarding human subjects, per a duly executed IRB Authorization Agreement, must also be registered with OHRP and/or the FDA (as applicable). As of the effective date of these P&Ps, OHRP administers IRB registration for both itself and the FDA.

**Current IRB Registration Information:** Current information regarding the Emory IRB’s registration can be found at the following OHRP website:
http://ohrp.cit.nih.gov/search/

**OHRP Contact Information About IRB Registration:** Contact information for OHRP personnel responsible for processing IRB registration and answering related questions can be found at the following OHRP website:
http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/daq-staff.html#staff

**IRB Registration Renewal:** The IRB registration must be renewed every thirty-six months, whether or not any changes to the **IRB Committees** have occurred, in order to maintain an active OHRP-approved registration. The **IRB Director** is responsible for ensuring that the IRB
registration is renewed in a timely fashion and is not permitted to expire. Copies of all
documentation regarding Emory IRB registration shall be kept at the IRB offices.

**IRB Membership Rosters:** The IRB **Director** shall be responsible for keeping a current roster of
membership on each of the **IRB Committees.** This membership roster shall list each member’s
name, degrees, contact information, and any specific role played on the **IRB Committee** (non-
affiliated member, non-scientific member, **Prisoner** representative, etc.). The IRB **Director** shall
be responsible for reviewing each **IRB Committee**’s membership roster on at least a monthly
basis to ensure that they are accurate and that membership meets all requirements for a
lawfully constituted IRB.

**Changes in Membership Roster:** The IRB **Director** shall be responsible for promptly notifying
OHRP and any other appropriate governmental agencies of any changes to the Emory IRB
membership rosters or the IRB **Chair, Vice Chair,** Human Protections Administrator, or IO
positions.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §§ 46.103 & .107.
56 CFR § 56.107.
45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR §§ 46.103(b)(1)-(2); 46.109; 46.111; & 46.112.
7 ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR ENSURING ADEQUATE RESOURCES TO PROTECT HUMAN SUBJECTS

POLICY:

The Emory IRB includes in its review of human subjects research an assessment of whether plans for scientific, clinical (including medical and psychological), technical and other necessary personnel, equipment, time, and services are appropriate and adequate to maximize the safety of human subjects, both during and after participation in a research study.

The Emory IRB also ensures that Departmental approval is in place before it will review a protocol, and that other appropriate, ancillary committee approvals are complete before granting final approval for the initiation of human subjects research. (Ancillary committee approvals may include, for example, radiation, biosafety, and environmental safety committee approvals.)

For protocols subject to a DOD Addendum, the Emory IRB shall ensure that departmental representatives perform a scientific review of the protocol, and any substantive amendments thereto, and provide the results of that review to the IRB, prior to the IRB’s review of the protocol/amendment.

The PI is responsible for ensuring that adequate and qualified personnel, equipment, supplies, infrastructure, eligible subject population, medical and psychosocial resources, and other resources are properly arranged and described in the protocol submitted to the Emory IRB. Insofar as communication and interaction is necessary amongst the IRB and other institutional units required to protect human subjects in research at Emory (including those entities not under the control of the investigator), the PI is responsible for ensuring that those units are notified and that proper arrangements are made to maximize the safety and wellbeing of the human subjects.

Applicable Regulations:

21 CFR Parts 50 and 56, including 21 CFR §§ 56.09 & 56.112.
38 CFR Part 16, including 38 CFR §§ 16.03(b)(1) — (2); 16.09; 16.111; & 16.112.
SECNAVINST 3900.39D, Para. 8c(6).
8 APPLICABILITY OF STATE LAW

POLICY:

The Emory HRPP is subject to the laws of the State of Georgia. The Emory IRB shall consult with appropriate University legal counsel for guidance on the interpretation and application of Georgia State Law. In the event of Human Subjects Research that takes place in jurisdictions other than the State of Georgia, the Emory IRB shall consult with University legal counsel for determination of applicable law and any interpretation thereof.

PROCEDURES:

Consultation with Emory University’s Office of the General Counsel: The Emory IRB shall consult with attorneys in the University’s Office of the General Counsel when questions arise as to:

- The application of Georgia state and local laws to Human Subjects Research; and
- The determination of what other jurisdiction’s laws may apply if the research takes place at a site outside of the Emory University campus.

As necessary, the Office of the General Counsel shall consult with other legal experts, including attorneys in other jurisdictions in which a Research project is taking place, for advice regarding the applicability and interpretation of pertinent laws.

Applicable Regulations:

See specific references as they appear in individual P&Ps.
9  EMORY UNIVERSITY IRB OFFICE

POLICY:

Emory University has established and staffed the Emory University IRB Office, which is responsible for the administration of the Emory University IRB. The Emory IRB Office reports to the Vice President for Research Administration (the IO), who reports to the Executive Vice Presidents, who report to the University President.

Mission Statement of IRB Staff: It is the mission of the Emory University IRB staff to protect the rights, privacy, and welfare of participants in Human Subjects Research conducted by or at Emory, primarily through support of the IRB Committees in all of their functions.

In fulfilling this objective, the IIRB staff aim to further the University’s research mission by:

- Protecting each human research subject’s right to privacy and confidentiality
- Providing reliable analysis in pre-screening Human Subjects Research applications to help IRB members ensure that the Research possesses ethical merit and adheres to applicable laws and federal regulations.
- Maintaining operational consistency and accountability.
  Striving for continuous quality improvement and professionalism.
- Providing education and outreach to investigators.
- Providing helpful resources to former, current, and prospective Research participants.

PROCEDURES:

IRB Director: The IRB Office is managed in chief by the IRB Director. The Director reports to the IO. The Director has expert knowledge in regulatory issues regarding Human Subjects Research and serves as the chief administrator for the University’s HRPP and the primary contact at Emory University for regulatory agencies on IRB matters.

IRB Assistant Director: The IRB Office may have an Assistant Director to assist the Director in carrying out his/her duties and to serve in the place of the Director in the Director’s absence. Alternatively, other supervisory staff may fulfill similar functions as designated by the Director.

IRB Director/Assistant Director Responsibilities: The responsibilities of the IRB Director/Assistant Director are detailed in the P&P entitled: Roles and Responsibilities Under The Emory HRPP.

Additional IRB Office Staff: The IRB Office also is staffed by persons appropriately chosen and trained (e.g., Education and Quality Assurance Consultant, Team Lead Protocol Analyst. The duties and responsibilities for each of these positions are set forth in their respective job descriptions and their performance is evaluated on at least an annual basis. Additionally, from
time to time, the IRB Director in consultation with the IRB Chair may create and recruit personnel for additional positions to assist the Emory IRB in carrying out its responsibilities.

**Selection, Supervision and Evaluation of Staff:** Staff are supervised and evaluated by the Director or designated supervisory staff. Evaluation of staff occurs on an annual basis at the end of the fiscal year using the Emory University Human Resources Policies and Procedures.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR § 46.103; Emory FWA.
38 CFR §46.103.
10 EMORY IRB P&Ps

POLICY:

The Emory IRB shall draft and maintain written *Policies and Procedures* (P&Ps, formerly known as SOPs) for the operation of the Emory HRPP including, policies and procedures for all required items set forth in the *HHS, VA, FDA Regulations*, and *DOD Regulations/Requirements*. These P&Ps are an integral component of the University’s HRPP. This document contains and sets forth those P&Ps. They shall be reviewed at least annually, including review for conformance with current law.

The IRB staff shall draft and maintain written administrative standard operating procedures (Administrative SOPs) providing detailed guidance on the daily functions of the IRB administration. These shall be stored as a separate collection or document from the P&Ps.

PROCEDURES:

**Dissemination of P&Ps:** The IRB *Director* will keep the University community apprised of new information that may affect the *HRPP*, including the dissemination through websites and electronic mailing lists of new and modified P&Ps; information regarding applicable laws, regulations, policies and procedures; and information regarding emerging ethical and scientific issues.

The IRB P&Ps will be available on the Emory IRB website at all times, with hard copies available upon request.

**P&P Requirements:** Per *HHS, FDA, VA Regulations*, and *DOD Regulations/Requirements*, the Emory IRB’s written P&Ps must address the following items:

- **Review:** Conduct of initial and continuing review of *Research* protocols.

- **Reporting Findings:** Reporting of findings and actions to *Investigators* and to Emory University.

- **Review Frequency:** Determination as to which *Research* protocols require review every twelve (12) months, and which require more frequent review.

- **Verification:** Determination as to which *Research* protocols undergoing *Continuing Review* require verification from sources other than the PI that no material changes occurred within the *Research* protocol since the last IRB review.

- **Reporting Changes in Research Protocols:** Prompt reporting of proposed changes in approved *Research* protocols and ensuring that changes are not initiated without prior Emory IRB review and approval, except as necessary to eliminate immediate hazards to *Human Subjects*. 
Reporting to Emory IRB and Appropriate Officials: Prompt reporting to the Emory IRB and to appropriate Research Sponsors; Emory University officials; and/or HHS/FDA/VA/DOD officials of the following:

- **Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others;**
- Any **Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance** with HHS, FDA, DOD and/or VA Regulations or the requirements or determinations of the Emory IRB; Any Suspension or Termination of Emory IRB approval of a Research protocol.

Adoption of P&Ps and Effective Date: In conformance with the requirements of the HHS, FDA, VA Regulations, and DOD Regulations/Requirements set forth above, the Emory IRB has adopted these P&Ps as of the effective date shown on the cover sheet for these P&Ps.

Maintenance of P&Ps: The current version of these P&Ps shall be maintained by the IRB Director on the Emory IRB’s official website at: http://www.irb.emory.edu

P&P Compliance with HHS, FDA, VA, HIPAA Regulations, and the DOD Regulations/Requirements: These P&Ps are subject to the HHS, FDA, VA, HIPAA Regulations, the DOD Regulations/Requirements, as well as any other applicable governmental laws and regulations. In the event of any conflict between these P&Ps and such applicable laws and regulations, the applicable laws and regulations shall control, and these P&Ps shall be conformed to such laws and regulations.

P&Ps Review and Revision Procedure: Set forth below, are the procedures to be followed for the review and adoption of new P&Ps and the review and revision of existing P&Ps:

**Annual Review of P&Ps and Appointment of P&P Subcommittee:** On at least an annual basis the IRB Chair shall appoint at least three IRB members to serve on a subcommittee to participate in the review and revision of the P&Ps to ensure compliance with all applicable rules and regulations and to incorporate any new modifications to these P&Ps. This subcommittee shall be called the “P&P Subcommittee” and shall meet at least once a year. IRB members appointed to this subcommittee may be re-appointed in subsequent years for an unlimited number of terms.

In addition to these IRB members, the following persons by virtue of their position shall serve as members of the P&P Subcommittee: the IRB Chair; the IRB Director, a Protocol Analyst or other person involved in the administration of the Emory IRB, as designated by the IRB Director in his/her discretion; and a representative from the Emory University Office of Research Compliance.

**Initial Review of P&Ps by IRB Director:** The IRB Director and his/her designee shall perform a periodic review of the P&Ps and bring forward to the P&P Subcommittee suggested or required modifications or additions to the P&Ps. This process shall occur on an as needed basis when changes in applicable laws and regulations occur or as suggestions for modifications or additions are received from interested parties. This periodic review shall occur at least once per year. As a part of this review process, the IRB Director shall solicit suggested additions and modifications to the P&Ps from all IRB
Committee members. Any reasonable suggested modifications or additions shall be provided to the P&P Subcommittee for review and discussion.

Meeting of P&P Subcommittee: The IRB Director shall convene a meeting(s) of the P&P Subcommittee in order to review and consider P&P additions and modifications that are brought forward. The IRB Director shall convene meetings as necessary, and at least on an annual basis. The P&P Subcommittee may meet in person or by any other practical means that allows two-way communication (e.g., telephone or e-mail). A majority of the P&P Subcommittee members must be present, or respond, in order to have an officially constituted meeting. At the meeting, the P&P Subcommittee members will vote on each addition/ modification that has been brought forward. Each member of the P&P Subcommittee shall be entitled to a single vote on issues that come before the subcommittee, and motions voted upon shall be carried when they receive a majority of the votes at a properly constituted meeting. The P&P Subcommittee shall keep records pertaining to the actions taken at the meetings.

The vote of the P&P Subcommittee on revised P&Ps shall become the date affixed to the P&Ps as the current version date. The P&Ps shall be posted on the IRB website in a format that cannot be changed.

Review by the IO: Proposed changes to the P&Ps shall be forwarded to the IO for review and comment.

Revisions without the P&P Subcommittee: Clerical error corrections or minor formatting changes may occur with the documented approval of the IRB Director, Chair, Vice Chair, or IO, and without the approval of the P&P subcommittee. These changes should not affect Emory IRB or IRB staff operations. Examples of clerical error corrections or minor formatting changes include but are not limited to:

- Correcting typographical errors;
- Updating or correcting specific information that does not alter the meaning of the text (such as an address change) or references internal to the P&Ps (such as the wrong P&P citation); and
- Indenting, bolding, or other formatting and font changes to improve the readability of the P&Ps.

Making and Circulating Revisions: Upon adoption of new P&Ps or changes/modifications to existing P&Ps, the IRB Director shall update the web-based and hardcopy versions of the P&Ps accordingly. The IRB Director shall circulate the updates to all IRB members. The IRB Director also shall take such steps as are necessary to make appropriate persons within the University aware of the changes.

Applicable Regulations:
45 CFR § 46.103(b)(5).
21 CFR §56.108.
38 CFR §16.103(b)(5).
32 CFR Part 219; DOD Addendum.
11 AUTHORITY AND RESPONSIBILITY OF THE EMORY IRB

POLICY:

The Emory IRB is an administrative body established to protect the rights and welfare of Human Subjects recruited to participate in Research activities conducted under the auspices of Emory University. The Emory IRB is the body at Emory University that has the authority to approve, require modifications in, or disapprove all Human Subjects Research activities conducted under the auspices of Emory University. The Emory IRB also has the authority to Suspend, place restrictions on, or Terminate approval of Human Subjects Research activities that fall within its jurisdiction and that are not being conducted in accordance with Emory IRB requirements or that have been associated with unexpected serious harm to subjects.

PROCEDURES:

Responsibility of the Emory IRB: In order to protect the rights and welfare of persons participating in Research, the Emory IRB is responsible for the Initial Review and continuing oversight of Human Subjects Research under its jurisdiction. Through this review, which includes an initial analysis and on-going monitoring of the risks and benefits associated with the Research, the Emory IRB ensures that the Human Subjects Research is being carried out in accordance with the requirements of the applicable HHS, FDA, VA Regulations, DOD Regulations/Requirements and the Belmont Report ethical principles.

In order to ensure that appropriate safeguards exist to protect the rights and welfare of Research subjects, the IRB includes within its review all of the Research documents and activities that bear directly on the rights and welfare of the subjects of the proposed Research, including, but not limited to the following: consent/assent documents, investigational brochure (for studies conducted under the FDA’s Investigational New Drug regulations); tests; surveys; questionnaires; and recruiting documents. The Emory IRB also performs the functions of an Institutional Privacy Board under the regulations implementing the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act.

Authority of the Emory IRB: The Emory FWA evidences the Emory IRB’s commitment to protecting the rights and welfare of Human Subjects in accordance with applicable HHS, FDA, VA Regulations, DOD Regulations/Requirements and the Belmont Report principles. In accordance with the FWA, the Emory IRB has the authority to perform the following tasks:

Risk/Benefit Evaluation: On an initial and on-going basis, provide evaluation of the risks and potential benefits, if any, of Research protocols and proposed amendments to Research protocols and determine whether the rights and welfare of Human Subjects are adequately protected thereby. Before any Human Subject is involved in Research under the auspices of Emory University, the Emory IRB will give proper consideration to: (a) the risks to the subjects; (b) the anticipated benefits to the subjects and others; (c) the importance of the knowledge that may reasonably be expected to result; and (d) the informed consent process to be employed.

Approve or take other voting actions: See P&Ps entitled Exempt Research, Expedited
Research Protocol Review and Actions. As described elsewhere in these P&Ps, the IRB must ensure that each Research protocol is ethically and scientifically sound and meets all regulatory requirements. The IRB must provide initial and continuing review and review of modifications to the protocol. See P&Ps entitled Exempt Research, Expedited Review, Full Committee Review, IRB Meetings, Continuing Review, Protocol Modifications, Criteria for Emory IRB Approval of Research, etc.

Report Review: Review and accept or not accept reports regarding on-going approval for Research protocols, and based on the review of such reports, permit continuation of the Research protocol or require modifications to or discontinuation of the Research protocol.

Protocol Renewal: Require applications on at least an annual basis for the continuation of approved Research protocols and review such applications.

Research Protocol Oversight: Oversee the conduct of Research protocols to assure compliance with approved protocols and applicable regulations, including the conduct of periodic reviews of Research protocols; the conduct of appropriate for-cause, directed, and not-for-cause audits or compliance reviews; the observation of the consent process and the Research by the IRB or a third party retained by the IRB to verify that no material changes have occurred since the last Approval; the conduct of inquiries into issues or complaints that arise concerning Research protocols; and/or the referral of such issues or complaints, or findings regarding such, to other appropriate Emory University committees or administrative personnel.

Suspension, Termination or Restriction of Protocols: Suspend, place restrictions on, or Terminate approval of Research activities that fall within the Emory IRB’s jurisdiction that are not being conducted in accordance with IRB requirements or that have been associated with serious harm to Human Subjects.

Education/Assistance: Set training and educational standards for persons who desire to conduct Human Subjects Research under the Emory IRB’s jurisdiction and for IRB members. The Emory IRB also shall provide education, training and assistance to Researchers, research staff and students regarding the appropriate conduct of Research protocols.

Institutional Privacy Board: In accordance with the Emory University HIPAA Privacy Policies (found at the following website: http://www.orc.emory.edu/share/policies/hipaa/index.cfm), the Emory IRB is authorized to carry out the functions of an Institutional Privacy Board under the HIPAA Regulations. The Emory IRB shall carry out all functions and responsibilities of an Institutional Privacy Board, as described in the aforesaid Emory University HIPAA Privacy Policies.

Timing of IRB Review and Approval in Relation to Initiation of Research Protocol: No protocol
for Human Subjects Research and no activities that in whole or in part involve Human Subjects Research (including, but not limited to, interacting with Human Subjects, Human Subject recruitment, advertising, or screening for Human Subject eligibility) may begin unless and until the protocol has been reviewed and approved by the Emory IRB; or a determination has been made that it is Exempt Research (see P&Ps entitled “Determination of Human Subjects Research or Clinical investigation” and “Exempt Research”). In addition, no Research activities that involve access to or use of data regarding Human Subjects that concerns health, health care and/or payment for health care and that contains identifiers, may take place unless and until review and approval by the Emory IRB, acting in its capacity as the Institutional Privacy Board, has taken place.

Failing to Submit a Project for Emory IRB Exemption Determination or Review: If a PI fails to submit a project/study for Emory IRB review and the project/study would have qualified as Human Subjects Research subject that is either Exempt or is subject to Emory IRB review, then the matter will be referred to the Compliance Review (CoRe) Team or the IRB at a convened meeting. Sanctions to be imposed may be include a determination that data collected for the project prior to obtaining Emory IRB review and approval may not be used for Research purposes, (In some cases, the Emory IRB may expressly give permission for Research use of the data.)

In addition, if a PI fails to submit to the Emory IRB for review and approval in its role as Institutional Privacy Board any Research activities that involve access to or use of data regarding Human Subjects that concerns health, health care and/or payment for health care and contains identifiers, then any such data so obtained or accessed may not be used for the Research absent the express permission of the IRB Privacy Board.

After-the-fact Approval Prohibited: The Emory IRB cannot give after-the-fact approval to a PI who requests Emory IRB approval to continue Human Subjects Research that was initiated without Emory IRB review/approval. The Emory IRB cannot give after-the-fact approval to use data for Research that was collected with the intent of being used for Research without prior Emory IRB approval; provided, however, that if the Emory IRB determines that the Research was Exempt Research, it may consider permitting the data to be used if it appears that the PI did not attempt to circumvent the IRB review process. In addition, the Emory IRB may not approve Research protocols in which it appears that the PI attempted to circumvent IRB review or these P&Ps by collecting data as non-Research data and then applying to the Emory IRB for use of the data in Research. PIs should err on the side of caution and seek Emory IRB review and approval for any project/study concerning or involving Human Subjects that they believe may fall within the definition of Human Subjects Research, particularly if publication of the project/study is anticipated. Similarly, PIs should seek advance Emory IRB approval for the use of or access to any data concerning health, health care and/or payment for health care that contains identifiers and that the PI believes he/she may want to access/use for Human Subjects Research purposes.

Further Review of Emory IRB Decisions: Research that is reviewed and approved by the Emory IRB may be subject to further review, modification and disapproval by officials of Emory University or of any other entity that is relying upon the Emory IRB’s review; provided, however, neither Emory University, nor any other entity that relies upon the Emory IRB for Research protocol review, may interfere with or override a decision of the Emory IRB to disapprove a study, nor may Emory University officials approve a Research protocol that has been
Disapproved by the Emory IRB.

Officials of the organization may not modify research that has been approved by the IRB without IRB approval of the requested modifications.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR §§ 46.103(b)(1)-(2); 46.109; 46.111; & 46.112.
21 CFR Parts 50 and 56, including 21 CFR §§ 56.109 & 56.112.
38 CFR Part 16, including 38 CFR §§ 16.103(b)(1) – (2); 16.109; 16.111; & 16.112
32 CFR Part 219; DOD Addendum.
12 JURISDICTION OF THE EMORY IRB

POLICY:

With the exception of non-Human Subjects Research and non-Clinical Investigations, the Emory IRB has jurisdiction over all Human Subjects Research (whether funded or not funded), that is conducted at Emory University; that is conducted at locations other than Emory University by Emory University faculty, staff and students, or that it assumes jurisdiction over per written agreement; or that uses any non-public Individually Identifiable Private Information or Protected Health Information (PHI) maintained by Emory University, or any of the components covered under the Emory FWA, to identify or contact Human Subjects.

Within its jurisdiction the Emory IRB is responsible for initial and continuing review and oversight of any Human Subjects Research, Clinical Investigations. For Research subject to a DOD Addendum, its jurisdiction includes Research Involving a Human Being as an Experimental Subject.

PROCEDURES:

Scope of Emory IRB Jurisdiction: With the exception of non-Human Subjects Research and non-Clinical Investigations, the Emory IRB has jurisdiction over all Human Subjects Research (whether funded or not funded), that is conducted at Emory University; that is conducted at locations other than Emory University by Emory University faculty, staff and students who are acting as agents of Emory, or that it assumes jurisdiction over per written agreement; or that uses any non-public Individually Identifiable Private Information or Protected Health Information (PHI) maintained by Emory University, or any of the components covered under the Emory FWA, to identify or contact Human Subjects.

The Emory IRB’s jurisdiction also extends to other entities or individuals who enter into agreements with the Emory IRB per which these entities or individuals subject their Research to Emory IRB review.

Accordingly, Emory IRB review is required when:

The Human Subjects Research is conducted by Emory University or any of the components covered by the Emory FWA.

The Human Subjects Research is conducted by or under the direction or supervision of Emory University or of any employee, faculty member, staff member, student or agent of Emory University, or of any of the components covered under the Emory FWA, in connection with that person’s institutional responsibilities or program of education;

The Human Subjects Research is conducted by or under the direction or supervision of any employee, faculty member, staff member, student or agent of Emory University, or of any of the components covered under the Emory FWA, using Emory University property, facilities or resources;
The **Human Subjects Research** is conducted by a person who, or entity that, has entered into an agreement with Emory University per which the Emory IRB is designated under the **Emory FWA** as the reviewing IRB for the **Human Subjects Research**.

Emory IRB acting as **Privacy Board**, or another designated **Privacy Board**, must review when the **Human Subjects Research** uses any non-public **Individually Identifiable Private Information** or **Protected Health Information** (PHI) maintained by Emory University, or any of the components covered under the **Emory FWA**, to identify or contact **Human Subjects**;

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR §§ 46.103(b)(1)-(2); 46.109; 46.111; & 46.112.
21 CFR Parts 50 and 56, including 21 CFR §§ 56.109 & 56.112.
13 EMORY IRB RELATIONSHIPS WITH OTHER REGULATORY COMMITTEES

POLICY:

The Emory IRB functions independently of, but in coordination with other regulatory committees inside and outside of Emory University. The Emory IRB makes an independent determination whether to approve or disapprove a Human Subjects Research protocol based upon whether or not Human Subjects are adequately protected. The Emory IRB may require the approval of other institutional regulatory committees as a condition of approval of a protocol.

PROCEDURES:

Coordination with Other Committees: The Emory IRB shall coordinate its review processes with other regulatory committees both inside and outside Emory University that are charged with reviewing other aspects of Human Subjects Research protocols. The Emory IRB’s approval of a Human Subjects Research protocol shall remain pending until the Emory IRB has received documentation of approval from all other regulatorily-required committees, persons, or offices charged with reviewing any aspects of the protocol.

Other Emory University and Non-Emory University Research Review Committees: The following separate Emory University and non-Emory University committees (collectively referred to in this section as the “Other Research Review Committees”) have responsibilities with regard to the review of research, including Human Subjects Research, conducted at Emory University, by Emory University faculty, staff or students, or using Emory University resources: (a) Emory University Radiation Safety Committee (RSC); (b) Emory University Institutional Biosafety Committee (IBC); (c) Emory University Research Health and Safety Committee (RHSC); (d) Emory University Conflict of Interest Committee(s); (e) the Clinical and Translational Review Committee (CTRC); (f) Radioactive Drug Research Committee (RDRC), and (g) National Institutes of Health (NIH) Recombinant DNA Advisory Committee (RAC).

Descriptions of Other Research Review Committees:

Emory University Radiation Safety Committee (RSC): The RSC reviews Research that involves the use of radioactive isotopes, x-rays or other radioactive materials. Requirements for when RSC review of a Research protocol is required can be found at the following website: http://www.ehso.emory.edu/programs/radiation/index.html. Upon issuance, documentation of RSC review and approval/disapproval or exemption shall be provided to the Emory IRB.

Emory University Institutional Biosafety Committee (IBC): The IBC reviews Research that is covered under the NIH Guidelines for Research Involving Recombinant or Synthetic Nucleic Acid Molecules (NIH Guidelines).

Emory University Research Health and Safety Committee (RHSC) reviews research that involves Select Agents, and certain infectious agents and biological toxins. Requirements for when IBC or RHSC review of a Research protocol is required can be
found at the following website: http://www.ehso.emory.edu/content-guidelines/GuidelinesforBiosafetyNOI.pdf. Upon issuance, documentation of IBC or RHSC review and approval/disapproval or exemption shall be provided to the Emory IRB.

**NIH Recombinant DNA Advisory Committee (RAC):** The RAC is the public advisory committee that advises the **HHS Secretary**, the HHS Assistant Secretary for Health, and the NIH Director concerning recombinant DNA research. Specifications for Research that must undergo RAC review are set forth in the *NIH Guidelines for Research Involving Recombinant or Synthetic Nucleic Acid Molecules* (referred to herein as the “**NIH Guidelines**”) found at the following website: [http://osp.od.nih.gov/office-biotechnology-activities/biosafety/nih-guidelines](http://osp.od.nih.gov/office-biotechnology-activities/biosafety/nih-guidelines), as well as in the policies and procedures of the IBC found at [http://www.ehso.emory.edu/programs/research-biosafety/research-policies.html](http://www.ehso.emory.edu/programs/research-biosafety/research-policies.html). When RAC review is required, documentation of RAC review and approval/disapproval must be provided to the IRB upon issuance.

**Conflict of Interest (COI) Committee:** The Emory University Conflict of Interest Office has its own review process for Research that involves a COI on the part of the PI or key study personnel. Resources for requirements regarding disclosure and review of COIs involving Research and contact persons for schools can be found at the following webpage: [http://www.coi.emory.edu](http://www.coi.emory.edu). The Conflict of Interest Office is responsible for providing the Emory IRB with documentation of review and any required management plan upon issuance.

**Emory University Clinical and Translational Review Committee (CTRC):** The CTRC provides scientific review of all oncology related protocols involving Emory researchers. Information about CTRC review requirements can be found at the following web page: [https://winshipcancer.emory.edu/research/clinical-trials-office/clinical-translational-review-committee.html](https://winshipcancer.emory.edu/research/clinical-trials-office/clinical-translational-review-committee.html). Upon issuance, documentation of CTRC review and approval/disapproval or exemption shall be provided to the Emory IRB.

**Radioactive Drug Research Committee (RDRC):** The RDRC is a subcommittee of the Emory University Radiation Safety Committee for Human Use (RSC-I). The RDRC reviews certain research protocols involving radioactive compounds as required by FDA regulations (21 CFR 361.1). RSC-I reviews all other human research protocols involving administration of radioactive materials or radiation from radioactive material to subjects solely as a result of participation in a research study.

**Assessment of Research Protocol by PI to Determine What Committee Review is Required:** The PI is responsible for reviewing his/her Research protocol and the review requirements of the Emory IRB and the Other Research Review Committees in order to determine to which committees the protocol must be submitted for review. The ultimate decision as to whether review of a protocol falls within a committee’s jurisdiction shall be with that committee, but any committee may send a protocol to another committee for a decision as to whether review by the recipient committee is required (e.g., the Emory IRB may send a protocol for which it believes the PI may have a COI to the COI committee for review, even if the PI on the protocol did not initiate such review). The PI is prohibited from beginning human subjects research activities under a Human Subjects Research protocol until all required committee approvals have
Procedure for Review of Human Subjects Research that Requires Submission to the Emory IRB and to the Other Research Review Committees:

If a protocol involves activities that must be reviewed by the Emory IRB and by one or more of the Other Research Review Committees, the PI may simultaneously submit the protocol for review to the Emory IRB and the Other Research Review Committee(s), but the Emory IRB’s approval shall be pending unless and until it receives notice of approval from the Other Research Review Committee(s).

In addition, the Emory IRB may, on its own initiative, send a protocol to one or more of the Other Research Review Committees or direct the submitting PI to do so. The Emory IRB also may receive a protocol for review from one of the Other Research Review Committees.

For new submissions in which the application indicate that RSC, IHBC, COI, or CTRC review is needed, eIRB prevents the IRB from granting full IRB approval until the applicable approval(s) or exemption(s) have been issued in the system.

Protocol Analysts, in consultation with the IRB Director or senior staff member, shall be responsible for making an initial assessment as to which of the Other Research Review Committees, if any, the protocol should be routed, and whether that routing has taken place. IRB Members and Designated Reviewers shall also make such assessments.

If a protocol is routed to one of the Other Research Review Committee(s) for review, that committee may review and approve the protocol, but it should note in any approval letters that Human Subjects Research may not be initiated until Emory IRB approval has been obtained. Upon issuance of approval/disapproval, the Other Research Review Committee(s) reviewing the protocol should provide a copy of its approval/disapproval letter, as well as any modifications to or restrictions placed upon the protocol to the Emory IRB.

Applicable Regulations:

See policies and procedures of Other Research Review Committees at websites listed above.
14 EMORY IRB COORDINATION WITH OTHER UNIVERSITY COMPLIANCE ENTITIES

POLICY:

The Emory IRB coordinates with other University compliance entities by serving as a member on the University Research Compliance Liaison Committee (URCLC).

PROCEDURES:

University Research Compliance Liaison Committee (URCLC): In furtherance of University Research compliance efforts, the URCLC regularly meets to provide a forum for compliance units within University research and healthcare operations to meet, communicate and coordinate compliance efforts and compliance policy development.

URCLC Composition: The URCLC is chaired by the Director of the Office of Research Compliance. The URCLC is composed of representatives from all University units that have day-to-day operational responsibility for University Research compliance activities. Units that are eligible to appoint a representative to the URCLC are as follows:

- Office of Research Compliance (Chair)
- Office for Clinical Research (OCR)
- Division of Animal Resources (DAR)
- Emory College
- Emory Division of Human Resources
- Emory Healthcare Compliance Office
- Environmental Health and Safety Office (EHSO)
- Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee (IACUC)
- Institutional Review Board (IRB)
- Institutional Biosafety Committee
- Office of the General Counsel
- Office of Grants and Contracts Administration (OGC)
- Office of Provost
- School of Nursing
- School of Law
- School of Public Health
- Radiation Control Council
- Yerkes Health and Safety Office
- Winship Cancer Center
- Representatives from additional schools/centers’ compliance offices and/or other representatives as agreed upon by the URCLC.

Duties of the URCLC: The URCLC meets on a regular basis to ensure that dialog and coordination is maintained among the various units at the University that have compliance responsibilities. The URCLC endorses and supports compliance with the laws, regulations and policies/procedures governing the conduct of Research, including, but not limited to, those laws, regulations, policies and procedures regarding human subjects Research, animal subjects Research; biosafety and occupational health and safety in the conduct of Research; the ethical
and responsible conduct of Research; the appropriate stewardship of Research funds; and Conflict of Interest. The URCLC provides a forum for the coordination of Research compliance efforts among the various units of the Emory community that are involved in Research compliance activities within their units. This cooperative forum will encourage efficient use of resources and provide a consistent approach to regulatory affairs and quality assurance.

In addition, the URCLC supports the fostering of a culture of compliance in the research compliance arena at Emory by supporting University units in their efforts to:

- Promote education and training regarding applicable Research compliance policies and procedures; and
- Ensure that University personnel are aware of their obligation to report in good faith concerns regarding Research compliance to appropriate University personnel without fear of retaliation.

Applicable Regulations:

None
15 EMORY IRB RELATIONSHIPS WITH OTHER INSTITUTIONS; RELIANCE ARRANGEMENT FOR IRB REVIEW

POLICY:

Emory University acknowledges that each institution that is Engaged in multi-institutional, collaborative Research is responsible for safeguarding the rights and welfare of Human Subjects and for complying with applicable federal regulations. With respect to such collaborative Research, Emory and the other institutions may choose to provide concurrent review within their own jurisdictions. Alternatively, the Emory IRB may enter into a written agreement per which the Emory IRB relies on the review of another qualified IRB or vice versa.

In addition, when multi-site Research subject to a DOD Addendum is being conducted, Emory and the other Research sites shall enter into formal written agreements that specify the roles and responsibilities of each party.

PROCEDURES:

Concurrent IRB Review: If Emory provides IRB review of Research concurrently with the IRB review of the collaborative institutions’ IRBs, all of the P&Ps, rules, regulations and laws described in these P&Ps shall apply to Emory’s review just as they would in non-collaborative Research IRB reviews.

Emory IRB Reliance on Another IRB: With regard to any cooperative Research projects that fall within the jurisdiction of the Emory IRB, Emory may rely on another appropriately constituted IRB for the review of the Research.

The IO has the sole authority to make the decision whether or not to rely on another IRB. The IO is authorized to execute IAAs on Emory’s behalf and may delegate this authority provided the delegation of authority is recorded in writing.

In deciding whether or not to rely on another IRB, the IO or delegate shall consider the following criteria:

If the other IRB is part of an AAHRPP-accredited HRPP, then it will be presumed that Emory University standards are being met; however, accredited status does not in itself necessarily suffice as a basis for the IO’s decision.

If greater-than-minimal-risk research activities will take place under the direction of Emory personnel at sites normally under Emory IRB jurisdiction, generally Emory will not rely on another IRB for review unless it is a central or commercial IRB with which Emory has a standing reliance agreement.

For central or commercial IRBs, Emory will agree to rely if the central or commercial IRB for more than minimal risks studies if the reviewing IRB is AAHRPP accredited, and the terms of the reliance agreement, including procedures for communication between the two organizations, are acceptable to both the Organization and the Principal
Investigator. If the NIH requires the use of a specific central IRB for a multicenter study or group of studies, and the IRB is not AAHRPP accredited, Emory will rely on the NIH’s determination that the central IRB is qualified to review the research.

For minimal risk federally-funded studies, the IO or delegate will ensure that the reviewing IRB has an FWA and that that IRB is registered with OHRP.

The IRB Director, or designee, shall ensure that any required Authorization Agreement is appropriately signed by the IOs or their delegates for both institutions.

The IRB Authorization Agreement (IAA) must set forth Emory’s FWA number and for Research subject to federal regulations, the FWA of the other party to the Agreement. The IAA should identify by title, respective PIs, and sponsorship the Human Subjects Research scope of the IAA. The IAA should clearly state which party is relying on the other for IRB review, and how the relying party will be kept informed of the reviewing IRB’s actions. Further details should be included in an appropriate template for use by the Emory IRB and IO.

When Emory relies on another IRB for review, the research is included in the Emory HRPP audit and compliance program.

Records of the IAAs shall be kept by the IRB Office.

Another Institution’s Reliance on the Emory IRB: Emory may provide IRB review of Human Subjects Research for another institution pursuant to a signed IAA.

In deciding whether or not to provide IRB review for another institution, the IO or delegate shall consider the following criteria:

- Whether other institution has the capacity to meet the standards of the Emory HRPP
- Where the Human Subjects Research activities would take place
- Which institution’s facilities and personnel would be involved
- Emory’s capacity to be sufficiently informed about the other institution’s local research context and local applicable laws and rules

The IRB Director, or designee, shall ensure that any required Authorization Agreement is appropriately signed by the IOs for both institutions involved and that OHRP and any other appropriate governmental agencies are appropriately notified of reliance arrangements.

The IRB Authorization Agreement (IAA) must set forth Emory’s FWA number and for Research subject to federal regulations, the FWA of the other party to the Agreement. The IAA should identify by title, respective PIs, and sponsorship the Human Subjects Research scope of the IAA. The IAA should clearly state which party is relying on the other for IRB review, and how the relying party will be kept informed of the reviewing IRB’s actions. Further details should be included in an appropriate template for use by the Emory IRB and IO.
Emory shall facilitate communication with the relying institution about Emory IRB actions on the Human Subjects Research that is subject to the IAA. The Emory IRB will communicate the following promptly to the relying IRB:

- Emory IRB determinations of Non-Compliance on the part of the relying institution’s investigators
- Emory IRB determinations of Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance on the part of any investigators at Emory or the relying site
- Suspensions or Terminations of Emory IRB approval
- Emory IRB determinations of Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others (UP) that occur at the relying institution
- Advance copies of notices that the Emory IRB or other offices plan to send to Governmental Authorities with oversight over the Research, regarding determinations of Serious or Continuing Non-compliance or UP at the relying institution.

Relevant minutes of IRB meetings and approval notices will be made available to the relying institution upon request.

Records of IAAs shall be kept by the IRB Office.

Reliance Agreements for Exempt Studies: An IRB Authorization Agreement, or other form of reliance agreement, will not automatically be required if the research is deemed exempt by all institutions considered engaged in the collaborative research.

In cases where Emory has determined collaborative research to not be Exempt, instead requiring Expedited or Full Board review, but other engaged institutions have determined the research to be Exempt, Emory shall proceed with its own review. Emory shall evaluate the exempt determinations of the other engaged institutions. A reliance agreement may not be required.

Research Conducted at Multiple Sites and Multiple IRBs: For Research that takes place at more than one site in which all of the sites are engaged in Research, reliance by one IRB on another is not required. Frequently each site’s IRB will review the protocol for the Research to be conducted at its site.

For multi-site Research subject to a DOD Addendum, the participating sites shall enter into a written agreement that includes the following elements: (a) statement of work and specific assignment of responsibilities; (b) description of the research; (c) specific roles and responsibilities of each institution; (d) responsibility for scientific review and IRB review; (e) description of recruitment of subjects and provisions for obtaining informed consent; (f) provisions for oversight and monitoring, reporting requirements, document retention and compliance. Collaborators at each site must ensure compliance at their sites with all applicable requirements, and if reliance is placed upon another IRB for review and oversight, that reliance may not compromise any standards or requirements.

Emory Engaged in Research at Another Site Whose Personnel Is Not Engaged: Occasionally, Emory may conduct Research at a non-Emory site that has an IRB and FWA, but personnel at that site are not Engaged in the Research. In such cases, the Emory PI must provide the Emory IRB with documentation from the non-Emory IRB to the effect that its approval is not required.
Emory should also require evidence of permission granted by the other institution to the Emory investigators to conduct the Research at their site.

**Serving as IRB of Record for an Entity That Does not Have its Own IRB:** The Emory IRB may serve as the IRB of record for an entity that does not have its own IRB (outside of Memorandums of Understanding such as Emory has with the AVAMC) if (a) Emory is involved in the conduct of or funding of the Human Subjects Research at the entity; or collaborating with the entity in the conduct of the Human Subjects Research, or is providing funding for the Research; (b) the IO approves of the arrangement in advance; (c) the Emory IRB can develop appropriate means by which to consider the local context of the Research; and (d) if the Research involved is being supported by a federal agency and the entity is Engaged in Research, then the entity must have an appropriate FWA in effect. If the foregoing criteria are met, then the Emory IRB may enter into an appropriate IRB Authorization Agreement.

**Emory Personnel Conducting Human Subjects Research at Non-Emory Sites that do not have a FWA or IRB:** In cases in which Emory PIs are conducting Human Subjects Research at non-Emory sites that do not have an FWA, then all Human Subjects Research procedures and practices must be carried out by Emory personnel and Emory and the non-Emory site must not be Engaged in Research, with the exception of non-Emory personnel at that site covered by an Individual Investigator Agreement in order to conduct research under the auspices of Emory’s FWA. Criteria for the extension of Emory’s FWA to cover individual investigators shall follow OHRP guidance. The Emory IRB should obtain, via the PI, written permission from the Non-Emory site at which the Research is to take place, for Emory investigators to conduct the Human Subjects Research at the site.

**Emory University as Coordinating Center for a Multi-Center Protocol:** When Emory University serves as the coordinating center for a multi-center Human Subjects Research protocol, the Emory IRB will require the Emory University PI to ensure that IRB approval has been obtained from the IRB at each participating site prior to the initiation of Human Subjects Research at that site, or alternatively, that appropriate Authorization Agreements have been entered into by all sites. At the time of initial review of the protocol the Emory IRB will assess the procedures for dissemination of protocol information (e.g., Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others, protocol modifications, interim findings, etc.) to all participating sites.

For a VA multi-site study, not only the principal Researcher, but also all local site Researchers, must obtain written approvals from the relevant local VA facilities’ IRBs of record and all other local committees, subcommittees, and other approvals according to the respective applicable local, VA and other federal requirements. Research cannot be initiated at any given site until the local Researcher has obtained written notification that the research can be initiated from the local associate chief of staff for research and development.

**Provision of Services to AVAMC:** The provision of services by the Emory IRB to the AVAMC and the Atlanta Research and Education Foundation (AREF) is established through the AVAMC Memorandum of Understanding that outlines the responsibilities of the AVAMC/AREF and Emory University through its Emory IRB. See also the P&P entitled Human Subjects Research at Atlanta Veterans Affairs Medical Center/Atlanta Research and Education Foundation.
Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR §§ 46.102(f); 46.103(b)(1)-(2); 46.109; 46.111; & 46.112.
21 CFR Parts 50 and 56, including 21 CFR §§ 56.109; 56.111 & 56.112.
38 CFR Part 16, including 38 CFR §§ 16.102(f); 16.103(b)(1) – (2); 16.109; 16.111; & 16.112.
SECNAVINST 3900.9D, Para. 8f.
16 LOCAL RESEARCH CONTEXT; RESEARCH CONDUCTED AT NON-EMORY SITES

POLICY:

In reviewing Research protocols that will be conducted at international or other non-Emory University sites, the Emory IRB must obtain sufficient knowledge of the local Research context in order to fulfill its responsibilities under its FWA and to comply with all applicable required standards. In particular, the IRB must be sensitive to community attitudes and be able to ascertain the acceptability of proposed Research in terms of institutional commitments and regulations; applicable law; and standards of professional conduct and practice. All policies and procedures that are applied to research conducted domestically will be applied to research conducted in other countries, as appropriate, including oversight of the following: initial review, continuing review, and review of modifications; post-approval monitoring; and handling of complaints, noncompliance and UPs.

For protocols subject to a DOD Addendum, the Emory IRB must ensure that DOD-mandated additional safeguards are in place.

PROCEDURES:

Requirements of Federal Regulations: In accordance with federal regulations [45 CFR §46.103(d), 45 CFR §46.107(a), 45 CFR §46.111(a)(3),(a)(4),(a)(7),(b), 45 CFR §46.116, 21 CFR §56.107(a), 21 CFR §56.111(a)(3),(a)(4),(a)(7),(b)], the Emory IRB, in reviewing Research protocols that will be conducted at a non-Emory site, must have obtained sufficient knowledge about the local research context to ensure that adequate protections are in place for the conduct of the Research in that geographic location. Federal Regulations require that IRBs be knowledgeable about the local Research context as demonstrated by fulfillment of the following criteria:

The IRB’s composition must be adequate in light of the scope of the institution’s Research activities, types of subject populations, appropriateness of proposed review procedures in light of probable risks, and the size and complexity of the institution. [45 CFR §46.103(d)]

The IRB’s members must be sufficiently qualified through the experience and expertise and diversity, including race, gender, cultural background, and sensitivity to such issues as community attitudes to promote respect for the IRB’s advice and counsel. [45 CFR §46.107(a)]

The IRB must be able to evaluate Research in terms of institutional commitments and regulations, applicable law, and standards of professional conduct and practice. [45 CFR §46.107(a)]

The IRB must also be capable of ensuring that the selection of subjects is equitable, privacy and confidentiality of subjects is maintained, informed consent is sought in language understandable to the subject and in circumstances that minimize the
possibility of coercion, and that there are appropriate safeguards protecting vulnerable subjects. [45 CFR §46.111(a)(3),(a)(4),(a)(7),(b) and 46.116]

**Requirements of FDA Regulations**: For the purposes of Research that may be subject to regulation by the FDA, the *FDA Regulations* contain essentially the same requirements as those set forth above in the provision entitled *Requirements of HHS Regulations*. [21 CFR 561.07, 56.111(a)(3),(a)(7) and (b)]. Both *HHS* and *FDA Regulations*, as well as other Federal regulations may apply to the same Research protocol. Alternatively, either *HHS* or *FDA Regulations* may apply to a Research protocol.

**Requirements of HIPAA Privacy Rule**: HIPAA is a US regulation and does not apply to international research. If protected health information is brought back to the US and used with data here, then HIPAA will apply.

**Demonstration of Sufficient Knowledge of Local Research Context**: In reviewing Research to be conducted at an international or other non-Emory site, the Emory IRB must demonstrate that it has obtained sufficient knowledge about the local Research context to review the Research to be conducted in that geographic location in accordance with the standards established by OHRP. The level of local knowledge required is based on the degree of risk presented by the Research. The OHRP standards include the following:

**Minimal Risk**: When the Research involves Minimal Risk to the participants, the IRB should obtain the necessary information about the Research context through written materials or discussion with appropriate consultants.

**Greater than Minimal Risk**: When the Research involves greater than Minimal Risk and the Investigator and/or study personnel will have Interaction or Intervention with the participants, the IRB should obtain the necessary information about the local Research context through one or more of the following mechanisms or through other mechanisms deemed appropriate by OHRP for the proposed Research and local Research context:

- Personal knowledge of the local Research context on the part of one or more IRB members;
- Participation (physically or by telephone conference) by one or more appropriate consultants in a convened IRB meeting. Such consultant(s) should have personal knowledge of the local Research context;
- Prior written review of proposed Research by one or more appropriate consultant(s), in conjunction with participation (physically or by telephone conference) by the consultant(s) in convened IRB meetings;
- Systematic, reciprocal, and documented interchange between the IRB and elements of the local Research context.

Other Factors that May be Considered by the Emory IRB in its Review of the Research and Consideration of Local Research Context:

- The extent of training in human subjects research ethics of study staff. Study staff includes all personnel engaged in human subjects research, even non-Emory local study staff. If local study staff are under local ethics committee oversight, then that committee’s requirements take precedence.

- The qualifications of the researchers and research staff for conducting research in the country or area;

- Coordination and communication with local IRBs when appropriate;

- The economic prosperity of the area in which the Research is to take place;

- The influence of local officials on the population;

- If the Research is in another country, whether the country or area allows foreign visitors;

- The nature of the procedures conducted;

- The literacy rate of the area;

- Local laws, including the local legal rights of the population (such as legal age of adult consent, any mandatory reporting issues, and laws relevant to sub-populations such as women in general, unmarried v. married women, children, etc.);

- How complaints will be reported and to whom;

- The relevance of the Research to the local population’s needs and interests;

- The possibility of including officials from the area in the monitoring of the Research;

- The likelihood for the subject population to benefit from the results of the research; and

- The local standards of care for relevant medical conditions.

The Emory IRB must also assure that adequate provisions are made for data and safety monitoring, and take into consideration that some foreign IRBs or Ethics Committees may not require Continuing Review of approved Research. The Emory IRB, however, should ascertain that the local IRB’s approval period is consistent with all applicable regulations.

Consideration of Issues Associated with Informed Consent: In reviewing Research to be conducted at an international site or other non-Emory site, in addition to ensuring that the
elements of Informed Consent are met, (as established in Section 41, entitled: Informed Consent Policy), the Emory IRB will consider the following issues:

- Disclosure of information to individuals who may be unfamiliar with and distrustful of the concepts:
- Differences in societal and cultural norms;
- Differences in the role of women in society;
- Differences in the role of family and community in the consent process;
- Multiple local languages; and
- Literacy level.

The informed consent documents must be in language appropriate to the location of the Research, and understandable to the proposed participants. Informed Consent Translations – documents used with the subjects will need to be reviewed in English by Emory’s IRB and a translated version will need to be submitted to Emory’s IRB as well after initial IRB approval.

The translation may be done by a certified translator (certification will need to be provided along with the translated documents to the IRB) or a back translation can be done (one person translates the documents into the language and a different person translates the translation back into English).

Documentation Required from PI: The Emory IRB will also require that the PI provide the following documentation before Research takes place at an international or other non-Emory site is approved:

For an international or other non-Emory site Engaged in Research:

- A local IRB (Ethics Committee) approval letter for the proposed Research, if an IRB (or ethics Committee) exists;
- If the study is federally funded, then an OHRP-approved FWA for the international or other non-Emory institution or site is required.

For an international or other non-Emory site not Engaged in Research:

- For studies which are more than minimal risk, local IRB/IEC review is required for any international sites.
- For studies which are no more than minimal risk, local IRB/IEC review is recommended. When the international or other non-Emory site cannot obtain IRB/IEC review, a letter of cooperation showing that the appropriate institutional or oversight officials are permitting the research to be conducted at
the site is required. If Local IRB/IEC Approval is not possible then a Cultural Context Letter is required. See IRB website for template language.

[See also the P&P section entitled: *Emory IRB Relationships with Other Institutions; Reliance Arrangement for IRB Review*]

As appropriate, the IRB may require copies of monitoring reports of the research under review.

**Type of IRB Review:** The Emory IRB shall apply all relevant rules to determine whether Research conducted at non-Emory sites is eligible for Exempt or Expedited review. The Emory IRB shall employ **Full Committee** to review any Research protocol involving greater than **Minimal Risk** that is to be conducted at international sites.

**Additional Requirements for Research Subject to VA Regulations:**

- Permission must be obtained from the chief research and development officer, or designee, prior to initiating any VA-approved international research.
- The VA facility director must approve any request for permission to conduct international research prior to forwarding it to the chief research and development officer.
- All international sites must hold an international Federalwide assurance, and the research must be approved by the IRB or Ethics Committee of the participating sites listed on the international Federalwide assurance.
- The researcher must conduct the research in accordance with VA requirements and all other applicable federal requirements for protecting human participants, tissue banking, use of databases, federal criminal laws, and the standards of ethical conduct for employees of the executive branch.

**Additional Safeguards Mandated for Protocols Subject to a DOD Addendum:** Research subject to a **DOD Addendum** that is conducted outside of the U.S. or U.S. territories or possessions and that involves subjects who are not U.S. citizens or DOD personnel must meet the following requirements:

(a) Permission of the host country to conduct the research in the form of a certification or review by host country ethics board.

(b) Compliance with laws, customs and practices of the host country.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §§ 46.103(d); 46.107(a); 46.111(a)(3), (a)(4), (a)(7), (b) & 46.116
21 CFR §56.111(a)(3),(a)(7) and (b)

OHRP Guidance Document: Knowledge of Local Research Context, July 21, 2000

FDA Information Sheet: Non-Local IRB Review

See also specific regulatory references set forth in specific provisions above.

DOD Directive 3216.2, Para. 4.9; SECNAVINST 3900.39D, Para. 6i.
17  HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH AT THE ATLANTA VETERANS AFFAIRS MEDICAL CENTER (AVAMC)/ATLANTA RESEARCH AND EDUCATION FOUNDATION (AREF)

POLICY:

The provision of services by the Emory IRB to the Atlanta Veterans Affairs Medical Center (AVAMC) and to the Atlanta Research and Education Foundation (AREF) is established through the AVAMC Memorandum of Understanding that outlines the responsibilities of the AVAMC/AREF and Emory University through its IRB. The Emory IRB is designated as the IRB of record for the AVAMC/AREF pursuant to these entities’ respective FWAs.

Protocols reviewed by the Emory IRB on behalf of the AVAMC/AREF receive the same IRB review, both initial and continuing, as those conducted at Emory University; provided, however, that Emory shall assure that AVAMC Research or other VA-supported Research shall not be assigned to a commercial or sociobehavioral IRB for review. The Emory IRB does and shall continue to meet all Department of Veterans Affairs requirements for an affiliate human studies subcommittee of the AVAMC Research & Development Committee (hereafter referred to as “RDC”).

PROCEDURES:

Relationship between Emory IRB and RDC: The AVAMC has a Research and Development Committee that reviews AVAMC Research protocols. Review of an AVAMC Research protocol by the RDC is in addition to, and not in lieu of, Emory IRB review and approval.

AVAMC Responsibilities: The AVAMC remains responsible for ensuring compliance with the Emory IRB’s determinations and with the terms of its own FWA. Specifically, the AVAMC shall be responsible for reviewing all Emory IRB determinations for AVAMC Research. Neither the RDC nor the AVAMC may overrule disapprovals made by the Emory IRB regarding human subjects research protocols. In addition, the AVAMC may defer to the Emory IRB when making determinations of non-human subjects research.

The AVAMC shall conduct a quality assurance program for Human Subject Research protection in conjunction with the Emory IRB on an on-going basis. Findings and follow-up from any review will be shared with the Emory IRB. AVAMC will staff the Emory IRB with a VA-IRB liaison to serve as the person responsible for processing AVAMC studies through the IRB. The VA-IRB liaison will function as a staff member of the IRB with knowledge of VA policies pertaining to human subjects. They will serve as the subject matter expert to the IRB on VA issues.

See the end of this chapter for further responsibilities of the VA Facility Director with regards to the AVAMC HRPP, not otherwise stated in these Policies and Procedures.

Documentation of Relationship: The AVAMC and Emory University have entered into the following agreements regarding IRB arrangements:

Federalwide Assurance (FWA): Emory University, Atlanta Veterans Affairs Medical Center (AVAMC), and Atlanta Research and Education Foundation (AREF) have entered
into Federalwide Assurances (FWAs) with OHRP. Under these FWAs, Emory University operates the Emory IRB, which is the designated IRB for VAMC and the AREF. Current information regarding the Emory FWA (FWA 00005792), the VAMC, Decatur FWA (FWA 00002551), and AREF (FWA 00003511) can be found at the following OHRP website: http://ohrp.cit.nih.gov/search/asearch.asp.

**Memorandum of Understanding:** Emory University, AVAMC, and the AREF have documented their relationship through the AVAMC Memorandum of Understanding. The Emory IRB is subject to and agrees to abide by the terms of its FWA: Number FWA00005792 (the Emory FWA). The Emory IRB agrees to provide initial review and continuing oversight of AVAMC Research in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Emory FWA and per the requirements set forth in these P&Ps.

**Adherence to VA Regulations in Review of AVAMC Research:** The Emory IRB agrees to apply and adhere to all applicable VA Regulations, including 38 CFR Part 16 and VHA Handbook 1200.05, in reviewing AVAMC Research and any other VA-supported Research submitted to the Emory IRB for review.

**Review of AVAMC Research by Emory IRB Committees:** Emory shall ensure that submitted AVAMC Research and other VA-supported Research is reviewed by an Emory IRB Committee, as required by VA Regulations, any other applicable regulations and these P&Ps. This includes review of AVAMC research and other VA-Supported research by the other regulatory committees as laid out in P&P 13 (Emory IRB Relationships with other Regulatory Committees). In accordance with VA Regulations Emory shall not assign AVAMC Research or other VA-supported Research to a commercial or sociobehavioral IRB (e.g., WIRB or Emory’s sociobehavioral IRB) for review, nor shall it assign review of a VA protocol without a prior written agreement.

**Representation of AVAMC on the Emory IRB:** The AVAMC shall provide at least two (2) IRB voting members approved by the Emory IRB to each Emory IRB Committee that reviews AVAMC Research protocols. AVAMC IRB appointees are nominated for membership on the Emory IRB by the AVAMC Associate Chief of Staff for Research through the RDC, and are endorsed for membership by the Director of the AVAMC. All members representing the AVAMC must have at least a 1/8ths compensated appointment with the AVAMC. Members must be sufficiently qualified and must demonstrate competence in Human Subjects Research protection by meeting all AVAMC and Emory IRB member educational requirements.

**Conduct of AVAMC/AREF Business at Convened Emory IRB Meetings:** At least one AVAMC-appointed Emory IRB member must be present at any Emory IRB meeting in order for the Emory IRB to vote concerning an AVAMC Research protocol; provided, however, that this member must not have any Conflict of Interest with regard to any AVAMC Research protocol on which the Emory IRB is voting. The vote on AVAMC Research protocols must be tabled at any Emory IRB meeting at which the foregoing prerequisite is not satisfied.

**Emory IRB Minutes:** Per the requirement set forth in the VA Regulations (i.e., VHA Handbook 1200.05) the Emory IRB will forward to the AVAMC Research Office complete non-redacted Emory IRB meeting minutes, after the meeting minutes have been reviewed and approved by
the Emory IRB. These reviewed and approved minutes will be available to the RDC in a timely fashion after their approval. Copies of such Emory IRB meeting minutes shall be maintained by both the Emory IRB and the **AVAMC Research Office**. For VA research in which the approval of research is contingent on specific minor conditions as laid out by the chair or designee, the approval will be documented in the agenda or minutes of the first IRB meeting that takes place after the date of approval.

**Review Process -- AVAMC Research Protocols and Other Items Requiring both RDC Review and Approval and Emory IRB Approval:** Listed below are the AVAMC items requiring review by both the Emory IRB and the RDC. In general, approval should first be obtained from the Emory IRB before being submitted for review and approval or acknowledgement by the RDC:

- **AVAMC Research** protocols (initial and continuing review);
- Modifications/amendment to **AVAMC Research** protocols;

**Initial Review Process for AVAMC Research Protocols:**

**Review Type:** The Emory IRB determines the appropriate review type for **AVAMC Research** (e.g., review by Full Committee Review, Expedited Review, etc.) in accordance with these P&Ps and VHA Handbook 1200.05. When reviewing **AVAMC Research** protocols that require IRB review at a convened meeting, the IRB Committee that is reviewing and voting on those **AVAMC Research** protocols shall do so only if at least one AVAMC IRB voting member representative is present. **AVAMC Research** protocols which undergo Expedited Review shall be reviewed by a designated IRB voting member. The designated member also will be either an AVAMC member, or will review the protocol with input from an AVAMC member. **AVAMC Research** protocols which undergo a determination that the **AVAMC Research** is exempt from IRB review shall be reviewed by either IRB administrator or IRB staff who have appropriate training and experience to make exempt determinations (in addition to the designated IRB voting members).

**Communication of Approval/Concerns:** Following review of an **AVAMC Research** protocol, the Emory IRB will provide the RDC with a copy of the correspondence sent to the PI setting forth whether the protocol has been granted Approval, Approval Pending, Deferral or Disapproval, and the reason(s) if applicable, if other than approval. Any concerns or criteria for approval of the **AVAMC Research** protocol also may be communicated to the RDC via the AVAMC representatives sitting on the IRB Committee that reviewed the protocol at issue. The approval letter sent to the PI will indicate the effective dates of the approval.

**Review by RDC:** The RDC shall review the **AVAMC Research** protocol with regard to ensuring that any AVAMC requirements for the protection of Human Subjects have been met, that the study is meritorious and the scientific objectives are valid, and that the informed consent form used in the protocol conforms to AVAMC standards. The RDC is permitted to assign scientific review and some administrative responsibilities, including compliance issues, to more appropriate subcommittees and individuals. In its review, the RDC may take into consideration any items or concerns raised by the Emory IRB. The RDC shall provide the Emory IRB with correspondence to the PI detailing any
**Human Subject** protection concerns that the RDC identifies during its review of the protocol by copying the Emory IRB on the approval letter as needed. In the event that the RDC restricts or limits the ability of an investigator to perform research, the RDC shall notify the Emory IRB immediately and provide the Emory IRB with copies of any minutes or other documentation pertaining to the RDC’s review or oversight of a protocol that is subject to Emory IRB jurisdiction.

**PI Response:** The PI shall respond to any items or concerns regarding the AVAMC Research protocol being reviewed directly to the committee that raised the item/concern, whether that is the RDC or the Emory IRB. The RDC and the Emory IRB shall make independent determinations based upon PI responses, but shall share their respective decisions with each other as needed.

**Approval by Emory IRB and RDC Required:** In order to proceed with the AVAMC Research protocol, the PI must have the final Approval of both the Emory IRB and the RDC. In the event that the RDC overrides an Approval by the Emory IRB, the PI must not commence any part of the AVAMC Research protocol unless and until all concerns have been addressed and each committee grants its final Approval. The RDC may not approve an AVAMC Research protocol that has been Disapproved by the Emory IRB.

**HIPAA Waiver Approval:** The Emory IRB must review and approve all Waivers of HIPAA Authorization for AVAMC Research protocols and otherwise provide review for AVAMC Research in accordance with the HIPAA Regulations. VA HIPAA Authorizations shall be in a format that is approved by the AVAMC.

**Use of AVAMC Approved Forms:** PIs who wish to perform AVAMC Research protocols must use the standard AVAMC informed consent template and the AVAMC HIPAA Authorization template found at the Atlanta VA research website. The Emory IRB and the RDC shall review all completed informed consent and HIPAA Authorization templates and confirm that all Emory and VA-required elements are included in the final version of each of these forms. All VAMC Human Research studies are reviewed by the VA Information Security Office (ISO) and the VA privacy Officer (PO) and the IRB is provided a written summary of their comments prior to the IRB review. All ISO/PO comments must be adequately addressed and approval received by the ISO/PO prior to acknowledgement by the Associate Chief of Staff-Research (ACOS-R).

**Continuing Review of AVAMC Research Protocols:** The AVAMC Research Office maintains information on the approval periods of all AVAMC-associated projects with information obtained from Emory IRB approval letters and from the Emory IRB database for AVAMC Research. The Emory IRB sends PIs expiration notices for their AVAMC Research protocols, but PIs are ultimately responsible for monitoring the approval periods for their AVAMC Research protocols. Copies of continuation approvals and newly approved/stamped informed consent forms are sent by the VA IRB Liaison or designee directly to the AVAMC Research Office.

**Review of Amendments and Modifications to AVAMC Research Protocols:** Any amendment to or modification of an AVAMC Research protocol must be approved by the Emory IRB and acknowledged by the RDC, in that order. If the amendment addresses an issue related to biosafety or radiation safety, then the changes must be reviewed by the appropriate...
VA regulatory committee and approved by it before IRB approval. PIs must submit amendments/modifications directly to the Emory IRB for review. Once an amendment/modification has received approval from the Emory IRB, the RDC chair acknowledges the amendment unless the nature of the amendment/modification, as determined by the RDC chair, requires review by the full RDC. Amendments or modifications to AVAMC Research protocols that must be reviewed by the full RDC include (but are not limited to) modifications such as those that result in an increase of the risk to the subjects or result in a change to the PI.

**Protocol Approval Expirations:** Failure on the part of the PI to submit a protocol for continuing review prior to the protocol’s expiration date shall result in expiration of the protocol and immediate termination of all research-related activities, except for limited subject safety measures, as delineated by federal regulations. The AVAMC accepts all decisions made by the Emory IRB regarding expired IRB approvals.

**Protocol Closures:** The AVAMC accepts all **Closure** decisions made by the Emory IRB. In the event that an AVAMC Research protocol is **Closed** by the Emory IRB, but the project underlying the protocol remains active (e.g., for an animal component of the project to be completed), then the project is considered to be active by the AVAMC, but it is not considered to be an IRB-approved AVAMC Research protocol, and no activity with Human Subjects may take place, except as otherwise authorized by the Emory IRB in accordance with HHS, FDA and VA Regulations.

**Protocol Suspensions and Terminations:** Any termination or suspension by the IRB related to concerns about the safety, rights, or welfare of human research subjects, research staff, or others must be reported in writing to the AVAMC Director, ACOS-R and RDC in a timely manner after the termination or suspension occurs.

Reporting Serious Adverse Events and Problems Involving Risks to Subjects or Others in AVAMC Research are reported to the Atlanta VAMC and routed to the Emory IRB and RDC. Please note that definitions and reporting timelines and thresholds may be different (more stringent) for VA Research. Please see specific guidelines for reporting found at:

1. VA Reportable Event Policy (1.29.13)
2. Reportable Event Form (2.1.13)
3. Reporting Guidance and Requirements Table
4. VA Serious Adverse Event Reporting Flowchart
5. VA Serious Problems Reporting Flowchart
6. Reportable Event log - Editable version
7. Research Information Incidents Policy (1.25.12)
8. Research Information Incidents Flowchart

Reporting Protocol Deviations and/or Noncompliance in AVAMC Human Subjects Research to the Emory IRB and RDC is dependent upon the nature and severity of the protocol deviation and/or noncompliance. Specific guidelines for reporting Protocol Deviations and Noncompliance are found at:
Reporting to Governmental Regulatory Authorities: As described in the P&P entitled “Reporting to Governmental Regulatory Authorities,” The Emory IRB will rely on the AVAMC to make any necessary reports to governmental regulatory authorities. These reports will be made by the AVAMC Institutional Official (the AVAMC Director), through the AVAMC Research Compliance Office. The AVAMC Research Compliance Office will prepare reports documenting any determinations regarding AVAMC Research to all necessary regulatory authorities, (such as OHRP, FDA or other governmental agencies) with copies being sent to the AVAMC Research Office, the Chair of the RDC, the VA Office of Research and Development and to the Regional VA Office of Research Oversight.

Recruitment of Volunteers for AVAMC Research, including Non-Veterans: The Emory IRB shall follow the P&P entitled Recruitment of Subjects with regard to recruitment of subjects for AVAMC Research.

Non-veterans may be recruited for and entered into AVAMC Research and other VA-approved research only when there are not sufficient veterans available to complete the study in accordance with 38 CFR Sections 17.45 and .92, which permit the VA to provide inpatient/outpatient treatment to bona fide volunteers participating in VA-supported Research when there are insufficient veteran-subjects suitable for the project. Researchers can alternatively present an argument to the IRB for the inclusion of non-veterans (e.g., survey of VA employees; study of active duty military; study involving veterans’ family members), and that the research is relevant to the care of veterans or active duty military personnel. All regulations that pertain to the participation of veterans as Research subjects, including requirements for indemnification in the case of research-related injury pertain to the non-veteran subjects who are enrolled in the VA-supported Research.

The AVAMC has specific guidelines for recruitment procedures and the use of flyers and advertisements. Please refer to local AVAMC policies and guidelines for assistance at:

- Recruitment Guidelines
- Research Flyer Guidelines (2.5.13)

Classified Research: Classified research involving human participants cannot be approved by a VA facility IRB or affiliate IRB or Research and Development Committee or performed at VA facilities.

RDC and AVAMC Research Office Procedures: The procedures followed by the RDC and the AVAMC Research Office with regard to review and documentation of matters involving the Emory IRB are set forth in the VHA Handbook 1200.05 and VHA Handbook 1200.01.

Roles and Responsibilities of the AVAMC Facility Director in relation to the AVAMC HRPP: The VA Facility Director:
- Is responsible for the facility’s research program, and is assisted by the Research and Development Committee
• Oversees both the IRB and all VA Researchers and Research Staff
• Ensuring that the IRB functions independently
• Ensuring that the IRB Chair, or co-chairs, and members have direct access to the facility director for appeal if they experience undue influence or if they have concerns about the IRB.
• Ensures that IRB members, Researchers and Research Staff are appropriately knowledgeable to conduct research in accordance with ethical standards and all applicable regulations.
• Is responsible for suspending or terminating the IRB membership of any VA-representative members who are not fulfilling their member responsibilities or obligations
• Develops and implements an educational plan for IRB members and staff (in collaboration with the Emory IRB), Researchers, and Research Staff including initial and continuing education
• Fulfills all educational requirements mandated by the VA Office of Research and Development (ORD) and OHRP
• Appoints one or more research compliance officers to conduct annual research consent document audits and triennial regulatory audits, and to assist in the VA facility’s assessments of regulatory compliance
• Must report any appointment, resignation, or change in status of the research compliance officer to Office of Research Oversight VHA Central Office, with a copy to the relevant ORO research officer, within 10 business days after the appointment, resignation, or change takes effect
• Reports to ORO in writing within five business days after being notified of a research problem or event (including serious and continuing non-compliance, unanticipated problems involving risks to participants or others, and suspensions and terminations) for which such reporting is required
  o The medical center director’s written report is required regardless of whether disposition of the event has been resolved at the time of the report.
  o Follow-up reports detailing any additional findings and appropriate remedial actions must be provided to the relevant ORO office at intervals and in a manner specified by that office.
• Provides a copy of any ORO compliance reports regarding the research program to the associate chief of staff for research, Research and Development Committee, any relevant research review committee(s), and the research compliance officer in a timely fashion
• Reports the following research events to ORO Central Office, with a simultaneous copy to the appropriate ORO research officer, as indicated in the following:
  o IRB changes in number of IRBs and changes in membership rosters.
  o Substantive Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) changes must be reported to ORO Central Office within five business days.
• Accreditation problems must be reported to ORO Central Office within five working days.
• Ensuring the provision of adequate resources to support the operations of the HRPP so that those operations are in compliance with all VA and other federal requirements that govern human participants’ research protection.
• Ensuring an annual evaluation of the facility’s HRPP, including the Emory IRB. This function may be delegated to the Research and Development Committee.
• Ensuring a local research participant outreach program is implemented that includes a reliable mechanism for research participants to communicate with Researchers and with an informed VA representative who is independent of the research study in question (e.g.,
providing contact information in the consent document

**Applicable Regulations:**
45 CFR 406.103  
16 CFR §§ 16. 103(a), (b)(1), (c)  
38 CFR Part 16  
VHA Handbook 1200.05  
VHA Handbook 1058.01  
VHA Handbook 1200.01
18 DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD) SUPPORTED RESEARCH

POLICY: Research conducted by or at Emory University that is conducted or supported by the Department of Defense or one of its components (i.e., Army, Navy, Marine Corps or Air Forces) requires compliance with additional regulations, directives and instructions specific to the DOD and/or the component that is involved. Research that recruits personnel from DOD or one of its components as participants also is subject to these additional requirements. Support for the research may come from a grant, contract, subcontract, cooperative agreement or other funding arrangement.

DEFINED TERMS:

Department of Defense (DOD) Addendum: An application to the Department of Defense that supplements Emory University’s Federalwide Assurance and attests that Emory University will comply with all relevant federal regulations pertaining to a research project conducted/supported by the Department of Defense or one of the following DOD units: DOD; Department of the Navy; Marine Corps; and Air Force. The Army does not utilize a DOD Addendum; it imposes additional requirements via the contracting process.


Department of Defense (DOD) Requirements: All mandates set forth in the regulations set forth at 32 CFR Part 219; the DOD Addendum; and any DOD unit specific mandates, i.e., mandates specific to the DOD unit (Navy, Marine Corps, etc.) that is conducting or supporting the research.

Research Involving a Human Being as an Experimental Subject: For projects subject to a DOD Addendum, this term means an activity, for research purposes, where there is an intervention or interaction with a human being for the primary purpose of obtaining data regarding the effect of the intervention or interaction. Examples of interventions or interactions include, but are not limited to, a physical procedure, a drug, a manipulation of the subject of subject’s environment, the withholding of an intervention that would have been undertaken if not for the research purpose. This term does not include:

- Activities carried out for the purposes of diagnosis, treatment or prevention of injury and disease in members of the Armed Forces and other mission essential personnel under Force Health Protection programs of the Department of Defense.
- Authorized health and medical activities as part of the reasonable practice of medicine or other health professions.
- Monitoring for compliance of individuals and organizations with requirements applicable to military, civilian or contractor personnel or to organizational units. This includes activities such as drug testing, occupational health and safety monitoring and security clearance reviews.

Minimal Risk: In Research funded or conducted by the Department of Defense, the definition of Minimal Risk based on the phrase “ordinarily encountered in daily life or during the
performance of routing physical or physiological examinations or tests” is not interpreted to include the inherent risks certain categories of human subjects face in their everyday life. For example, the risks imposed in research involving human subjects focused on a special population should not be evaluated against the inherent risks encountered in their work environment (e.g., emergency responder, pilot, soldier in a combat zone) or having a medical condition (e.g., frequent medical tests or constant pain).

PROCEDURES:

1. DOD supported Research requires compliance with additional rules, regulations, directives and instructions. Research supported by the DOD, Navy, Marine Corps or Air Force is subject to a DOD Addendum that supplements Emory’s FWA. Research that is supported by the Army has additional specifications imposed via contract requirements. Researchers must notify the Emory IRB of any DOD support for their research and provide the information requested below so that additional requirements can properly be identified and followed. These additional requirements include, but are not limited to the following:

   a. **Education**: The Researcher and all personnel who conduct the DOD supported Research must complete initial and continuing ethics education: (a) CITI training as required by the Emory IRB for the individual’s role; (b) any specific education or certification required by a particular DOD funding unit. The Researcher should contact the DOD liaison for information on any such requirements and communicate them to the Emory IRB in the initial IRB submission. The IRB will verify that the specific requirements are met before issuing final approval of the research study. The DOD Component may evaluate the education policies to ensure the personnel are qualified to perform the research, based on the complexity and risk of the research.

   In addition, all personnel involved in reviewing, approving, supporting, conducting, managing, or overseeing research involving human subjects must complete initial and ongoing research ethics and human subject protections training appropriate to each individual’s level of involvement, duties, and responsibilities. In addition to the basic and refresher CITI modules required of all IRB members, and the basic CITI modules and continuing education requirements for the IRB staff, the Emory IRB analyst assigned to a DOD-supported study, with assistance from the PI, will determine the need for orientation and/or education of the IRB chair, members involved in the review of the research study, IRB staff, and Institutional Official per any additional education requirements of the particular DOD funding unit. The IRB will verify that the specific training requirements for these personnel are met prior to issuing final approval of the research study.

   b. **Scientific Review**: DOD supported research must undergo separate departmental scientific review before it comes to the IRB for review. Scientific review by another site in a multisite study may be sufficient. Evidence of this review must be provided to the Emory IRB. See IRB P&Ps entitled *Number of IRBs and Registration and IRB Policy & Procedure and Criteria for Emory IRB*
Approval of Research for additional information regarding this review requirement.

c. International Research: When the Research is to be conducted outside of the U.S. or its territories and involves participants who are not U.S. citizens or DOD personnel, it requires the written permission of the host country and compliance with the host country’s laws, regulations and customs. See Emory IRB P&P Local Research Context; Research Conducted At International Performance Sites for additional information regarding international DOD supported research.

d. Classified Research: Non-exempt classified research must be conducted following the requirements of 3216.02.13

e. Reporting Requirements: DOD supported research requires notification to DOD units serious and continuing non-compliance, as well as other events. See Emory IRB P&P entitled Reporting to Governmental Regulatory Authorities for additional information regarding these requirements.

f. Multi-Site Research: For DOD-supported multi-site research, a written agreement must be in place among Emory and the other sites. In the case of an Army supported project, the Army will generate this agreement as a contract. For other DOD components, Emory will work with the researcher to generate the agreement. See P&P entitled Emory IRB Relationships with Other Institutions; Reliance Arrangement for IRB Review for additional information regarding the elements required for this Agreement.

g. Survey or Questionnaire Research: Research that involves such survey must be separately approved by the appropriate DOD unit after the Emory IRB approves the research protocol. See Emory IRB P&P entitled Exempt Research for additional information regarding DOD supported research involving surveys/questionnaires.

h. Greater Than Minimal Risk Research: For DOD-supported research that is greater than minimal risk, a named, independent research monitor must be appointed. See IRB Policy & Procedure -- Data and Safety Monitoring Plans for details regarding the types of persons who may serve as research monitors and the monitor’s responsibilities.

i. Research Related Injury: DOD supported research requires the research site to make arrangements for the provision of treatment for research related injuries and some DOD components require that participants not bear any costs related to such treatment. Researchers should contact their DOD funding unit’s liaison to determine specific requirements. See IRB Policy and Procedure -- Informed Consent Policy for additional information regarding research related injury requirements.

j. Waiver of Informed Consent: In order for a waiver of informed consent to be permitted for DOD supported Research, the IRB must determine that the research participants for whom consent is to be waived do not fall within the category of “experimental subjects” as set forth within the term “Research Involving a Human Being as an Experimental Subject.” The full definition of this term and other information regarding waiver of informed consent for DOD supported research can be found in IRB Policy and Procedure -- Waiver or Alteration of Informed Consent for Research.
k. **Planned Emergency Research** – For DOD supported research, the Secretary of Defense must waive the requirement of informed consent for planned emergency research. See IRB Policy and Procedure – *Waiver of Informed Consent for Planned Emergency Research.*

l. **Investigational Drugs, Biologics & Devices** – Certain DOD requirements may not apply when investigational drugs, biologics or devices are used for Force Health Protection in accordance with DOD Directive 6200.2 – Use of Investigational New drugs for Force Health Protection (Aug. 1, 2000). [See SECNAVINST 3900.39D Para. 4b(5).]

m. **Recruitment of Subjects** – Additional DOD requirements must be followed for Research that recruits DOD personnel or U.S. military personnel as subjects. See IRB Policy and Procedure – Recruitment of Subjects for a description of these additional requirements.


o. **Prisoners of War** – DOD supported research prohibits the use of Prisoners of War as human subjects. See IRB Policy & Procedure – Research Involving Prisoners – Additional Protections for details and definition of Prisoners of War.

p. **Surrogate Consent** – The IRB must determine that a study is intended to benefit a subject before a legally authorized representative can consent on the subject’s behalf. See IRB Policy and Procedure – *Legally Authorized Representatives and Surrogate Consent.*

q. **Research Involving Human Subjects for Testing of Chemical or Biological Agents** – Research in this category is generally prohibited with narrow exceptions for research for prophylactic, protective or other peaceful purposes that is conducted in accordance with 50 U.S.C. Section 1520a. [See DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 4.4.5].

r. **Research Misconduct** – The University’s Policy on Research Misconduct (Policy 7.8) shall apply with respect to all DOD supported research. [See DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 4.8].

s. **Competing and Conflicting Interests** – IRB Policy and Procedure – Conflict of Interest on the Part of IRB Administrators; IRB Members and Staff Members; Handling Undue Influence of Investigators shall apply to all DOD supported research. In addition, the University’s Policy on Conflict of Interest (Policy 4.87) and Policy on Researchers Holding Financial Interests in Research (Policy 7.7) shall apply with respect to all DOD supported research. [See DOD Addendum; SECNAVINST 3900.39D Para. 6(b)].

t. **Subject Compensation** – If the DOD supported research includes DOD or U.S. military personnel as subjects, then dual compensation restrictions may apply. See IRB Policy and Procedure – Payment of Subjects for details regarding these restrictions.

u. **Record-Keeping** – Record keeping requirements for DOD supported research may vary among the DOD units that are providing the support. Researchers
should consult with their DOD liaisons to determine the appropriate requirements. Records maintained that document compliance or non-compliance with DoD regulations must be made accessible for inspection and copying by representatives of the DoD at reasonable times and in a reasonable manner as determined by the supporting DoD component [See DOD Addendum].

v. **Oversight** – The DOD component that supports the Research shall have oversight with respect thereto, including research review and site visits. [See DOD Addendum].

2. Researchers who are receiving DOD support for a study must provide the Emory IRB with the following information at the time of their submission of an initial IRB application to the Emory IRB:

   a. State whether the study involves multiple sites, and if so, list the roles and responsibilities of each party at each site participating in the research. A written agreement must be in place among Emory and the other sites.

   b. State whether the study involves any surveys or questionnaires that will be given to DOD personnel and/or U.S. military personnel. Research that involves such surveys must be separately approved by the appropriate DOD unit after the Emory IRB approves the research protocol.

   c. State whether the study involves more than minimal risk. If so, then the appointment of a named, independent research monitor is required. The research monitor must be independent of the study team and his/her name and CV must be provided to the IRB. (Note: The IRB, in its discretion, also may require a medical monitor for minimal risk studies.)

   d. State whether the study, or any part of the study, will be conducted outside of the United States or its territories and involve participants who are not U.S. citizens or DOD personnel. Research in other countries that involves non-U.S. citizens or persons who are not DOD personnel requires the written permission of the host country and compliance with the host country’s laws, regulations and customs. Documentation of such approval and certification of such compliance must be provided to the IRB.

   e. State whether the research will include DOD personnel or U.S. Military personnel as participants. If so, the IRB application must specify how the additional requirements set forth in IRB Policy and Procedure—Recruitment of Subjects will be met. In addition, certification must be provided that all requirements set forth in IRB Policy and Procedure—Payment of Subjects will be followed.

   f. State whether a waiver of informed consent is being requested, and if so, state whether participants will fall within the definition of **Research Involving a Human Being as an Experimental Subject** (see above). If so, any waiver of consent must be granted by the Secretary of Defense.

   g. State whether the research involves prisoners of war.

   h. State whether the research involves testing of chemical or biological agents.

   i. State whether the research subject population is one for which it is likely that surrogate consent may have to be obtained.
j. **State whether research ethics education requirements have been met by all research team members.** Documentation of completing educational requirements must be provided to the IRB.

**APPLICABLE REGULATIONS:**

10 U.S.C. 980  
32 CFR Part 219  
DOD Directives 3210.7, 3216.2, 6200.2.  
SECNAVINST 3900.39D  
OPNAVINST 5300.8C
19 EMORY IRB ADMINISTRATION AND OFFICIALS

POLICY:

The President of Emory University appoints an IO who has responsibility for oversight of all IRB activities. The IO appoints an IRB Chair and Vice Chairs who are responsible for the conduct and oversight of IRB Human Subjects Research review activities.

PROCEDURES:

Institutional Official (IO):

Appointment, Term and Qualifications of IO: The appointment, term and qualifications of the IO are as set forth above in the P&P entitled Institutional Authority.

Qualifications of IO: In order to be eligible for appointment as IO, an individual must be an employee of Emory University who holds a position within the University per which he/she has the legal authority to act and speak for Emory University as a whole, and per which he/she can ensure that Emory IRB will effectively fulfill its Human Subjects Research oversight functions.

Responsibilities of IO: The IO shall have top-level oversight for all Emory IRB activities. The IO shall execute any agreements on behalf of the Emory IRB, including agreements to serve as an IRB of record for another entity or to rely on another IRB for review of Emory University related Human Subjects Research.

The IO shall be responsible for making any required annual report to appropriate governmental agencies, and for making such other reports to these agencies as are required by law or as the IO deems appropriate or as requested by the IRB Chair.

The IO shall appoint the IRB Chair and Vice Chairs.

Appoint members to IRB Committees in consultation with the IRB Chair and Director.

Provide performance reviews of the IRB Chair and Vice Chairs in consultation with IRB Director.

Provide a performance review of the IRB Director in consultation with the IRB Chair.

Consult with IRB Chair and Director on performance review of IRB members.

Perform any other duties assigned to him/her by the HHS, FDA and/or VA Regulations, these P&Ps or other applicable University policies and procedures.

Delegation of IO’s Duties: The IO may designate in writing additional Emory University administrators to assist him/her in the performance of his/her oversight responsibilities. The IO shall specify in writing any responsibilities being delegated.

Performance Review: The Executive Vice-Presidents of Emory University shall review the
performance of the IO on an annual basis to ensure that he/she is acting in full accordance with all applicable policies, laws and regulations.

IRB Chair:

Appointment and Term: The IO shall appoint the IRB Chair in writing. Unless sooner terminated, the IRB Chair's term shall be for five (5) years from the effective date of appointment set forth in the IO’s written appointment document. At the expiration of the IRB Chair's term, provided the IRB Chair is in good standing, the IO may re-appoint the IRB Chair for one or more additional consecutive term(s) without limitation.

Qualifications: The IRB Chair must be a highly respected individual from within Emory University who is fully capable of managing the Emory IRB and the matters brought before it with fairness and impartiality. The IRB Chair should have the highest educational or professional degree in his/her field; have extensive knowledge of the conduct of Human Subjects Research; have extensive understanding of and familiarity with laws, regulations, Emory IRB P&Ps, and other applicable Emory University policies and procedures; and have been a member in good standing of the Emory IRB or another IRB for at least two (2) years.

The IRB Chair shall be a faculty member or employee of a unit of Emory University. The task of making the IRB a respected part of the institutional community will fall primarily on the shoulders of the IRB Chair. The Chair must ensure that the IRB is perceived to be fair, impartial and immune to pressure by the institution’s administration, the Investigators whose protocols are brought before the IRB, and other professional and non-professional sources.

Resignation: The IRB Chair may resign from his/her position at any time upon written notice to the IO. The IRB Chair shall specify an effective date in his/her resignation. The IO shall appoint an interim or permanent replacement IRB Chair to begin service upon the effective date of the IRB Chair's resignation. Any actions taken by the former IRB Chair after the effective date of his/her resignation shall be null and void. The IRB Chair's resignation and the effective date thereof, as well as the appointment of any interim or permanent successor, shall be announced by the IRB Director at each IRB Committee meeting that takes place after the resignation notice is received.

Removal: The IO may remove the IRB Chair from his/her position at any time that the IO determines in his/her discretion that the IRB Chair is not appropriately or adequately fulfilling his/her job responsibilities, or has violated applicable laws, regulations or Emory University policies or procedures, or has been involved in any activities or neglect of duty that would cause harm to the operations or reputation of the Emory IRB. Upon removal of the IRB Chair, the IO shall appoint an interim or permanent replacement IRB Chair. The removal of the IRB Chair, the appointment of any interim or permanent successor and the effective dates of such events shall be announced by the IRB Director at each IRB Committee meeting as soon as possible after the event takes place.

Responsibilities of the IRB Chair: The IRB Chair shall perform the following responsibilities with regard to the Emory IRB:

Convene and lead regular IRB Committee meetings.
Convene and lead IRB Committee and subcommittee meetings as necessary.

Sign correspondence for the Emory IRB.

Designate IRB Vice Chairs and/or other IRB members to perform duties, and delegate review and signature authority to such designees, as appropriate.

Make decisions in emergency situations to protect Human Subjects and remain in compliance with regulations.

Appoint any consultants to perform reviews or assist IRB members in the review process.

Make or review and confirm reviewer assignments.

Make or review and confirm decisions regarding assignment of Research protocols to Full Review, Expedited Review or as being exempt from IRB review.

Review or delegate reviews of reports received by the Emory IRB and determine which reports require review by full IRB Committee.

Perform Expedited Reviews of Research protocols or designate a Vice Chair or other experienced reviewer who is a member of the Emory IRB to perform an Expedited Review. Expedited Reviews shall be performed by the Chair (or Vice Chair or Designated Reviewers) as defined in the P&P entitled Expedited Review. As a general guideline, a member will be eligible for designation to conduct expedited reviews if he or she has been a member of the Emory IRB or another IRB in good standing for at least six months and is current with training requirements. The Chair may designate qualified members to perform expedited reviews on a term basis or as needed on a case-by-case basis, preferably in writing (letter, email, memorandum, etc.).

Review or assist in review of revisions to Research protocols and informed consent documents in order to make sure that any changes or other modifications or additions required as a condition of approval have been made.

Review or assist in review of Serious Adverse Event (SAE) reports and reports of Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others and make recommendation/determinations as to any IRB Committee review/actions that should take place in light of such reports.

Assist in the development and review of Emory IRB policies, procedures and forms.

Relate concerns of Emory IRB staff and members to Emory University administrators regarding issues concerning Human Subjects Research and the Emory IRB.

Review complaints received regarding Human Subjects Research and put in place appropriate procedures for inquiring into and making determinations and
recommendations regarding such complaints.

Make any required reports to governmental regulatory agencies, sponsors or university officials, or refer such reports to IO for reporting by IO.

Suspend enrollment in or conduct of Research protocols in accordance with Emory HRPP P&Ps or applicable legal and regulatory requirements, pending IRB Committee review.

Report the IO and any other appropriate Emory University or governmental officials on matters involving Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance, Unanticipated Problems Involving Risk to Subjects or Others, or any other serious concerns about the dignity, safety or welfare of Human Subjects in Research within the Emory IRB’s oversight.

Review of IRB member performance and competence in consultation with IO and IRB Director.

Consult with IO regarding performance review of IRB Director. Perform any other duties assigned to him/her by the HHS, FDA and/or VA Regulations, these P&Ps or other applicable University policies and procedures.

Delegation of Responsibilities to Vice Chairs: For any period of absence or unavailability, the IRB Chair’s duties automatically shall be delegated to the Vice Chair for each IRB Committee. In addition, at any time, the IRB Chair may delegate specific responsibilities to any Vice Chair, provided that the delegation of responsibility is in writing.

Delegation of Responsibilities to IRB Director: The IRB Chair (or any Vice Chair) may delegate the following responsibilities to the IRB Director, who in turn may seek the assistance of any Assistant Director, Protocol Analyst or other Emory IRB staff member in performing such responsibilities:

Review of Research protocols received to make a preliminary assessment as to whether the Research protocol requires review by full IRB Committee, Expedited Review, is Exempt from review, or does not constitute Human Subjects Research..

Make initial assignments of Research protocols to IRB members for review, subject to change in consultation with IRB members, IRB staff, or the Chair/Vice Chair.

Review requested revisions to Research protocols or informed consent documents to make preliminary determination as to whether requested changes were made, subject to confirmatory review by Chair/Vice Chair.

Review HIPAA Authorizations and Applications for Waiver of HIPAA Authorization eligible for expedited review, for compliance with HIPAA Regulations, subject to confirmatory review by IRB Chair/Vice Chair.

Perform any other duties assigned to him/her by the HHS, FDA and/or VA Regulations, these P&Ps or other applicable University policies and procedures.
Compensation: The type and amount of compensation (if any) to the IRB Chair for the performance of IRB-related duties shall be determined by the IO and/or his/her designees.

Vice Chairs:

Appointment and Term: The IO shall appoint at least one Vice Chair for each IRB Committee. The Vice Chair shall be a member of the IRB Committee to which he/she has been appointed Vice Chair. The appointment of the Vice Chair shall be in writing signed by the IO. Unless sooner terminated, the term of a Vice Chair’s appointment shall be for three (3) years from the effective date of appointment specified in the IO’s written appointment. At the conclusion of a term, the IO may re-appoint a Vice Chair for one or more additional consecutive term(s), without limitation.

Qualifications: The Vice Chair shall have been for at least one (1) year a member in good standing on an IRB Committee and shall have an extensive understanding of and familiarity with laws, regulations, Emory IRB P&Ps, and other applicable Emory University policies and procedures.

Resignation: A Vice Chair may resign at any time by giving written notice of his/her resignation specifying an effective date to the IO, with a copy to the IRB Chair. The IO shall appoint an interim Vice Chair to take over upon the effective date of the Vice Chair’s resignation until appointment of a permanent Vice Chair by the IO. Any resignation of a Vice Chair or appointment of an interim or permanent Vice Chair shall be announced by the IRB Director or Chair at the next meeting of the appropriate IRB Committee that takes place after the appointment is made. Any action taken by a former Vice Chair after the effective date of his/her resignation shall be null and void.

Removal: The IO may remove a Vice Chair at any time upon determination in the IO’s discretion that the Vice Chair is not appropriately or adequately fulfilling his/her job responsibilities, or has violated applicable laws, regulations or Emory University policies or procedures, or has been involved in any activities or neglect of duty that would cause harm to the operations or reputation of the Emory IRB. Upon removal of the Vice Chair, the IO shall appoint a replacement Vice Chair. Any removal of a Vice Chair or appointment of a replacement shall be announced by the IRB Director at the next meeting of the appropriate IRB Committee that takes place after the appointment occurs.

Vice Chair Responsibilities: The Vice Chair shall have the same authority and responsibility as the Chair and shall perform the IRB Chair’s responsibilities for the IRB Committee to which the Vice Chair is appointed in the absence of or at the direction of the IRB Chair. The Vice Chair also shall perform such responsibilities as are delegated to him/her by the IRB Chair or as are specified as belonging to the Vice Chair elsewhere in the HHS, FDA or VA Regulations, these P&Ps or other applicable policies and procedures of Emory University. The Vice Chair shall report any problems or instances of non-compliance to the IO, the IRB Chair or any other appropriate Emory University or governmental officials.

Compensation: The type and amount of compensation (if any) to a Vice Chair for the performance of Emory IRB-related duties shall be determined by the IO and/or his/her
designees.

**Performance Review:** The performance of each IRB *Vice Chair* will be reviewed on an annual basis by the IO in consultation with the IRB *Director*.

**IRB Director:**

**Appointment and Term:** The IRB *Director* shall be appointed by and report to the IO, and/or the IO’s designee(s), to serve as the Emory IRB administrative official in charge of overseeing the day-to-day operations of the Emory IRB.

**Qualifications:** The IRB *Director* shall have extensive knowledge of laws, regulations, and Emory University policies and procedures bearing on Emory IRB operations and protections for *Human Subjects in Research*.

**Removal and Resignation:** The IRB *Director* shall be an at-will employee of Emory University and shall serve at the pleasure of the IO and/or the IO’s designee(s) in accordance with all applicable Emory University human resources policies governing other Emory University employees. If the IRB *Director* resigns, he/she shall notify the IO, the IO’s designee(s), and the IRB *Chair* in writing, including an effective date for the resignation. Any resignation of the IRB *Director* and/or the appointment of a permanent or interim IRB *Director* shall be announced by the IRB *Chair* at the soonest of each *IRB Committee* meeting that occurs after the resignation notice is received. Any action taken by a former IRB *Director* after the effective date of his/her resignation or removal shall be null and void.

**Responsibilities:** The IRB *Director* shall have the following responsibilities, as well as any other responsibilities assigned to the IRB *Director* elsewhere in these P&Ps:

- Assist the IRB *Chair, Vice Chairs* and IRB members in carrying out their Emory IRB-related responsibilities.

- Perform any responsibilities delegated to the IRB *Director* by the IRB *Chair*, as appropriate.

- Provide oversight and guidance for *Assistant Director* and *Protocol Analysts* and other Emory IRB staff members in carrying out their Emory IRB-related responsibilities.

- Develop, implement and provide oversight for processes and procedures to be followed in the day-to-day operations of the Emory IRB.

- Attend *IRB Committee* meetings whenever possible to provide advice and assistance.

- Inform the IO and his/her designee on Emory IRB operations.

- Assist *Researchers* and research personnel at Emory University in navigating Emory IRB processes and procedures and addressing questions and concerns regarding Emory IRB operations.
Carry out other duties as assigned by the IO, the IO’s designee and the IRB Chair, or as are elsewhere specified as belonging to the Director in these P&Ps or other applicable Emory University policies and procedures.

Initiate review and update of Emory IRB P&Ps on at least an annual basis.

Provide oversight for all document retention and security P&Ps that the Emory IRB is required to follow.

Maintain current status of Emory FWA and Emory IRB registration and provide updated membership rosters to OHRP and other appropriate regulatory agencies.

Report any serious problems and matters involving Serious or Continuing Non-compliance or Ups to the IO and/or the IRB Chair or other appropriate Emory University or governmental officials.

Consult with IO on performance review of IRB Chair and Vice Chairs, and perform performance reviews of Assistant Director and Protocol Analysts.

Consult with IRB Chair and IO regarding performance review of IRB members.

Perform any other duties assigned to him/her by the HHS, FDA and/or VA Regulations, these P&Ps or other applicable University policies and procedures.

Delegation of Duties: The IRB Director shall have the authority to hire and fire one or more Assistant Directors, Protocol Analysts and other personnel to assist the IRB Director in carrying out his/her responsibilities, and the IRB Director may delegate his/her duties to these individuals as appropriate.

Compensation: The IRB Director shall be a salaried employee of Emory University whose compensation is established by the IO or his/her designee and in accordance with all applicable Emory University human resources policies.

Performance Review: The IRB Director’s performance will be reviewed on an annual basis by the IO and/or his/her designee in consultation with the IRB Chair. If the Director is not acting in accordance with the IRB’s mission, following these P&Ps and/or is not fulfilling the responsibilities of the Director, then he/she will be removed.

Supervisory Staff:

Hiring: The IRB Director may hire one or more supervisory staff (e.g., Assistant Directors, Team Leads, Education & Quality Assurance Consultants) to assist the IRB Director and to perform other duties and functions necessary for the day-to-day operations of the Emory IRB. All such individuals shall be at-will employees of Emory University and shall work under the direction and supervision of the IRB Director. They shall be subject to all human resources and compensation policies of Emory University.

Specific Responsibility of Supervisory Staff: In the event of the IRB Director’s absence the
supervisory staff shall assume and carry out the IRB Director’s responsibilities. The IO may designate one supervisory staff member to assume the role of the IRB Director in his or her discretion. In addition, the supervisory staff shall, at any time, perform any of the IRB Director’s job duties delegated in writing by the IRB Director; assigned by the HHS, FDA and/or VA Regulations; or assigned by these P&Ps or other applicable University policies and procedures.

Compensation: Compensation for the supervisory staff shall be determined by the IRB Director in accordance with applicable Emory University human resources policies.

Performance Review: The IRB Director shall review the performance of the Assistant Director on an annual basis.

Protocol Analysts:

Hiring: The IRB Director may hire one or more Protocol Analysts to assist the IRB Director and to perform other duties and functions necessary for the day-to-day operations of the Emory IRB. All such individuals shall be at-will employees of Emory University and shall work under the direction and supervision of the IRB Director. They shall be subject to all human resources and compensation policies of Emory University.

Responsibilities: All such persons shall have their responsibilities determined by the IRB Director and included in appropriate job descriptions. In addition, Protocol Analysts shall perform such duties as may be assigned to them by these P&Ps or other applicable University policies and procedures.

Compensation: Compensation for the Protocol Analyst(s) shall be determined by the IRB Director in accordance with applicable Emory University human resources policies.

Performance Review: The IRB Director shall review the performance of each Protocol Analyst on an annual basis.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR § 46.103; Emory FWA.
38 CFR §46.103.
20 SUBCOMMITTEES OF THE EMORY IRB

POLICY:

The IRB Chair in consultation with IRB Director may designate one or more IRB members to serve on a subcommittee in order to perform functions, as appropriate: (a) on behalf of the IRB; or (b) for review and adoption by the full IRB. The IRB Chair may request that non-IRB members with particular expertise serve as consultants to any such subcommittees.

PROCEDURES:

Appointment of a Subcommittee: The IRB Chair, or in his/her absence, a Vice Chair shall appoint IRB members to serve on an IRB subcommittee and shall charge the subcommittee with its duties. All appointments and charges shall be in writing. A subcommittee may consist of one or more members.

Duties of Subcommittees and Required Composition: IRB subcommittees may perform any or all of the following duties, and as noted in some instances, have a particular composition:

- **Expedited Review**: The IRB Chair may appoint a subcommittee of experienced IRB members to perform the Expedited Review of new or continuing protocols or modifications/amendments. The IRB Chair or a Vice Chair must serve as the (or a) member on any such subcommittee charged with performing Expedited Reviews. The experience of the member(s) of the subcommittee must be matched as closely as possible with the field of expertise relevant to the study.

- **Review and Approval of Revisions Requiring Only Simple Concurrence**: The IRB Chair may appoint a subcommittee of experienced IRB members to perform the review of Research protocols granted Approval Pending revisions, provided that the revisions are of a nature, which require only simple concurrence by the PI. The IRB Chair or a Vice Chair must serve as the (or a) member on any such subcommittee charged with performing such reviews.

- **Review Serious Adverse Events or Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others**: The IRB Chair may appoint a subcommittee to perform the review of Serious Adverse Events or Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others with regard to issues of participant safety, necessity of changes to protocol and/or consent procedures, etc. The IRB Chair or a Vice Chair must serve as the (or a) member on any such subcommittee charged with performing such reviews.

- **Conduct of an Inquiry**: The IRB Chair may appoint a subcommittee to conduct an inquiry into allegations of non-compliance that come to the attention of the IRB. The scope of the IRB’s inquiry shall be established by the IRB Chair and may include any or all of the following items: (a) review of protocols in question; (b) review of any monitoring or audit reports of the Investigator(s) involved; (c) review of relevant documentation, including consent documents, case report forms, subject’s Research or medical records, as they relate to the investigator(s) execution of the protocol involving...
Human Subjects; (d) interviews of appropriate personnel, as necessary; (e) preparation of a written report of findings including recommended actions, as appropriate. Any subcommittee charged with the conduct of an inquiry shall report its findings and recommendations to the full IRB for review and action (e.g., approval or approval with modifications).

Conduct of an On-Site Review: The IRB Chair may appoint a subcommittee to conduct an on-site review of an Investigator’s work in order to assess compliance with IRB requirements; evaluate risk to subjects; evaluate consent procedures, etc.

Other Functions as Determined by the IRB: The IRB Chair may appoint a subcommittee to carry out additional functions of the IRB as determined by the full IRB. In all such cases, the IRB shall specify in writing: (a) what the charge of the subcommittee shall be; (b) whether the Chair or a Vice Chair must be a member of any such subcommittee; and (d) whether the subcommittee’s actions and recommendations must be approved by the full IRB prior to adoption.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR §§ 46.103(b)(1)-(2); 46.109; 46.111; & 46.112.
21 CFR Parts 50 and 56, including 21 CFR §§ 56.109 & 56.112.
21 CONDUCT OF QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY IMPROVEMENT ACTIVITIES FOR
EMORY IRB OPERATIONS

POLICY:

The Emory IRB shall follow a quality assurance plan (QA Plan) to ensure that its operations are adequate and adjusted to achieve appropriate levels of quality and compliance. The QA Plan shall focus on key areas of the Emory HRPP including IRB operations, investigator activities, study subject comprehension and satisfaction, IRB Member review activities, recordkeeping, etc.

PROCEDURES:

Guidelines for the Quality Assurance Plan:

The Emory IRB, in conjunction with representatives of other units of the Emory HRPP, engages in a comprehensive review on a periodic basis, using the QA Plan as a guide. The IRB Director shall ensure that the QA Plan is implemented, reviewed periodically, and revised. The following issues shall serve as guidelines for the periodic review and revision of the QA Plan:

1. Have the Emory IRB P&Ps kept pace with any changes in the standards for accreditation promulgated by the Association for Accreditation of Human Research Protection Programs (AAHRPP) since Emory’s most recent accreditation? Are clear steps outlined as to what changes need to be made?
2. Which metrics does the Emory IRB use to benchmark standards and measure progress?
3. Do Human Subjects Research Investigators at Emory understand their obligations under the Belmont Principles?
4. Is the IRB documentation and recordkeeping system complete, accurate, and flexible enough to provide the necessary documentation of compliance with federal regulations and to satisfactorily serve the Emory human research community?
5. Is the system sufficiently responsive so that human research investigators can plan, obtain approval, and meet reporting requirements in a timely manner that facilitates the educational, research, and clinical missions of the institution?
6. Does the IRB provide adequate support and education for its Members and staff to fulfill their responsibilities under the Emory HRPP? Are the opinions of all IRB members sought and respected?
7. Are IRB Committee meetings functioning in a consistent manner across panels?
8. Is the burden of IRB membership equitably shared across the institution? Are experts outside the IRB consulted when appropriate?
9. Are IRB decisions communicated efficiently and effectively? Do letter templates require revision?
10. Are reports to federal agencies submitted and monitored for follow-up?
11. Do IRB staff members understand their duties clearly? Can they keep pace with the volume of work without losing quality?
12. How are delays in reviews monitored and handled? What difficulties does the Emory IRB face and how do they impact the Emory HRPP?
13. Is there clear evidence of ongoing quality improvement? If so, in which areas?
The revised QA Plan should be reviewed by the IO, IRB Chair, Director, and qualified staff and kept at the IRB Office. Copies shall be made available upon request.

**Periodic Assessment of Outreach Activities:** The IRB Chair, Director, and Education and Quality Assurance staff of the Emory IRB will meet at least once a year to evaluate the IRB outreach to participants, researchers, and IRB members. Assessments may include interviews, surveys, focus groups, written evaluations, website feedback, etc.

**Inquiries/Audits:** The IRB shall conduct for-cause and not-for-cause reviews/audits of Research protocols subject to its jurisdiction in accordance with the P&P entitled: Protocol Oversight and Procedures for Handling Audits and Violations.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR §§ 46.103(b)(1)-(2); 46.109; 46.111; & 46.112.
21 CFR Parts 50 and 56, including 21 CFR §§ 56.109 & 56.112.
22 IRB MEMBERSHIP

POLICY:

The IO shall appoint qualified members to serve on the IRB with such backgrounds and qualifications as are necessary to provide appropriate expertise for reviewing Research protocols and to satisfy all membership requirements of the HHS, FDA and VA Regulations. Members shall carry out all duties required of IRB members per the HHS, VA and FDA Regulations and as specified in these P&Ps. The Vice President for Research Administration and any other individual responsible for business development are not permitted to serve as member or ex-officio member of the IRB or carry out day-to-day operations of the IRB review process.

PROCEDURES:

Composition of the IRB: Each IRB Committee shall have at least five members with varying backgrounds to promote complete and adequate review of Human Subjects Research activities commonly conducted by Emory University.

Qualifications of IRB Members: All IRB members shall be appropriately qualified by education and/or professional experience to serve in their particular IRB role and membership category on the IRB Committee to which they are appointed. One member may satisfy more than one membership category. Selection of members to the IRB shall take into account the following qualifications and requirements:

IRB members shall have knowledge of applicable law and HHS, FDA and VA Regulations;

IRB members shall have knowledge of Emory University commitments and policies;

IRB members shall be sufficiently qualified through the experience and expertise of its members and the diversity of the members, including considerations of race, gender, and cultural backgrounds, as well as sensitivity to such issues as community attitudes to promote respect of its advice and counsel on safeguarding the right and welfare of Human Subjects.

IRB members will possess the professional competence necessary to review specific Research activities and will include persons knowledgeable in a variety of areas such that the IRB will be able to ascertain the acceptability of proposed Research in terms of institutional policies and regulations, applicable law, and standards of professional conduct and practice.

If the IRB regularly reviews Research that involves a Vulnerable Population (e.g., Children, Prisoners, Pregnant Women, or handicapped or mentally disabled persons), consideration will be given to the inclusion of one or more individuals on the IRB who are knowledgeable about and experienced in working with these subjects. When protocols involve Vulnerable Populations, the review process will include one or more individuals who are knowledgeable about or have experience in working with these
participants either as members of the IRB or as consultants.

In the case of IRB review of Research in which Prisoners are involved: at least one IRB member shall be a Prisoner Representative who has an appropriate background and experience to review protocols involving Prisoners, except that when a protocol is reviewed by more than one IRB Committee, only one of the reviewing IRB Committees needs to meet this requirement; and

Every nondiscriminatory effort will be made to ensure that no IRB has members who are all males or females.

The IRB shall not consist entirely of members of one profession.

Each IRB has at least one member who represents the perspective of research participants.

The IRB shall include at least one member whose primary concerns are in scientific areas and at least one member whose primary concerns are in non-scientific areas.

The IRB shall include at least one member who is not otherwise affiliated with the institution and who is not part of the immediate family of a person who is affiliated with the institution.

Note: Veterans whose only relationship with the VA facility is receiving care at a VA facility or receiving benefits from the Veterans Benefits Administration are not considered to be affiliated for the purpose of being an IRB member. Individuals who perform occasional volunteer activities without compensation (WOC) are not considered affiliated. However, those who hold a WOC appointment for volunteer activities other than IRB service are considered to be affiliated. Individuals who have retired from the VA and who are receiving VA retirement benefits are considered affiliated.

The Emory IRB is designated as an IRB of record for the AVAMC/AREF and accordingly, it shall include two or more AVAMC employees as members of the IRB on each IRB Committee that reviews AVAMC Human Subjects Research protocols. The AVAMC members shall serve as full members of the IRB Committee and shall participate in reviewing non-AVAMC Research matters coming before the IRB. At least one of the AVAMC members of the IRB must be present during the review of any AVAMC Research protocols.

AVAMC research and development administration officials including but not limited to the Associated Chief of Staff for Research and Development and the Administrative Officer for Research and Development are prohibited from serving as voting members of the Emory IRB.

Review of Membership for Compositional Requirements:

Determination that IRB Committee Compositional Requirements are Met Overall: On at least an annual basis, the IRB Director shall be responsible for the review of the membership and
composition of each IRB Committee in order to determine whether they continue to meet all institutional and regulatory requirements.

**Determination that IRB Committee Compositional Requirements are Met for a Particular Meeting:** The IRB Chair and Director, with assistance from the IRB staff, shall be responsible for ensuring that compositional requirements for specific IRB Committee meetings are met depending upon the nature of the protocols to be reviewed at that IRB Committee meeting. Protocol Analysts shall note in the minutes for the IRB Committee meeting which IRB members present satisfy the compositional requirements for the meeting as a whole and for any particular protocols that require a particular compositional requirement for review.

**Appointment of IRB Members:** The IO shall nominate qualified individuals to serve as members on IRB Committees. The IO may accept nominations of potential members from schools and departments within the University. The IO (or his/her designee) shall review all nominees and in consultation with the IRB Chair and Director may appoint qualified persons in writing to serve as IRB members. Each member’s term shall be either determinate (such as for two or three years, to be specified in the appointment letter) or indeterminate (for as long as the member’s service on the IRB is mutually agreeable, or until the member resigns or is removed from IRB membership). At the conclusion of a member’s defined term, provided the member is in good standing, the IO may re-appoint the member for one or more additional consecutive term(s), without limitation.

**Appointment of AVAMC Representatives as Members:** AVAMC IRB appointees are nominated in writing for membership on the Emory IRB by the AVAMC Associate Chief of Staff for Research, through the RDC, and are appointed for membership on the Emory IRB by the Director of the AVAMC. All members representing the AVAMC must have an interest in the AVAMC as shown by having at least a 1/8ths compensated appointment with the AVAMC or a geographical appointment. Members must further have an interest in AVAMC Research and must demonstrate competence in Human Subjects Research protections by meeting all AVAMC and Emory IRB member educational requirements. The AVAMC representatives shall be appointed for a period of three (3) years. At the conclusion of an AVAMC representative’s term, provided that the representative is in good standing, the Director of the AVAMC may re-appoint the representative for one or more additional consecutive three-year term(s), without limitation.

**Communication of Appointment to IRB Committee:** The IRB Chair or Director will announce the appointment of a new IRB member at a meeting of the IRB Committee to which the member is being appointed.

**Considerations in Making Appointments:** The IO shall appoint IRB members to serve on IRB Committees in sufficient number and type to ensure that all compositional requirements of the HHS, FDA and VA Regulations are met and to ensure that each IRB Committee can regularly achieve a Quorum at its meetings.

**One Member, One Vote:** Each member appointed by the IO (or designee) to serve on an IRB Committee shall be entitled to only one vote.

**Voting by Proxy:** Voting by proxy is prohibited.
**Resignation:** An IRB member may resign by submitting his/her written resignation indicating the effective period to the IRB Chair, Director, or IRB staff member (who must forward it promptly to the IRB Director). The IRB member may not take any action with regard to IRB-related activities after such resignation date, and any such actions are null and void. The IRB Chair or Director shall announce an IRB member’s resignation and its effective date at the first meeting of the IRB Committee on which the IRB member serves that takes place after notice of resignation is received.

**Removal:** The IO, after consultation with the IRB Chair and Director; may remove an IRB member at any time from participation on the IRB if the IRB member is not appropriately or adequately fulfilling his/her job responsibilities; has violated applicable laws, regulations or Emory University policies or procedures; or has been involved in any activities or neglect of duty that would cause harm to the Emory IRB’s operations or reputation. With respect to IRB members who are faculty or staff of Emory University, the IO may remove them from participation on the Emory IRB if at any time during their term they cease to hold their faculty/staff position or fall out of good standing with Emory University. Any Emory IRB related actions taken by the former IRB member after the effective removal date are null and void. The IRB will update members on any changes in membership.

**Ex officio Attendees:** Qualified IRB staff shall attend IRB Committee meetings and participate in review and discussion activities concerning Research protocols and administrative matters, but they may not vote on such matters. Ex officio attendees shall not be counted toward the establishment of Quorum at IRB Committee meetings. Any Research protocols reviewed by an ex officio attendee also must be reviewed by at least one IRB member.

**Alternate Members - Appointment and Role:** The IO may appoint an alternate member to serve for one or more IRB member(s). A regular member may have more than one appointed alternate. The alternate’s expertise or compositional category of membership (i.e., affiliated nonscientist, unaffiliated nonscientist, non-physician scientist, physician scientist, or prisoner representative) shall be comparable to those of the primary member. The appointment of an alternate shall be in writing, shall identify the alternate; identify the type of primary member (e.g. physician scientist, unaffiliated nonscientist) for whom he/she is an alternate; and specify the term of appointment. Alternates must be appointed by the IO in advance of the first meeting at which they are to serve as an alternate. The IRB membership roster shall identify the primary IRB member(s) for whom each alternate member may substitute. A new appointment letter is not required if an alternate member is made a primary member during their tenure.

The mode of appointment and functions of alternate members shall be the same as that of the primary IRB members for whom they serve as alternates. When an alternate member substitutes for a primary member, the alternate member shall receive and review the same materials prior the IRB meeting that the primary member received or would have received. The role of the alternate member is to serve as a voting member of the IRB when a regular member to whom the alternate is assigned is unavailable to attend a convened meeting or to be present at the review of certain protocols during a convened meeting.

**Duties of IRB Members:** All IRB members, both regular and alternate, shall be required to fulfill the following duties in order to remain in good standing as an IRB member:
Meeting Attendance: Other than for those who are primarily Designated Reviewers, members shall be diligent in attending the meetings of the IRB Committee panel to which the member is appointed (except that alternates may not be needed except upon request). If a member is unable to attend a scheduled meeting, then he/she should provide as much advance notice as possible to the IRB staff. If the inability to attend will be prolonged, a request for an alternate to be assigned may be submitted to the IRB Chair or Director. Members are expected to give reasonable notice of extended absences. IRB members who fail to attend multiple meetings and/or who fail to provide appropriate notice of absences maybe removed from IRB membership if appropriate inquiries by the IRB Chair or staff indicate that the member is no longer interested or available in IRB membership.

Orientation, Training, and Ongoing Education: Complete any orientation training and ongoing education required by the Emory IRB, as specified in the P&P entitled Orientation and Education for IRB Chairs & Members. Members must demonstrate understanding of the three Belmont Report ethical principles and the ability to apply them. Members are expected to develop a solid working knowledge of the rules, policies and procedures (e.g., HHS, FDA and VA Regulations) that apply to the types of Research they review. Further, Members should seek guidance from the IRB Chair, Director, or qualified staff whenever necessary.

Confidentiality: Sign appropriate confidentiality/non-disclosure agreements and treat confidentially all Research proposals, protocols, supporting data and other documents provided for review. In addition, members shall return copies of protocols and supporting materials submitted for review to IRB Office staff at the conclusion of review and discussion for appropriate destruction. Materials left at a Member’s home or office must be promptly destroyed at the conclusion of the review.

Research Protocol Review and Meeting Preparation: Sufficiently in advance of an IRB Committee meeting at which a Research protocol is to be discussed or applicable review deadline, each IRB member shall:

Accept review assignments as primary, secondary or tertiary reviewer.

Review the agenda, submission materials, protocols, proposed informed consent forms and other appropriate documents that are distributed to IRB members. Members shall review these materials before each meeting in order to participate fully in the review of each proposed project.

Thoroughly review all Research protocol application materials pertaining to an assignment.

Discuss any questions about assigned reviews with the PI, other IRB members, IRB Chair, IRB staff or appropriate unconflicted consultants.

Determine if any changes are required to any of the materials submitted for review and provide specific recommendations for changes.
Meeting Discussions and Protocol Review Process: At IRB Committee meetings, the IRB member shall be prepared to present the findings and recommendations for his/her Initial or Continuing Reviews of Research protocols; review Serious Adverse Events; or review of other IRB matters assigned. Through the protocol review process, the IRB member shall act to:

Ensure that the rights and welfare of Human Subjects are protected.

Ensure that any Research risks are minimized and that risks are reasonable in relation to anticipated benefits to subjects and the importance of the knowledge that may result from the Research.

Ensure that in any evaluation of risks and benefits, those that may result from the Research are considered in distinct contrast to the risks and benefits the Human Subjects would encounter from therapies that would be administered even if they did not participate in the Research. Possible long-range effects of applying knowledge gained in the Research should not be considered.

Determine that the selection of Human Subjects is equitable taking into account the purpose of the Research; setting of the Research; and any special characteristic of the Human Subject population being studied (i.e., Minors, Prisoners, Pregnant Women, students, cognitively or mentally impaired persons or educationally or economically disadvantaged persons collectively referred to herein as “Vulnerable Populations”).

Determine if the informed consent process is adequate and contains all elements required by the HHS, FDA and/or VA Regulations, as well as any other applicable laws or regulations.

Determine that the Research protocol makes adequate provision for ensuring Human Subject safety, including the use, as appropriate or required of a data safety monitoring board or similar mechanism.

Determine that there are adequate provisions within the Research protocol to protect the privacy of Human Subjects and maintain confidentiality in full accordance with applicable HIPAA Regulations.

Ensure that additional safeguards are in place to protect the rights, safety and welfare of subjects in Vulnerable Populations.

Ensure that Researchers use procedures that are consistent with sound Research design; and when appropriate, utilize accepted procedures on Human Subjects for diagnostic or treatment purposes.

Reporting: IRB members are required to report any problems or instances of non-compliance to the IRB Director or IRB Chair or other appropriate Emory University or governmental officials.
Other Responsibilities: In addition to performing the responsibilities and duties set forth above, IRB members also shall perform any other responsibilities appropriately delegated to them by the IRB Chair or set forth elsewhere in these P&Ps.

Compensation: The type and amount of compensation (if any) to an IRB member for the performance of IRB-related duties shall be determined by the IO and/or his/her designees.

Review of IRB Member Performance: The IRB Chair shall review each IRB member’s performance annually periodically in consultation with the IO and the IRB Director. The performance of each Vice-Chair, Chair, and IRB Director will be reviewed on an annual basis by the IO. Members, Chairs, and Vice Chairs will be given formal feedback based on their performance evaluations. The IRB Director will fulfill this function for the IRB members, Chairs, and Vice Chairs. With respect to the Chairs, the IO shall also provide formal feedback based on their performance evaluations. Feedback shall be provided in writing and may also be provided in person.

Membership Rosters: The IRB Director shall keep a membership roster for each IRB Committee. The membership roster must identify members sufficiently in terms of their experience to describe each member’s chief anticipated contribution to IRB deliberations. The roster must contain the following information about each member:

1. Name.
2. Gender.
3. Earned degrees.
4. Affiliated or unaffiliated status (in the case of an unaffiliated member, neither the member nor an immediate family member of the member may be affiliated with the University), including a description of employment or other relationship with Emory University.
5. Status as scientist (physician-scientist or non-physician scientist) or non-scientist. In general, any members who are training or have experience in the sciences (physical, life, technological/engineering, social or behavioral) will be designated as scientists.
6. Experience, certifications, licenses or other indicia of professional qualifications sufficient to describe each member’s chief anticipated contributions to IRB deliberations, if applicable.
7. Representative capacity of each IRB member (i.e., what role, if any, the IRB member has in fulfilling IRB Committee compositional requirements, such as which member is a Prisoner Representative, which is knowledgeable about or experienced in working with specific Vulnerable Populations, etc.).
8. Official capacity on IRB Committee, e.g., member, Vice Chair, Chair.
9. Alternate status, including the primary member(s) for whom the alternate serves.

Maintenance of IRB Membership Roster: The IRB Director shall keep each membership roster up to date and report changes to the membership roster to OHRP and to any other governmental agencies as required.

AVAMC Research Compliance Officer(s) as Consultant(s): The Emory IRB may consult the AVAMC research compliance officer(s) as non-voting consultant(s). The research compliance officer may not serve as a member of the IRB, but may attend meetings of the IRB when
requested or as specified by Emory policies and procedures, including attendance to perform compliance review or audits.

**IRB Staff as Members and Designated Reviewers:** IRB Staff may be appointed by the IO as alternate, affiliated IRB members to serve as Designated Reviewers. When those IRB staff attend meetings, they shall not be counted as *voting members* unless otherwise noted in the minutes.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §§ 46.103, .107, .111 & .115.
38 CFR §§ 16.103, .107, .111 & .115.
23  ORIENTATION AND EDUCATION FOR IRB CHAIRS, MEMBERS, AND STAFF

POLICY:

Orientation and continuing education for the IRB Chair, Vice Chairs, IRB Members and IRB Staff is a vital component of Emory University’s HRPP. Emory University is committed to providing orientation, training and ongoing education for all IRB members and staff regarding Research ethics, regulatory compliance, and institutional requirements for the protection of Human Subjects.

PROCEDURES:

Orientation for New IRB Members: In order to ensure that new IRB members receive education in appropriate IRB principles, regulations and policies, every prospective new member (regular or alternate) will meet with the IRB Chair, Director, or supervisory IRB staff for a preliminary interview. The prospective member will also attend training in navigating the Emory IRB website and the eResearch database system in the role of IRB Member. Each member receives a copy of the book, Institutional Review Board Member Handbook, by Robert J. Amdur and Elizabeth A. Bankert and is provided additional resources, including the Belmont Report, HHS and FDA regulations, reviewer checklists, etc. New members are encouraged to talk with current IRB Members for candid perspectives on the time commitment and value of IRB membership. The Emory IRB Office library’s collection of books and other educational media is introduced and made available to new Members. Finally, each new IRB member must complete the Emory-required curriculum of the CITI Training Course and observe a convened IRB Committee meeting before eligibility for appointment is complete.

Note: Emory IRB Chairs are selected from among experienced Emory IRB members, and have gone through the orientation and training described above. When appointed, a new Chair/Vice-Chair also becomes a designated reviewer for expedited studies, if not already designated.

Continuing Education for IRB Members and Chairs: To ensure that oversight of Human Subjects Research is ethically grounded and the decisions made by the IRB are consistent with current regulatory and policy requirements, training is continuous for IRB members throughout their service on the IRB. CITI certification (Biomedical for biomedical Committee members and Chairs; Sociobehavioral for sociobehavioral Committee members and Chairs) must be maintained per the same schedule required of researchers. Other educational activities include, but are not limited to the following and are made available to affiliated and unaffiliated IRB Members:

- Educational segments at convened IRB Committee meetings;
- Annual in-service workshops/sessions created especially for IRB Members;
- Participation in interactive webinars from PRIM&R and other respected research ethics organizations;
- Attendance at seminars and lectures on ethics at the Ethics Center and other academic
venues at Emory;

Attendance at educational sessions given by guest speakers, the Emory IRB Chair, Vice Chair, Director, or qualified staff or Members on topics of interest in Human Subjects Research protections, regulatory compliance and research ethics.

Identification and dissemination by the IRB Director of new information that might affect the Human Subjects Research Protection Program, including laws, regulations, policies, procedures and emerging ethical and scientific issues to IRB members via email, mail or during IRB meetings; and

Access to IRB Office resource library. The IRB Chair and Vice Chairs shall receive complimentary copies of selected titles on research ethics, Human Subjects protections, and IRB management.

In addition, personnel involved in the review, approval, oversight or management of protocols subject to a DOD Addendum shall complete the additional requirements as described in P&P entitled Department of Defense (DOD) Supported Research.

Monitoring Member/Chair Training: The IRB shall maintain documentation of members’ and Chairs’ completion of any required training or certification, will monitor it regularly as meeting agendas and quorum are prepared, and be able to verify such training via a third party (e.g. the CITI program website). When CITI refresher training requirements for members and Chairs are checked and found not to be met, the IRB Director or the relevant IRB meeting facilitator will inform the member that they may not participate in further IRB reviews or meetings until the member recertifies.

IRB Member and Staff Attendance at Training Conferences: The Emory IRB will provide support to send selected IRB members and staff to attend the annual PRIM&R/ARENA conference and/or regional OHRP and FDA conferences on Human Subjects Research protections. Unaffiliated and/or nonscientist IRB members may receive priority in selection.

Orientation and Continuing Education for IRB Staff: New IRB staff must undergo the formal Emory IRB new hire training program which involves deeper reading of the federal regulations, review of selected P&Ps, SOPs, and checklists, and mentored training on processing different types of submissions. The IRB Director, Assistant Director, Protocol Analysts and all other professional staff are required to complete the basic CITI modules, biomedical as well as sociobehavioral, listed on the IRB website during the new hire training period. Regular external and on-the-job training is also provided to IRB staff.

Continuing education is required for all IRB staff. It includes but is not limited to the following:
- Education on new policies, guidance, regulations, and office procedures at required weekly staff meetings and team meetings.
- CIP certification is required and must be maintained (via continuing education or retaking the exam) for IRB staff in the position of Research Protocol Analyst or above, within a reasonable timeframe after basic eligibility for the certification is met.
- Screening of webinars several times per year, offered by PRIM&R and other respected research ethics organizations
• Attendance at compliance-related presentations by other Emory offices
• Provision of reading material on human subjects research ethics and related topics in the office library
• Attendance at PRIM&R, OHRP, FDA, or other off-site training sessions or conferences on a rotating basis.
• Continued on-the-job training in the context of specific protocol reviews

The IRB shall maintain documentation of staff’s completion of required training or certification, as well as continuing education activities (beyond routine staff meetings). Continuing education activities, including consistent attendance at required staff meetings, are assessed by supervisors as part of the performance review at the end of each fiscal year.

In addition, IRB staff involved in reviewing, approving, supporting, conducting, managing, or overseeing protocols subject to a DOD Addendum shall complete the additional requirements as described in P&P entitled Department of Defense (DOD) Supported Research.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR § 46.107  
21 CFR § 56.107  
38 CFR § 16.107  
DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 4.5; SECNAVINST 3900.39D Para. 6a(2).
24  IRB MEMBER LIABILITY, INSURANCE AND INDEMNIFICATION

POLICY:

Emory University will indemnify IRB members against liability incurred while performing actions that fall within the scope of their duties as IRB members.

PROCEDURES:

Employees of Emory University: IRB members who are employed by Emory University are considered to be acting within the scope of their employment when they perform any actions that fall within the scope of their duties as IRB members and are not knowingly inconsistent with these P&Ps. As such, Emory University shall provide legal defense and insurance coverage for any claims arising out of IRB members’ performance of their IRB member duties under the University’s general liability insurance/self-insurance.

Unaffiliated IRB Members: Emory University agrees to defend, hold harmless and indemnify non-Emory affiliated IRB members who are not employees of Emory University from and against any claims and liabilities arising out of the non-Emory affiliated IRB members’ performance of actions that fall within the scope of their duties as IRB members and are not knowingly inconsistent with these P&Ps.

Documentation of Indemnification: Upon request, Emory University’s Office of the General Counsel shall provide non-Emory affiliated IRB members with a letter evidencing the defense, hold harmless and indemnification obligation specified above under the provision immediately above entitled Unaffiliated IRB Members.

Notification of Claims: In the event that any IRB member (including non-Emory affiliated IRB members) receives notice (whether written or verbal) of any claim being made against the IRB member concerning the IRB member’s IRB activities, the IRB member shall immediately notify the IRB Director and the Emory University Office of the General Counsel.

Cooperation: In consideration of the insurance and/or indemnification provided hereunder, all IRB members agree that Emory University may select the counsel to defend any claims made against the IRB member and the Emory University IRB, and further agree to cooperate with Emory University and its counsel in the defense and/or settlement of any such claims.

Right to Settle: In exchange for the insurance and/or indemnification provided hereunder, all IRB members agree and confer upon Emory University the sole right to prosecute, defend or settle any claims or litigation concerning the Emory IRB or IRB members as Emory University deems fit within its sole discretion.

Applicable Regulations:

None.
25 CONSULTANTS AND AD HOC REVIEWERS

POLICY:

At his/her discretion, the IRB Chair may invite scientists or non-scientists with special expertise and/or knowledge of local Research context from within or outside Emory University to function as Consultants and/or ad hoc reviewers, as may be required in order to provide appropriate review of Research protocols or to assist the Emory IRB in its review of Research protocols. (For the purposes of these P&Ps, “Consultant” shall include ad hoc reviewers.)

It is incumbent upon all Emory faculty and staff who may be asked to serve as a Consultant to carry out all assigned responsibilities.

PROCEDURES:

Determination of Need for Consultant: The IRB Chair or Vice Chair, in consultation with IRB Members and/or Staff, shall determine whether or not a Consultant is necessary to perform an in-depth review of a Research protocol in advance of the IRB Committee meeting at which the protocol is to be discussed, and who the Consultant should be. Consultants shall be used when the IRB is required to review issues or protocols that require scientific, scholarly, practical, or other expertise beyond or in addition to that which is available on the Emory IRB. Consultants must not be used to completely replace appropriate scientific or scholarly expertise of the IRB members attending the meeting. If there is not at least one person on the IRB with appropriate scientific or scholarly expertise or other expertise or knowledge to conduct an in-depth review of the protocol, the IRB will defer the review to another meeting.

Provision of Materials and Confidentiality/Non-Disclosure Agreements: The IRB Staff or his/her designee shall ensure that the Consultant receives the protocol and all other relevant materials in advance of the convened meeting at which the protocol is to be reviewed. Before providing any materials to the Consultant or discussing the protocol or issue, the IRB Director shall ensure that Consultant signs a confidentiality/non-disclosure agreement.

Conflicts of Interest: The IRB Director or designee shall review the Emory IRB’s Conflict of Interest policy (set forth in the P&P entitled Conflicts of Interest – Investigators and Conflicts of Interest on the Part of IRB Administrators, IRB Members & Staff Members) with any Consultant before he or she undertakes the review of any issue or protocol. The Consultant must verbally confirm to the IRB Director or designee that he/she does not have a Conflict of Interest prior to initiating review activities. Individuals who have a Conflict of Interest or whose spouse or family member has a Conflict of Interest in the Sponsor of the Research will not be eligible to serve as a Consultant to the IRB.

Participation in IRB Meetings: The Consultant shall present his/her findings in writing or in person (which may include by speakerphone) to the IRB Committee for consideration. If present at the meeting, the Consultant may, at request of the IRB Committee, participate in any portion of the IRB Committee’s discussion that is relevant to the Consultant’s review activities; however, the Consultant may not vote on any matter coming before the IRB Committee or be present at such time as the vote is taken.
Documentation in IRB Files and Meeting Minutes: Written statements of consultants or summaries of their oral presentation created by the IRB Chair, Director, or staff will be kept in the relevant IRB records. In addition, key information provided by Consultants at meetings will be documented in the meeting minutes. Written reviews provided by outside reviewers shall be filed with the protocol to which the review pertains.

Compensation: Any compensation to be paid to a consultant/outside reviewer shall be as determined by the IRB Director.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR §§ 46.103; .107; 108; & .110.
21 CFR §§ 56.107; .108; & 110.
38 CFR §§ 46.103; .107; 108; & 110.
26 CONFIDENTIALITY OBLIGATIONS FOR IRB OFFICIALS, MEMBERS, CONSULTANTS, STAFF, & GUESTS

POLICY:

Emory IRB officials, Members, Consultants, staff, and guests at convened IRB Committee meetings are required to execute an Emory IRB confidentiality and non-disclosure agreement in order to protect sensitive, confidential and proprietary information that they may receive in carrying out their IRB duties or attending a convened meeting.

PROCEDURES:

Obligation to Maintain Confidentiality: Emory IRB administrators, IRB members, Consultants and staff members often receive sensitive information during the conduct of their Emory IRB duties. This information may concern patients or Research subjects, trade secrets or proprietary information, confidential inquiries or investigations being conducted by the Emory IRB or other institutional or governmental authorities; or matters that Emory University is required by laws, regulations, contractual obligations or its policies to protect against disclosure to unauthorized individuals.

In order to protect this information, Emory IRB administrators, IRB members and staff members are required to sign the Confidentiality and Non-Disclosure Agreement and to abide by the requirements thereof. The execution of this Confidentiality and Non-Disclosure Agreement is a condition required in order to be an IRB member, Consultant or staff member. Any guest observing a convened IRB meeting must sign a Confidentiality and Non-Disclosure Agreement; however, this does not apply to investigators attending an IRB meeting to answer questions about a Research protocol under review.

Protected Health Information: The Emory IRB is part of the Emory University Covered Entity for purposes of compliance with institutional HIPAA Privacy Policies. Accordingly, in addition to complying with the confidentiality and non-disclosure obligations set forth herein, each Emory IRB Member and staff member, as well as any Consultant, is also obligated to comply with all HIPAA Regulations and HIPAA Privacy and/or Security Policies with regard to the use and disclosure of Protected Health Information (PHI).

Reporting Breaches of Confidentiality and Non-Disclosure Obligations: Emory IRB officials, IRB members and staff members are required to report to the IRB Director and/or the IRB Chair any instances of which they are aware that involve a use or disclosure of information in violation of the confidentiality obligations set forth in the Confidentiality and Non-Disclosure Agreement, these P&Ps, HIPAA Regulations or HIPAA Privacy and/or Security Policies. The IRB Director and IRB Chair shall, in turn, report the breach to the Emory University HIPAA Privacy Officer within the Office of Research Compliance. The Emory IRB shall take such steps as are appropriate to mitigate any damage that may have been caused by the breach and to take corrective action as necessary in order to ensure that a similar breach does not occur in the future.

Sanctions for Failure to Abide by Obligations: IRB members, Consultants, officials and staff who intentionally or repeatedly fail to comply with confidentiality and non-disclosure obligations
may be removed from service on the Emory IRB. In addition, if an Emory University employee fails to comply with these obligations in connection with his/her responsibilities concerning the Emory IRB, he/she may receive sanctions from his/her employing unit, up to and including the possibility of termination of employment.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §§ 162.103; 164.501, .504 & .530.
27  DOCUMENTATION AND RECORD RETENTION

POLICY:

The Emory IRB shall maintain appropriate written and/or electronic documents that pertain to its initial and on-going review of *Human Subjects Research*. Records shall be kept for the longer of three years from the time of their creation or receipt by the Emory IRB, or longer as required by any other applicable record retention period. Records relating to Human Subjects Research that is performed shall be kept for at least three (3) years after the completion of the Human Subjects Research. Emory IRB shall maintain records regarding all VA Research that it has reviewed in compliance with VA Records Control Schedule (RCS 10-1), and provide VA and ORO access to the records. Contractual provisions for contract-supported Human Subjects Research may specify longer retention periods. The longer provision should apply in case applicable requirements conflict.

PROCEDURES:

Emory IRB to Maintain Documentation: The Emory IRB shall maintain documentation of all *Human Subject Research* protocols and related materials received for review and documentation of determinations required by laws, regulations, codes, and guidance, and actions taken with regard to the oversight of *Human Subjects Research* within its jurisdiction. Documentation of study reviews by expedited procedures shall include records showing the basis for expediting (permissible category, minimal risk), any regulatory required findings, and description of action taken by the member-reviewer. For exempt research, the documentation of review shall include the basis for exemption (specific category).

Documents Received by the Emory IRB: All physical documents received by the Emory IRB that pertain to its review or oversight of *Human Subjects Research* shall be stamped with the date received. The IRB Director shall implement processes governing the tracking of documents that are sent to the Emory IRB and the routing of documents received to appropriate IRB or HRPP personnel.

Document Security: The following requirements shall be observed with regard to document security practices:

**Access to Documents:** Access to hardcopy and electronic documents maintained by the Emory IRB shall be limited to HRPP personnel, IRB Committee members, officials, and staff who need such access in order to perform their job duties, to comply with regulatory requirements or to report any compliance issues. Access to Emory IRB documents by other persons must be approved by the IRB Director or Chair and shall be documented.

For DOD supported Research: Records maintained that document compliance or non-compliance with DOD regulations must be made accessible for inspection and copying by representatives of the DOD at reasonable times and in a reasonable manner as determined by the supporting DOD component.
**Removal of Original Documents:** No original IRB File materials shall be removed from the IRB Offices except as approved by the IRB **Director** or the IRB **Chair** in certain limited circumstances (e.g., for copying or scanning by an approved service; for use in an Emory University inquiry or investigation; for production in accordance with a subpoena or request for production of documents; or pursuant to an appropriate request from a governmental agency with regulatory authority over the Emory IRB).

**Removal of Copies:** Copies of File materials shall only be removed from the IRB Offices with the consent of the IRB **Chair** or IRB **Director** upon request of University and/or governmental regulatory officials, or to report compliance concerns to appropriate Emory University or governmental officials.

**Electronic Records:** The IRB **Director** shall implement processes and procedures concerning access to electronic records kept on computer systems that comply with all HIPAA Security Policies requirements, as well as with any FDA or OHRP mandated requirements. These processes and procedures shall comply with all requirements set forth by the HIPAA Security Rule Policies, and shall at a minimum:

- Require all persons to have unique user IDs and passwords to access their computers.
- Require passwords to be changed on a regular basis.
- Require all computers to have automatic log-off.
- Require all computer systems to be backed up on a regular basis.
- Require a data recovery and disaster management plan.
- Require a logging system for tracking and auditing user actions with respect to users and user actions to creating, modifying and deleting data.
- Require reporting of, and inquiry into, any unauthorized access to electronic records or breach of security procedures.

**Reporting of Security Breaches:** Persons who discover any security breaches or instances of missing or damaged documents or electronic information shall immediately report such event to the IRB **Director** or the IRB **Chair**. The IRB **Director** or IRB **Chair** will make further reports of such events as necessary (e.g., reporting to HIPAA Privacy Officer and/or HIPAA Security Officer), as well as inquire into any such events and implement appropriate corrective measures.

**Types of Documents to be Maintained by the Emory IRB:** The Emory IRB shall maintain the following types of documentation at the IRB Offices:

- Copies of all original Research protocol proposals for review, including any accompanying documents.
- Copies of approved consent and HIPAA authorization documents.
Copies of investigator brochures

Copies of recruitment materials

Copies of data and safety monitoring reports

Copies of applications for protocol Approval/Continuing Review

Copies of protocol modifications or amendments

Copies of reports received regarding Research protocols, e.g., progress reports, significant new findings, Serious Adverse Event reports (both internal and external), reports concerning Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others, and any other reports submitted concerning Research protocols

Documentation of noncompliance

Documentation of all determinations made by the IRB as required by laws, regulations, codes, and guidance

Approved minutes of each meeting of an IRB Committee and of any Emory IRB subcommittee.

Copies of all audit logs, audit reports or other documents of continuing protocol review activity conducted by or on behalf of the Emory IRB

Copies of all Emory IRB correspondence

Copies of all current and past IRB Committee membership rosters

Official copy of the P&Ps

Official copies of the Emory FWA and the Emory IRB registration

Copies of any statements or correspondence provided or received from Human Subjects, including any statements provided to Human Subjects of new findings developed during the course of a Research protocol that may relate to a Human Subject’s willingness to continue participating in a Research protocol

Copies of any complaints/questions regarding Human Subjects Research and any documentation concerning inquiry into and response to such complaints/questions

Copies of documentation of approval from other Emory University committees with jurisdiction over Human Subjects Research, e.g., approval by Radiation Safety Committee, Institutional Health & Biosafety Committee, and/or Conflict of Interest committees
Copies of training documentation for **IRB Committee** members and IRB staff

Copies of resumes/CVs and letters of appointment or employment for **IRB Committee** members, and staff

Copies of DHHS-approved sample consent documents and protocol, when they exist

Copies of scientific evaluations, if any

Any other records required by applicable laws, regulations, or Emory IRB or other Emory University policies and procedures

**For AVAMC or VA-Supported Research the following records must also be maintained:**

- Correspondence between the IRB and the Research and Development Committee.
- Correspondence between the IRB and Researchers.
- Internal serious adverse events.
- Documentation of protocol deviations.
- A resume for each IRB member.
- All previous membership rosters

**Records Retention:** At a minimum, all records are required to be kept by the Emory IRB for at least three (3) years from date of creation or receipt by IRB, and records relating to **Human Subjects Research** that is performed will be kept for a minimum of three (3) years after completion of the **Human Subjects Research** at the site or sites over which the Emory IRB has jurisdiction of the **Human Subjects Research**. If a protocol is cancelled without subject enrollment, then IRB records will be maintained for at least three (3) years after cancellation. Records will be kept longer if required by applicable governmental laws or regulations or contractual obligations with **Research** sponsors. Emory IRB shall maintain records regarding all VA Research that it has reviewed in compliance with VA Records Control Schedule (RCS 10-1), and provide VA and ORO access to the records. In the event that the Emory IRB needs to dispose of records prior to the VA time frame, it will work with VA to transfer the appropriate documents relating to VA research to the VA.

**Destruction of Records:** After any applicable records retention period has expired, the IRB shall dispose of any records that need no longer be maintained via cross-cut shredding or other method of disposal permitted under the **HIPAA Privacy Policies**. Appropriate documentation of destruction shall be maintained.

**Availability of Records:** Records shall be accessible for inspection and copying by authorized representatives of OHRP, FDA, VA and/or other appropriate governmental entities.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §46.115
21 CFR §56.115
38 CFR §16.115
45 CFR §§ 164.308, .310, .312 & .530
28  IRB PROTOCOL TRIAGE AND ASSIGNMENT OF REVIEW CATEGORY

POLICY:

The Emory IRB is committed to the rigorous and accurate application of regulations and guidance to the triaging of Protocols submitted for its review.

PROCEDURES:

The Emory IRB shall use the following materials in determining what IRB status category should be assigned to a protocol: the definitions set forth within these P&Ps, applicable federal regulations, other applicable Emory University policies, guidance documents on the IRB website, and the Human Subjects Research Decision Chart set forth at the OHRP website at http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/policy/checklists/decisioncharts.html, OHRP’s guidance on engagement and guidance on the use of coded specimens and data at http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/policy/index/index.html, and/or other authoritative analytical tools. A copy of all submitted materials and official determination correspondence will be kept on file at the IRB Office.

Ensuring Adequate Time for IRB Member Review: Generally, there are six IRB meetings for biomedical research per month; one meeting per month for review of noncompliance matters, UPS, and Conflict of Interest management plans for ongoing studies; and one meeting per month for sociobehavioral and public health research. Holiday schedules and the IRB workload fluctuations may require more or less frequent meetings. The Emory IRB website shall publish the meeting schedule.

The IRB staff will, in general, forward materials to IRB members one week in advance of an IRB meeting. If a submission that does not meet this guideline requires review, it shall be sent to the IRB members at the discretion of the Chair or Vice-Chair.

Protocol Submissions for Triage Process and Initial Review: Qualified IRB staff will initially determine, in accordance with federal regulations and guidance, that a new submission fits one of the following categories: Not Human Subjects Research; Emory not Engaged in Human Subjects Research; Exempt Human Subjects Research; eligible for Expedited Review; or requires Full Committee Review.

Determinations of Not Human Subjects Research, not Engaged in Human Subjects Research, and Exemption made by qualified IRB staff do not need further review by the Chair/Vice Chair. The IRB Director shall decide when IRB staff are qualified, based on length of experience and demonstrated expertise. Determinations made by IRB staff in training should be reviewed by senior or supervisory staff or the Chair/Vice Chair. All other determinations are subject to confirmation or change by the IRB Chair/Vice Chair before they are finalized. Each type of review and the materials used in performing the review are described in the P&Ps entitled Possible IRB Committee Actions on Research Protocols, Continuing Review, Protocol Modifications, and Closure of Protocols.

Protocol Submission for Continuing Review: Upon receipt of a protocol for Continuing Review,
qualified IRB staff will make an initial determination in accordance with federal regulations, whether the submission is eligible for **Expedited Review** or requires **Full Committee Review**.

**Expedited Initial Review/Continuing Review:** The **Protocol Analyst** will route those protocols that he/she has initially determined qualify for **Expedited Review** to the **Chair/Vice Chairs** for review. The **Chair/Vice Chair** will make the final determination of **Expedited Review** status and provide a written review of the protocol. Alternatively, the **Chair/Vice Chair** may determine that the protocol requires **Full Committee Review**.

**Full Committee Initial Review/Continuing Review:** The **Protocol Analyst** will route those protocols requiring continuing review that he/she has determined require **Full Committee Review** to an appropriate full **IRB Committees** for review.

Failure on the part of the PI to submit a protocol for **Continuing Review** prior to the protocol’s expiration date shall result in expiration of the protocol and immediate termination of all research-related activities, except for limited subject safety measures, as delineated by federal regulations.

**Applicable Regulations:**
- 45 CFR 46
- 21 CFR 50
29 DETERMINATIONS OF ENGAGEMENT IN HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH OR CLINICAL INVESTIGATION

POLICY:

A PI may make an unofficial determination that he/she is not Engaged in Human Subjects Research, or a project Does Not Constitute Human Subjects Research and/or does not constitute a Clinical Investigation under these P&Ps and applicable regulations, but the University will hold the PI responsible if the determination is not correct.

The Emory IRB Office is the only body that can issue an official determination, or confirm an unofficial determination, under these P&Ps and/or applicable regulations, as to whether a project falls into one or more of the following categories: (a) is not a Clinical Investigation; (b) is not Human Subjects Research; and/or (c) is not otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the Emory IRB as an Institutional Review Board or Institutional Privacy Board under HIPAA.

DEFINITIONS:

**Research:** A Clinical Investigation (as defined below) or a Systematic Investigation, including research development, testing and evaluation, designed to develop or contribute to Generalizable Knowledge. Activities that meet this definition constitute Research for purposes of the HHS Regulations whether or not they are conducted or supported under a program that is considered Research for other purposes. For example, some demonstration and service programs may include Research activities. For the purposes of the COI Policy, this term encompasses basic and applied Research as well as product testing and development. The term includes, but is not limited to, any activity for which Research funding is available from a Public Health Service component that awards funds under grants, cooperative agreements or otherwise.

**Clinical Investigation:** Any Experiment that involves a Test Article and one or more Human Subjects and that either is subject to requirements for prior submission to the FDA under Section 505(i) or 520(g) of the FDA Act, or is not subject to requirements for prior submission to the FDA under these sections of the FDA Act, but the results of which are intended to be submitted later to, or held for inspection by, the FDA as part of an application for a research or marketing permit. The term does not include Experiments that are subject to the provisions of Part 58 [of Title 21 of the CFR], regarding non-clinical laboratory studies.

**Systematic Investigation:** An activity that involves a prospective Research plan that incorporates data collection, either quantitative or qualitative, and data analysis to answer a Research question.

**Generalizable Knowledge:** knowledge from which conclusions will be drawn that can be applied to populations outside of the specific study population. This usually includes one or more of the following concepts: Knowledge that contributes to a theoretical framework of an established body of knowledge; the primary beneficiaries of the research are other researchers, scholars, and practitioners in the field of study; dissemination of the results is intended to inform the field of study (though this alone does not make an activity constitute research “designed to
contribute to generalizable knowledge”); the results are expected to be generalized to a larger population beyond the site of data collection; the results are intended to be replicated in other settings.

**Human Subjects Research (DOD Definition):** Research that involves Human Subjects and/or for research projects conducted by or at Emory University that are covered by an U.S. Department of Defense (DOD) Addendum, Research Involving a Human Being as an Experimental Subject (defined below).

**Human Subject (FDA Definition):** An individual who is or becomes a participant in Research, either as a recipient of the Test Article or as a control. A subject may be either a healthy human or a patient. [21 CFR Section 50.3(g)]. For research involving medical devices a human subject is also an individual on whose specimen an investigational device is used. When medical device research involves in vitro diagnostics and unidentified tissue specimens, the FDA defines the unidentified tissue specimens as human subjects.

**Human Subject (HHS Definition):** A living individual about whom an investigator (whether professional or student) conducting Research obtains: (a) data through Intervention or Interaction with the individual; or (b) Identifiable Private Information. [45 CFR Section 46.102(f)].

**Engaged in Human Subjects Research:** An institution is considered to be engaged in Human Subjects Research whenever its employees or agents for the purposes of the Research project obtain: (1) data about the subjects of the research through Intervention or Interaction with them; or (2) Identifiable Private Information about the subjects of the Research, unless the activity falls into one or more of the exceptions listed in OHRP’s formal guidance on engagement of institutions in human subjects research (http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/policy/engage08.html and http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/policy/institutions/ohrp20090113.html). This definition and the OHRP guidance are also used by the Emory IRB to determine when individuals are considered “engaged” in human subjects research activity.

**Employees or Agents:** Per the OHRP formal guidance on engagement, an institution’s employees or agents refers to individuals who: (1) act on behalf of the institution; (2) exercise institutional authority or responsibility; or (3) perform institutionally designated activities. “Employees and agents” can include staff, students, contractors, and volunteers, among others, regardless of whether the individual is receiving compensation.

**PROCEDURES:**

**Unofficial Determinations (by PI)** Using these P&Ps and the definitions contained herein, guidance information on the IRB website, and applicable FDA Regulations and formal guidance, a PI may make an unofficial determination as to whether or not a project constitutes a Clinical Investigation that is subject to IRB review under applicable FDA Regulations.

Using these P&Ps and the definitions contained herein, guidance information on the IRB website, applicable federal regulations and formal guidance, and the Human Subjects Research Decision Chart set forth at the OHRP website at
http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/policy/checklists/decisioncharts.html, a PI may make an unofficial determination as to whether or not a project constitutes engagement in Human Subjects Research or is otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the Emory IRB as an Institutional Review Board or as an Institutional Privacy Board.

Responsibility for Unofficial Decisions: The University will hold the PI responsible for any incorrect determination. Specifically, if the University later determines that a PI initiated a project that constituted a Clinical Investigation; or engagement in Human Subjects Research; or was otherwise subject to IRB jurisdiction per these P&Ps and/or applicable regulations, and the PI did not submit the project to the Emory IRB Office for review, then the University may prohibit the PI from publishing or otherwise making use of the data from the project, as well as imposing other appropriate sanctions upon the PI.

Official Determination (by IRB): In order to receive an official written decision from the Emory IRB Office as to a project’s IRB status, the PI must submit a proposal with sufficient information to enable the Emory IRB to make its determination if it (a) is not a Clinical Investigation; and/or (b) does not constitute engagement in Human Subjects Research; and/or (c) does not otherwise fall within the Emory IRB’s jurisdiction. The Emory IRB staff may use the information in these P&Ps, applicable federal regulations and formal guidance, internal guidance documents, guidance on the IRB website, and/or the Human Subjects Research Decision Chart set forth at the OHRP website at http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/policy/checklists/decisioncharts.html, in order to make the official determination. IRB staff deemed qualified by training and expertise by the IRB Director do not need further review by supervisory staff or the Chair/Vice Chair. Determinations made by IRB staff in training should be reviewed by senior or supervisory staff, or the Chair/Vice Chair. The Emory IRB Office will notify the PI of its determination via email and/or, upon request, provide a letter to this effect.

Timing of IRB Review and Approval in Relation to Initiation of Research Protocol: No protocol for a Clinical Investigation or for Human Subjects Research and no activities that in whole or in part involve a Clinical Investigation or Human Subjects Research (including, but not limited to, interacting with Human Subjects, Human Subject recruitment, advertising, or screening for Human Subject eligibility) may begin before the protocol has been reviewed and approved by the Emory IRB; or a determination has been made that it does not require IRB review.

A protocol determined not to be Human Subjects Research or to be Exempt may nonetheless require review and approvals of HIPAA access to PHI. Therefore no Research activities that involve access to or use of PHI from a Covered Entity or Covered Component of a Hybrid Covered Entity regarding Human Subjects that concerns health, health care and/or payment for health care and that contains identifiers, may take place before review and approval by the Emory IRB, acting in its capacity as the Institutional Privacy Board.

Change Requiring Clarification by IRB: If a PI initially gathers data for purposes that would not constitute a Clinical Investigation or Research or begins a project that is not a Clinical Investigation and/or not Research, but later determines he/she would like to use the data for a Clinical Investigation for Research or convert the project to a Clinical Investigation or Research project, then the Emory IRB must review and approve the project prior to the PI beginning the project or accessing and using the data for Research or Clinical Investigation.
purposes. Likewise, any change to the project previously determined to be not Human Subjects Research, or not a Clinical Investigation, that could change the determination should be brought to the IRB for clarification.

**Failing to Submit a Project for Emory IRB Review:** If a PI fails to submit a project/study for Emory IRB review and the project/study is one that would have qualified as a *Clinical Investigation* or *Human Subjects Research* that should have been subject to Emory IRB review, then the IRB will consider it an incidence of noncompliance and shall follow the P&Ps for handling noncompliance investigations. Sanctions that the IRB may impose include but are not limited to the prohibition on the use of any data collected for the project/study prior to obtaining Emory IRB review/approval for research purposes; and publication of retractions or corrections. Findings or results generated prior to obtaining Emory IRB review/approval may not be published, presented or used to satisfy any educational program requirements for a thesis or dissertation, unless otherwise authorized by other applicable academic Emory policies.

The same policies as stated immediately above shall also apply to cases where a PI fails to submit to the Emory IRB for review and approval in its role as *Institutional Privacy Board* any *Research* activities that involve access to or use of data from a *Covered Entity/Covered Component* of a *Hybrid Covered Entity* regarding *Human Subjects* that concerns health, health care and/or payment for health care and contains identifiers.

**After-the-fact Approval Prohibited:** The Emory IRB cannot give after-the-fact approval to a PI who requests Emory IRB approval to continue a *Clinical Investigation* or *Human Subjects Research* that was initiated without Emory IRB review/approval, nor can it give after-the-fact approval to use data for a *Clinical Investigation* or *Research* that was collected with the intent of being used for a *Clinical Investigation* or *Research* without prior Emory IRB approval.

In addition, the Emory IRB may not approve protocols in which it appears that the PI attempted to circumvent IRB review or these P&Ps by collecting data as non-*Research/non-Clinical Investigation* data and then applying to the Emory IRB for use of the data in *Research and/or a Clinical Investigation*. PIs should err on the side of caution and seek Emory IRB review and approval for any project/study concerning or involving humans, particularly if publication of the project/study is anticipated.

Similarly, PIs should seek Emory IRB approval for the use of or access to any data from a *Covered Entity* or *Covered Component* of a *Hybrid Covered Entity* concerning health, health care and/or payment for health care that contains identifiers and that the PI believes he/she may want to access/use for *Human Subjects Research* purposes.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR § 46.101 & .102
45 CFR §§ 162.103; 164.501; 164.504 & 164.530.
21 CFR 50, 56.101 - .105
30 EXEMPT RESEARCH

POLICY:

All Human Subjects Research must be approved by the University via the PI’s departmental approver. Certain categories of Human Subjects Research are considered to be Exempt under federal regulations and do not require IRB review and approval, provided, however, that the Research must be determined to be Exempt by qualified personnel at the IRB Office or members of the IRB (such as experienced team leads, the IRB Director, a qualified IRB member, Chair or a Vice Chair). Investigators are not permitted to make a determination that Research is Exempt.

Prior to initiation of research, all Exempt Research protocols must be reviewed by qualified IRB staff or an IRB member to ensure that the study meets the principles embodied in the Belmont Report and exempt criteria under the Common Rule. All Exempt Research protocols must be reviewed and approved by the University via the PI’s department chair or authorized approver before determination of Exempt Research by the Emory IRB.

Exempt Research categories do not apply to Research that involves prisoners/detainees as subjects, or FDA-regulated products.

For AVAMC Research or other VA-supported Research that is not otherwise subject to FDA Regulations, only the minimal risk categories of Research set forth in VHA Handbook 1200.05, Appendix A may be classified as Exempt Research. In addition to an experienced member of the IRB making an exempt determination for VA Research, IRB administrators or IRB staff who have appropriate training and experience may make these determinations also.

PROCEDURES:

Categories of Research that may be determined to be Exempt Research:
Pursuant to applicable HHS and VA Regulations, University approval via appropriate department chair and/or AVAMC approval via the RDC, but not convened or expedited IRB review and approval is required for Human Subjects Research that involves no more than minimal risk, and falls solely in one or more of the following categories. These Exempt categories do not apply to Research involving prisoners/detainees as subjects, or to Research that involves FDA-regulated products or is otherwise regulated under the FDA Regulations:

1. Research conducted in established or commonly accepted educational settings involving normal educational practices, such as (i) Research on regular and special education instructional strategies, or (ii) Research on the effectiveness of or the comparison among instructional techniques, curricula, or classroom management methods.

2. Research involving the use of educational tests (cognitive, diagnostic, aptitude, achievement), survey procedures, interview procedures or observation of public behavior, UNLESS: (i) information obtained is recorded in a manner that Human Subjects can be identified, directly or through identifiers linked to the Human Subjects; and (ii) any disclosure of the Human Subjects’ responses outside the Research could
reasonably place the Human Subjects at risk of criminal or civil liability or be damaging to the Human Subjects’ financial standing, employability, or reputation.

NOTE (a): The Department of Veterans Affairs (VA) also includes loss of insurability in this category.

NOTE (b): Survey Research that is subject to a DOD Addendum and that constitutes Research Involving Human Subjects will require IRB review. In addition, such Research also may require approval by an appropriate DOD Office (e.g., survey Research supported by Department of the Navy must be approved by the Navy Survey Approval Manager), typically after IRB approval has been granted.

NOTE (c): In accordance with 45 CFR 46.101(b) Institutions with HHS-approved assurances on file will abide by provisions of Title 45 CFR part 46 subparts A-D. Some of the other departments and agencies have incorporated all provisions of Title 45 CFR part 46 into their policies and procedures as well. However, the exemptions at 45 CFR 46.101(b) do not apply to research involving prisoners, subpart C. The exemption at 45 CFR 46.101(b)(2), for research involving survey or interview procedures or observation of public behavior, does not apply to research with children, subpart D, except for research involving observations of public behavior when the investigator(s) do not participate in the activities being observed.

(3) Research involving the use of educational tests (cognitive, diagnostic, aptitude, achievement), survey procedures, interview procedures, or observation of public behavior that is not exempt under (b)(2) of this section, if: (i) the Human Subjects are elected or appointed public officials or candidates for public office; or (ii) federal statute(s) require(s) without exception that the confidentiality of the personally identifiable information will be maintained throughout the research and thereafter.

(4) Research involving the collection or study of existing data, documents, records, pathological specimens, or diagnostic specimens, if these sources are publicly available or if the information is recorded by the Investigator in such a manner that Human Subjects cannot be identified, directly or through identifiers linked to the Human Subjects.

(5) Research and demonstration projects that are conducted by or subject to the approval of Department or Agency heads, and which are designed to study, evaluate, or otherwise examine: (i) public benefit or service programs; (ii) procedures for obtaining benefits or services under those programs; (iii) possible changes in or alternatives to those programs or procedures; or (iv) possible changes in methods or levels of payment for benefits or services under those programs. The program under study must deliver a public benefit (e.g., financial or medical benefits as provided under the Social Security Act) or service (e.g., social, supportive, or nutrition services as provided under the Older Americans Act).

(a) Research or demonstration projects involving public benefit or service programs must be conducted pursuant to specific federal statutory authority. Additionally, there must be no statutory requirement that the project be reviewed by an IRB, and the project must no involve significant physical
invasions or intrusions upon the privacy or participants. The Emory IRB should consult with the HHS funding agency regarding the requirements listed herein in (5)(a) before utilizing this exemption.

**NOTE:** For AVAMC Research, the determination of exempt status for these research and demonstration projects must be made by the Under Secretary for Health on behalf of the Secretary of Veterans Affairs, after consultation with Office of Research and Development, the Office of Research Oversight, the Office of General Counsel, and other experts, as appropriate.

(6) Taste and food quality evaluation and consumer acceptance studies, (i) if wholesome foods without additives are consumed or (ii) if a food is consumed that contains a food ingredient at or below the level and for a use found to be safe, or agricultural, chemical or environmental contaminant at or below the level found to be safe, by the Food and Drug Administration or approved by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) or the Food Safety and Inspection Service of the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA).

DHHS or Agency heads retain final judgment as to whether a particular activity is covered by the federal policy at 45 CFR 46.

DHHS or Agency heads may require that specific research activities or classes of research activities conducted, supported, or otherwise subject to regulation by the Department or Agency but not otherwise covered by 45 CFR 46, comply with some or all of the requirements of this policy. Additionally, other pertinent international, federal, state or local laws may require IRB review or other additional protections for human subject for specific research projects that might otherwise be categorized as exempt.

**Right to Review Research that may Qualify as Exempt Research:** Based on the nature of the Research and of the Human Subject populations to be involved, the Emory IRB reserves the right to require initial and continuing review and oversight of Human Subjects Research that may otherwise qualify as Exempt Research per the HHS, and/or VA Regulations and/or of protocols that may not otherwise require prior IRB Full Committee or Expedited review per FDA Regulations.

**Procedure for Evaluation of Research Protocols to Determine if they Qualify as Exempt Research:** For any protocol that a PI believes constitutes Exempt Research, he/she must submit to the Emory IRB an IRB application, Research protocol, consent document, and all other documentation that the IRB office requests as relevant to the proper review of the project.

Upon initial receipt of this documentation, qualified IRB staff shall conduct a preliminary review in order to determine whether the Research protocol may be Exempt Research, Using applicable P&Ps, federal regulations and guidance. As needed, the Protocol Analysts shall forward their recommendations in this regard to a senior IRB staff member, qualified IRB member, the Chair or a Vice-Chair (“the senior reviewer”). The senior reviewer shall make the final determination as to whether the Research protocol is Exempt and record the category(ies) under 45 CFR 46.101(b) and/or 38 CFR 16.110/VHA Handbook 1200.05, Appendix A, per which the protocol is Exempt. Alternatively, the senior reviewer may determine that the protocol is
not exempt and requires review and approval. A senior reviewer may at his or her discretion skip the preliminary review of the Protocol Analyst, conduct the preliminary review, and make the final determination.

If a protocol is determined to be *Exempt Research* and the Emory IRB does not otherwise elect to review it, then the Emory IRB shall send a written notice of this decision to the PI; otherwise, the protocol shall be reviewed per *Expedited Review* or *Full Committee Review*.

Exempt determinations are periodically reported to the IRB at convened meetings.

**Exempt determinations for AVAMC research:** The VA handbook requires that the IRB Chair, or an IRB member designated by the Chair, must review all exempt determinations. In addition to an experienced member of the IRB or Chair making an exempt determination for VA Research, IRB administrators or IRB staff who have appropriate training and experience may make these determinations also. Determinations must be recorded. VA research that is determined to be exempt will be communicated by the VA IRB liaison in the same way to the IRB (reporting to convened meetings via the meeting agenda or attachment).

**Designation of Research as Exempt Does Not Preclude Emory IRB Review for HIPAA Purposes:** The Emory IRB performs the functions of an *Institutional Privacy Board* under the *HIPAA Privacy Rule*. Accordingly, even though a Research protocol may not require prior IRB *Full Committee* or *Expedited* review pursuant to the HHS, FDA or VA Regulations, it may require review and approval by the Emory IRB for HIPAA purposes.

**Effective period for Exempt Research Determination:** A determination of *Exempt Research* made pursuant to these policies and procedures shall be effective indefinitely; but the Principal Investigator is responsible for notifying the Emory IRB if the project changes in a way that might alter the exempt status. The Emory IRB shall review such changes to assess whether the project is still *Exempt Research* or requires review.

**Change in Protocol that Received an Exempt Research Determination:** If a PI initially receives an *Exempt Research* determination but then decides that he/she would like to modify the protocol, then the PI must submit a description of how the protocol has been modified and request a determination as to whether the *Exempt Research* determination still applies.

**Additional Protections:** The senior reviewer making the *Exempt Research* determination also shall determine whether to require additional protections for subjects (including specific informed consent procedures) in keeping with the *Belmont Report* guidelines. The senior reviewer shall include a description of these additional protections in the notice to the PI that states grants *Exempt Research* status and assigns an appropriate category.

**AVAMC Research that is Exempt:** AVAMC Research protocols that receive an *Exempt Research* determination from the Emory IRB must be reviewed by the AVAMC RDC prior to initiation and they must be included in the RDC’s annual review of Research projects.

**FDA-Regulated Protocols that May Not Require Prior IRB Committee Review:** For Research regulated under the *FDA Regulations*, prior IRB *Full Committee* or *Expedited* review is not
required for:

A non-research, non-Clinical Investigation *Emergency Use* of a FDA-regulated *Investigational Device*, provided that the use is reported to the Emory IRB within five business days after it occurred and further provided that any subsequent use of the *Investigational Device* at Emory University is subject to Emory IRB review.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §46.101, .102, .103&.119.
45 CFR §§164.508 & .512.
45 CFR §46.101(b)
21 CFR §§ 56.102, .103 & .104.
38 CFR § 16.102& .119.
VHA Handbook 1200.05
SECNAVINST 3900.39D Para. 6(e); OPNAVINST 5300.8C
31 EXPEDITED REVIEW

POLICY:

The Emory IRB may employ an Expedition Review process for the Initial or Continuing Review of Research that is no more than Minimal Risk (except as noted) and falls within a category approved for Expedited Review under the HHS Regulations or for minor changes in previously approved Research during the period (of one year or less) for which approval is authorized.

PROCEDURES:

Research Eligible for Expedited Review: The Emory IRB may use Expedited Review for Research protocols that satisfy either or both of the following criteria:

   The Research protocol falls into one of the categories set forth in the provision below entitled Categories of Research Eligible for Expedited Review below and is found by the IRB reviewer to involve no more than Minimal Risk (except as noted); and/or
   
   The Research protocol involves Minor Changes to previously approved Research during the period of one year or less for which approval is authorized.

Categories of Research Eligible for Expedited Review: The activities listed below should not be deemed to be of Minimal Risk simply because they are included on this list. Inclusion on this list merely means that the activity is eligible for review through the Expedited Review procedure when the specific circumstances of the proposed Research involve no more than Minimal Risk to Human Subjects.

   • The categories in this list apply regardless of the age of subjects, except as noted.
   
   • The expedited review procedure may not be used where identification of the subjects and/or their responses would reasonably place them at risk of criminal or civil liability or be damaging to the subjects financial standing, employability, insurability, reputation, or be stigmatizing, unless reasonable and appropriate protections will be implemented so that risks related to invasion of privacy and breach of confidentiality are no greater than minimal.
   
   • The Expedited Review procedure may not be used for classified Research involving Human Subjects.
   
   • The standard requirements for informed consent (or its waiver, alteration, or exception) apply regardless of the type of IRB review (Expedited or Full Committee Review).

Research Categories one (1) through seven (7) pertain to both initial and continuing IRB review:

Category 1: Clinical Studies of drugs and medical devices when: (a) the study involves only Research on drugs for which an Investigational New Drug application is not
required (provided, however that Research on marketed drugs that significantly increases the risks or decreases the acceptability of the risk associated with the use of the product is not eligible for Expedited Review) OR (b) the study involves only Research on Medical Devices for which an Investigational Device Exemption application is not required, or the Medical Device is approved for marketing and the Medical Device is being used in accordance with its approved labeling. This category may be applied to protocols undergoing either Initial or Continuing Review.

Category 2: Collection of blood samples by finger stick, heel stick, ear stick or venipuncture when: (a) the samples are taken from healthy, non-pregnant adults who weigh at least 110 pounds and amounts drawn do not exceed 550 ml. in an eight week period and collection does not occur more frequently than two times per week OR (b) the samples are taken from other Adults and Children considering the age, weight and health of the subjects, the collection procedure, the amount of blood to be collected and the frequency with which it will be collected, and the amount drawn may not exceed the lesser of 50 ml., or 3 ml. per kg. in an 8 week period and collection may not occur more frequently than two times per week. This category may be applied to protocols undergoing either Initial or Continuing Review.

Category 3: Prospective collection of biological specimens for Research purposes by noninvasive means such as collection of: (a) hair and nail clippings in a non-disfiguring manner; (b) deciduous teeth at time of exfoliation, or if routine patient care indicates a need for extraction; (c) excreta or external secretions (including sweat); (d) uncannulated saliva collected either in an un-stimulated fashion or stimulated by chewing gumbase or wax or by applying a citric solution to the tongue; (e) placenta removed at delivery; (f) amniotic fluid obtained at the time rupture of the membrane prior to or during labor; (g) supra and subgingival dental plaque and calculus, provided the collection procedure is not more invasive than routine prophylactic scaling of the teeth and the process is accomplished in accordance with acceptable prophylactic techniques; (i) mucosal and skin cells collected by buccal scraping or swab, skin swab or mouth washings; (k) sputum collected after saline mist nebulization. This category may be applied to protocols undergoing either Initial or Continuing Review.

Category 4: Collection of data through noninvasive procedures (not involving general anesthesia or sedation) routinely employed in clinical practice excluding procedures involving x-rays or microwaves; provided, however, that when Medical Devices are employed, they must be approved for marketing. Studies intended to evaluate the safety and effectiveness of the Medical Device are not generally eligible for Expedited Review, including studies of approved Medical Devices for new indications. Examples of data collection falling into this category include collection carried out by the following methods: (a) physical sensors that are applied either to the surface of the body or at a distance and do not involve input of significant amounts of energy into the participant or an invasion of the participant’s privacy; (b) weighing or testing sensory acuity; (c) magnetic resonance imaging; (d) electrocardiography, electroencephalography, thermography, detection of naturally occurring radioactivity, electroretinography, ultrasound, diagnostic infrared imaging doppler blood flow, and echocardiography; (e) moderate exercise, muscular strength testing, body composition assessment and flexibility testing where appropriate, given the age, weight and health of the individual.
This category may be applied to protocols undergoing either *Initial* or *Continuing Review*.

Category 5: *Research* involving materials (data, documents, records or specimens) that have been collected, or will be collected solely for non-*Research* purposes such as medical treatment or diagnosis. NOTE: Some *Research* in this category may be *Exempt Research* under the *HHS Regulations* as discussed in *Section 29* (entitled: *Exempt Research*). This category refers only to *Research* that is not otherwise *Exempt Research*. This category may be applied to protocols undergoing either *Initial* or *Continuing Review*.

Category 6: Collection of data from voice, video, digital or image recordings made for *Research* purposes. This category may be applied to protocols undergoing either *Initial* or *Continuing Review*.

Category 7: *Research* on individual or group characteristics or behavior (including but not limited to, *Research* on perception, cognition, motivation, identity, language, communication, cultural beliefs or practices and social behavior) or *Research* employing survey, interview, oral history, focus group, program evaluation, human factors evaluation or quality assurance methodologies. NOTE: Some *Research* in this category may be *Exempt Research* under the *HHS Regulations* as discussed in *Section 29* (entitled: *Exempt Research*). This category refers only to *Research* that is not otherwise *Exempt Research*. This category may be applied to protocols undergoing either *Initial* or *Continuing Review*.

Category 8: *Continuing Review* of *Research* previously approved by the convened IRB as follows:

(a) where (i) the *Research* is permanently closed to the enrollment of new subjects; (ii) all subjects have completed all *Research*-related interventions; and (iii) the *Research* remains active only for long-term follow-up of subjects; or

(b) where no subjects have been enrolled and no additional risks have been identified; or

(c) where the remaining *Research* activities are limited to data analysis.

[Note: for categories 8a and 8c the following applicability criteria apply: (1) the remaining activities must be *Minimal Risk*; (2) if identification of the subjects or their responses will reasonably place them at risk of criminal or civil liability or be damaging to the subjects’ financial standing, employability, insurability, reputation, or be stigmatizing, reasonable and appropriate protections will be implemented so that risks related to invasion of privacy and breach of confidentiality are no greater than minimal; and (3) the *Research* may not be classified *Research*. For category 8b the only applicability criterion is that the *Research* may not be classified *Research*. For a multi-center protocol, an *Expedited Review* procedure may be used by the IRB at a particular site whenever the conditions of category (8)(a), (b), or (c) are
satisfied for that site. However, with respect to category 8(b), while the criterion that "no subjects have been enrolled" is interpreted to mean that no subjects have ever been enrolled at a particular site, the criterion that "no additional risks have been identified" is interpreted to mean that neither the investigator nor the IRB at a particular site has identified any additional risks from any site or other relevant source.]

Category 9: **Continuing Review of Research**, not conducted under an **Investigational New Drug** application or an **Investigational Device Exemption**, when the second through the eighth categories above do not apply, but the IRB has determined and documented at a convened meeting that the Research involves no greater than **Minimal Risk**; and no additional risks have been identified (provided, however, that this determination regarding "no additional risks" does not need to be made by the convened IRB.)

**NOTE:** If a Research protocol has been initially approved by Full Committee Review, then continuing review may NOT be done by Expedited Review unless the protocol falls within Categories 8 or 9 above, or if subsequent modifications have resulted in the Research meeting the criteria for categories 1-7.

**IRB Process for Conducting Expedited Review:** Triaging shall be conducted per the P&P entitled **IRB Protocol Triage & Assignment of Review Category**.

**Materials for Submission:** PIs shall submit all documentation that they normally submit for Initial or Continuing Full Committee Review, including the appropriate application for Initial or Continuing Review and status report for continuing Research.

**Assignment to Expedited Review:** The Protocol Analyst will make an initial determination as to whether the protocol qualifies for Expedited Review using the Expedited Review Checklist. The Protocol Analyst will route those new protocols that he/she, in consultation with the IRB Director/Assistant Director, has initially determined to be eligible for Expedited Review to the IRB Chair, Vice Chair, or Designated Reviewer for review after verifying that the reviewer is not listed as study personnel.

**Review by Chair/Vice Chair/Designated Reviewer:** The Chair/Vice Chair/Designated Reviewer, unless conflicted (see P&P entitled **Conflicts of Interest on the Part of IRB Members and IRB Staff**), will confirm or alter the determination that a protocol is eligible for Expedited Review and (when applicable) reroute it accordingly. The reviewer is expected to review all information that the convened IRB would have received had the submission gone to a convened IRB meeting. In reviewing a protocol under Expedited Review, the IRB Chair/Vice Chair/Designated Reviewer shall follow the review procedures described in the P&P entitled **Possible IRB Committee Actions on Research Protocols**.

If the review of a protocol requires special expertise, the Chair/Vice Chair/Designated Reviewer and another IRB member or consultant with appropriate expertise shall review the protocol.

If the study does not meet criteria for approval, then the IRB office will inform the PI in writing what modifications are required. The PI’s modifications will be sent to back to the Chair/Vice
Chair/ Designated Reviewer for review and approval. In the event that Expedited Review is carried out by more than one IRB member and the reviewers disagree, the IRB Chair shall make the final determination, or if one of the reviewers is the Chair, or the Chair otherwise determines in his/her discretion, the protocol will be submitted for Full Committee Review.

No Disapprovals by Expedited Review: The Chair/Vice Chair/Designated Reviewer may not Disapprove a protocol under the Expedited Review procedure; rather, the protocol must be referred for Full Committee Review if the reviewer believes that it should be Disapproved.

Informing the IRB of the Results of Expedited Review: Any member can request to receive and review the full protocol and all supporting materials for any protocol that is to receive Expedited Review from the IRB Office. The IRB members will be apprised of all Expedited Review approvals granted by a member of their assigned IRB Committee through publication of such approvals in the agenda for the next scheduled IRB Committee meeting. Copies of any Expedited Review approval shall be made available for any optional review at the request of any IRB member.

Appeals: If the IRB makes a decision by Expedited Review that the PI believes to be unduly restrictive, the PI may request a re-review by the full IRB Committee. Any such request should be sent by the PI in writing to the IRB Chair.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR §§ 46.101(b)(2)-(b)(4); .110; & .402(a)
21 CFR §§ 312 & 812
21 CFR § 56.110

Categories of Research that may be Reviewed by the Institutional Review Board (IRB) through an Expedited Procedure, 63 FR 60364-60367, November 9, 1998 at www.hhs.gov/ohrp/humansubjects/guidance/expeditetd98.htm
32  FULL COMMITTEE REVIEW

POLICY:

The Emory IRB shall refer for Full Committee Review those protocols that (a) do not otherwise qualify for a designation of Does Not Constitute Human Subjects Research, Exempt Research, or Expedited Review; and/or (b) are being referred for Full Committee Review in the discretion of the IRB in accordance with applicable policies and regulations.

PROCEDURES:

Full Committee Review: Assignment of submissions to IRB Committees for Full Committee Review will be made based upon the expertise of the members on the IRB Committee and workload.

Primary and Secondary Reviewers:

Selection: Qualified IRB staff will assign each protocol to a primary and secondary reviewer from the members of the IRB Committee, with a copy to all IRB Committee members. Assignment to primary and secondary reviewers shall be made for all protocols that require Full Committee Review; whether initial, continuing, or modifications.

Assignment to primary and secondary reviewers shall be made based on scientific and scholarly expertise of reviewers; any Vulnerable Populations involved in the Research and the experience of the reviewers with those populations; absence of conflict of interest on the part of the members; and/or workload. At least one reviewer who has appropriate scientific or scholarly expertise and/or experience with any Vulnerable Population involved shall be assigned to the review and conduct an in-depth review of the protocol. If the IRB staff cannot identify an IRB Member who has the necessary experience, then the IRB Chair or Director may solicit Consultants from the University or the community with the necessary expertise to assist. Each submission must be reviewed by at least one IRB member.

Written Review: The primary and secondary reviewers will in general provide written reviews of each protocol assigned to them, using the IRB reviewer forms to guide their review. Each reviewer’s written comments should be submitted to the IRB office at least one business day prior to the scheduled meeting to allow time for the primary reviewer to view the comments and for relaying questions to the study team, if applicable. Written comments cannot substitute for a convened IRB Committee meeting.

Presentation: During the full IRB Committee meeting, the primary reviewer will be responsible for presenting the protocol to the IRB including an overview of the goals, design, study procedures, safety procedures and qualifications of the Investigators and shall lead the IRB Committee through the completion of the regulatory criteria for approval, as set forth in the IRB checklist appropriate to the type of review (i.e., Initial Review, Continuing Review, modification). The primary reviewer also shall present or allow the presentation of any review comments from any secondary reviewers.
**Recommendations:** The primary reviewer shall make a recommendation to the Chair/Vice Chair regarding the action to be taken with regard to the protocol (e.g., Approval, Approval Pending, Deferral, Tabled or Disapproval), as well as the designation of any special review category (e.g., Prisoner, Pregnant Women, Minors, Ward of State); risk status (Minimal Risk or Greater than Minimal Risk) and corresponding time for the next continuing review to occur; risk of device (as applicable); and grant of a partial or complete Waiver of HIPAA Authorization or of Informed Consent (as applicable).

If the IRB Committee is reviewing a Research protocol involving Children as Human Subjects, then the primary reviewer’s review shall include assigning a Pediatrics Designation, i.e., making a recommendation as to the appropriate risk/benefit category for the Research under HHS Regulations 45 CFR §§ 46.403 - .407 and/or FDA Regulations 21 CFR §§ 50.51 - .54 (see Section 49, entitled: Research Involving Children – Additional Protections).

**Absence of Primary Reviewer at a Meeting:** If the primary reviewer is not present at the IRB Committee meeting, the secondary reviewer shall assume his/her duties. If neither the primary nor secondary reviewers are present at the IRB Committee, any tertiary reviewer or presiding Chair shall assume the presentation duties. If none of the reviewers assigned to review a Research protocol is present at the IRB Committee meeting, and no other IRB member present has conducted a thorough review, the Research protocol shall be Tabled and rescheduled for presentation at the next meeting of the same IRB Committee, or alternatively provided to other reviewers on another IRB Committee for review.

**IRB Committee Action:** After hearing primary and secondary reviewers, the IRB Committee shall discuss the protocol and entertain a motion and vote on the action that should be taken with regard to the protocol in accordance with the P&P entitled Possible IRB Committee Actions on Research Protocols. The IRB office shall notify the PI in writing of the action of the full Committee with regard to the PI’s protocol.

For Full Committee review of Reportable Events and Noncompliance, the IRB uses the following Standard Operating Procedure: Process for reviewing NC/UP cases

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §§ 46.107; .108; .109; .111; .115; & .403 -.407.
21 CFR §§ 56.107; .108; .109; .111; & .115; & 21 CFR §§ 50.50 -.54.
33 IRB MEETINGS

POLICY:

Each IRB Committee will hold regularly scheduled meetings for the purpose of providing initial and continuing review for Research protocols and modifications that come before the Emory IRB and for conducting IRB business. A Quorum must be present in order to conduct an official IRB Committee meeting.

DEFINED TERMS:

Full Committee Review: Review of proposed research at a convened meeting of the IRB, at which a majority of the membership of the IRB are present, including at least one member whose primary concerns are in a nonscientific area [45 CFR § 46.109; 21 CFR § 56.108].

Full Committee: A majority of the membership of the IRB, including at least one member whose primary concerns are in a nonscientific area.

Full Review: see Full Committee review.

Quorum: A quorum is the minimum number of members that must be present to conduct official Emory IRB business at a convened IRB Committee meeting. A Quorum shall be established when the following criteria are met: (a) a majority of the primary IRB members (or their designated alternates) are present (e.g., Quorum for an IRB Committee of sixteen (16) primary members would be nine (9)); (b) one of the voting members present is a non-Emory non-scientist (see Section 21, IRB Membership); (c) if a protocol involving an FDA-regulated article is being reviewed, then a licensed physician must be present; and (d) if AVAMC Research is being reviewed, then at least one of the AVAMC members of the IRB must be present during the review of such Research.

PROCEDURES:

Convened IRB Meetings: Except when an Exempt Research or Expedited Research review procedure is used, the IRB must review proposed Research at convened meetings at which a Quorum is present.

Meeting Schedule and Location for IRB Committees: The IRB staff, in consultation with the Chair or relevant Vice Chair, shall schedule any meeting of an IRB Committee. In general, each biomedical IRB panel meetings once per month. The sociobehavioral IRB meets monthly only as needed when there are sociobehavioral studies requiring full board review; otherwise the meetings are not held. The IRB staff shall be responsible for providing written notice to all IRB members of the date, starting time and location of each IRB Committee meeting, as well as of any changes to or cancellation of meetings. The staff shall also publish the meeting schedule for the benefit of the researchers. The schedule for IRB Committee meetings may vary due to holidays, lack of a Quorum, emergency circumstances, or other events (e.g., inclement weather). In addition, special meetings may be called at any time at the request of the Chair or
**Director.**

**Attendance at Meetings:** All IRB members shall be diligent in attending **IRB Committee** meetings and arriving at the meetings at their designated start time. IRB members in attendance shall be recorded in the minutes for each **IRB Committee** meeting. IRB members who will not be able to attend a scheduled meeting should notify the IRB **staff** of this fact as far in advance as possible of the **IRB Committee** meeting. Repeated attendance problems may be cause for removal of an IRB member.

**Guests at Meetings:** Individuals not associated with the HRPP administration such as researchers, fellows, prospective members, and students, may observe an IRB meeting with the permission of the Chair, relevant Vice Chair or IRB Director for purposes related to the mission of the University. In general, guests should not speak unless first recognized by the IRB **Chair/Vice Chair**, but are encouraged to seek the permission of the presiding Chair/Vice Chair to contribute nonbinding comments to the discussion in good faith.

All persons, whether regular attendees or guests, who attend the **IRB Committee** meeting must sign an appropriate **Confidentiality and Non-Disclosure Agreement** (see the P&P entitled Confidentiality Obligations for IRB Administrators, Members, Consultants/Outside Reviewers & **Staff**), with the exception of PIs who may be present at the during the discussion of their **Research** (see provision below entitled Presence of PIs at IRB Committee Meetings).

**Attendance by Telephonic Means:** An IRB member may attend an **IRB Committee** meeting by telephonic means if the following requirements are met: (a) the IRB member receives all materials for review ahead of the meeting; (b) the IRB member has the materials with him during the call; (c) the IRB member uses a telephone in a private area where the conversation cannot be overheard by others; and (d) the IRB member communicates using a speaker phone present at the meeting place per which the IRB member may speak to and be heard by all other IRB members present at the meeting place. An IRB member present by telephonic means may be counted toward **Quorum**.

**Leadership of IRB Meetings:** An IRB **Chair** or **Vice Chair** (or designated voting member or IRB Director, if the IRB Chair or Vice Chair is not able to be present at the start of the meeting) shall convene the meeting. An IRB Chair or Vice Chair must be present during each **IRB Committee** meeting. In case the presiding Chair or Vice Chair must recuse him/herself, before leaving the meeting room, he or she shall designate a voting member to preside **pro tem**.

**IRB Staff at Meetings:** Designated IRB staff will be in attendance at each **IRB Committee** meeting to take minutes and to provide information and support. Whenever possible, the IRB Director should attend to educate and advise as needed.

**Distribution of Materials for Meetings:** Prior to placing a protocol on the **IRB Committee** meeting agenda, the **Protocol Analyst** shall review each application received for completeness and regulatory compliance using the relevant checklist. The IRB **Director**, or **designee**, shall oversee the **Protocol Analyst**’s preparation of an agenda for each **IRB Committee** meeting. The agenda will set forth the place and time of the meeting and include review assignments and all items of business for the meeting.
The IRB office will distribute to each IRB member the agenda and access to the studies on the agenda via the IRB’s electronic submission system approximately one week prior to the meeting, along with other materials via email if applicable (items may be added later that this to the agenda if necessary and if the Chair determines that the members have ample time to thoroughly review the submission before the meeting). Depending on the type of submission (new study, modification, continuing review, reportable event) documents may include:

- Complete IRB application form for the agenda item
- Proposed consent; parental permission/assent form(s) and revocation letters (if applicable)
- Proposed HIPAA authorization materials
- Recruitment materials/subject information
- Data collection instruments (including all surveys and questionnaires)
- Any relevant grant application(s);
- Any investigator’s brochure;
- Any HHS approved sample informed consent document; and
- Any HHS approved protocol.

If any IRB member requires additional information to complete his/her review, he/she may contact the PI directly, or contact the IRB office to request additional information.

Meeting Procedures: The following procedures shall be followed with regard to the conduct of each IRB Committee meeting:

**Quorum**: The IRB Chair or Vice Chair (or designated voting member or IRB Director) shall call the IRB Committee meeting to order when a Quorum is in attendance. A current membership roster reflecting compositional requirements shall be available for reference. Quorum is documented in the minutes.

No official Emory IRB business may be conducted unless a Quorum is present, The IRB Chair or Vice Chair, with the assistance of the IRB Director and staff, will be responsible for ensuring that an appropriate Quorum is present prior to calling the meeting to order and throughout the conduct of the meeting.

At least one member who represents the general perspective of subjects must be present at meetings of the convened IRB. This role will be fulfilled by an unaffiliated (also known as “community”), non-scientist member. The attendance of an unaffiliated, non-scientist shall be recorded in the meeting minutes. Without such a member in attendance, the meeting may not proceed with business.
Votes may only occur when a Quorum is present. In order for a protocol to be approved it must receive the approval of a majority of all voting members present at the time the protocol is reviewed. IRB staff present at the meeting will take note of arrivals and departures of all members and notify the IRB Chair if Quorum is lost. If at any time during an IRB Committee meeting Quorum is lost, then the protocol must be tabled until Quorum is restored. If Quorum cannot be recovered, the meeting must be adjourned.

IRB members who have conflicts of interest with regard to Research protocols or other matters that are being reviewed by the IRB Committee must recuse themselves and leave the room during discussion and voting on such matters and cannot be counted toward Quorum for such matters. The Chair should remind members at the start of the meeting about the need to identify and disclose such conflicts of interest.

Technology: In general IRB members are provided with laptop computers to review materials during the meeting, and documents may also be displayed on a projector.

Length of Meeting: IRB members shall be permitted time during the IRB Committee meeting for thorough discussion of all items on the agenda. Meeting facilitators work with the IRB Team Lead, Director, and Chair to ensure that the number of items to review on an agenda is feasible and does not unduly burden the reviewers. Meetings are generally not given a predetermined end time. The IRB Committee meeting shall continue from the time Quorum is established until the earlier of the time that Quorum is lost or all items of business shown on the agenda have been discussed or the Chair adjourns the meeting. In general, IRB members shall refrain from leaving IRB Committee meetings before all items of business are discussed and shall advise the IRB staff or IRB Chair in advance of any need to leave before the IRB Committee meeting’s conclusion.

Reviewers: Reviews are routed and assigned in accordance with these P&Ps (see P&P entitled Full Committee Review). Reviewers shall thoroughly review all Research protocols assigned to them in advance of the IRB Committee meeting and make presentations at the meeting as described in the P&P entitled Full Committee Review.

Discussion: After each reviewer’s presentation is complete, the IRB Committee will discuss any issues concerning the review of the Research protocol and then vote on the Research protocol. The primary reviewer shall include within his/her review a recommendations as to Committee action, risk level, etc, as discussed in the P&P entitled Full Committee Review).

Voting: Voting shall generally be done by voice vote; however, the Chair/Vice Chair in his/her opinion, may permit voting by other methods, e.g., hand vote, written ballot. Each voting member receives one vote (no vote is counted for members who are present but not eligible to vote on a given item, for example who are serving solely as consultants on specific studies, or as alternates available to vote if quorum would be lost due to recusal of other members.) Voting by proxy is not permitted. For each Research protocol, any member may make a motion for a vote. In addition, in the case of Research protocols involving Minors, the appropriate Pediatrics Designation for the Research protocol shall be expressly included in the motion brought to a vote. Motions shall carry by a majority of the persons voting, and in the event of a
tie, the recommendation/motion will not carry and the matter will be deferred to another IRB Committee meeting. Votes for the following categories shall be sought and recorded in the minutes: Total votes, Yes (or in favor), No (or opposed), and Abstained.

**Voting on Matters Other than Research Protocols:** Other matters to be voted on by the IRB Committee shall be placed before the IRB Committee in terms of a motion and votes on the motion shall be taken and recorded in the same manner as set forth above in the provision entitled Voting.

**Presence of PIs at IRB Committee Meetings:** The IRB Committee may request a PI to come to the IRB Committee meeting to address questions concerning his/her Research protocol. Similarly, a PI may request to come to the IRB Committee to make a presentation regarding his/her Research protocol. Any such request should be made with reasonable notice in advance of the IRB Committee meeting at which the PI’s protocol is to be discussed, and the IRB Chair or Vice Chair shall review and grant or deny the request, as determined in his/her reasonable discretion. The IRB should notify the PI of the decision in writing.

The IRB staff shall notify each PI whose Research protocol is being reviewed at an IRB Committee meeting that his/her Research protocol is being considered, and may request from the PI a telephone number at which the PI may be contacted during the time of the meeting for questions from the IRB Committee.

If a PI attends an IRB Committee meeting regarding his/her Research protocol, then the PI should be present only for the discussion of his/her Research protocol and not for the discussion or voting on another PI’s Research. The PI should be excused and leave the room for any sensitive discussion and the vote on his/her Research.

A speakerphone shall be available at each IRB Committee meeting, and at the request of the IRB Committee shall be used to contact the PI for information during the meeting.

**Applicable Regulations:**

34 MINUTES OF AN IRB MEETING

POLICY:

Written minutes must be taken of all IRB meetings and be available for review by IRB members by the next regularly scheduled meeting date. Minutes must meet all requirements set forth in HHS, FDA and VA Regulations, as well as all institutional requirements.

PROCEDURES:

Procedure for Recording Voting in Minutes: IRB staff who are present at the IRB Committee meeting and the IRB Director/Assistant Director who is present at the IRB Committee meeting shall be responsible for counting and confirming the votes on each matter brought to a vote. All votes shall be recorded in the minutes as the total number, number in favor (or yes), number opposed (or no), and number abstaining.

Contents of Minutes: Minutes of each IRB Committee meeting shall at a minimum contain the following elements:

- Attendance: A record of attendance of members, noting the key compositional requirements for Quorum and noting which members are eligible to vote, and a record of attendance of guests at the IRB Committee meeting.

- Attendance by Alternate Means: A record of those members or alternate members who participated in the meeting through videoconference or teleconference (speakerphone) and documentation that those attending via such means received all pertinent material prior to the meeting and were able to actively and equally participate in all discussions.

- Quorum: A record of Quorum and/or loss of Quorum at each Emory IRB meeting, including presence of one member whose primary concern is in a non-scientific area. Minutes shall specifically note changes in the voting members present during voting on each item throughout the meeting, in order to document the maintenance of Quorum. The minutes shall also note when departing members are replaced by other members during the meeting in order to maintain quorum.

- Actions: A record of actions taken by Emory IRB. The minutes shall reflect separate deliberations, actions and votes for each protocol undergoing initial review, continuing review or review of modifications by the convened IRB.

The IRB shall use the minutes, the meeting agenda, an appendix thereto, or the eIRB system to notify IRB members of actions taken through Expedited Review and those studies that have been determined to be exempt from IRB review.

- Votes: A record of votes taken by the IRB Committee on all actions, including the total number of votes, the number of votes for, against and abstaining. The vote on each action will reflect those members eligible to vote on that item.
Basis for Action: A description of the IRB Committee’s rationale for requiring changes in or disapproving a protocol.

Discussion of Controverted Issues: A written summary of IRB Committee discussion of issues, including those involving opposing views, and their resolution.

Justification for Changes to HHS Approved Consent Documents: A record of the justification for any deletion or substantive modification of information concerning risks or alternative procedures contained in HHS-approved sample consent documents.

Conflict of Interest: For any IRB Committee meeting in which an IRB Chair, Vice Chair or IRB member recuses himself/herself due to a conflicting interest with the research under review, the minutes reflect that a conflicting interest has been disclosed and that the individual with the conflicting interest left the meeting and was not involved in any discussion of or voting on the protocol in question and was not counted towards Quorum for the discussion.

Vulnerable Populations: A record that reflects that the IRB reviewed additional safeguards to protect Vulnerable Populations (as described in the P&P entitled Review of Research Protocols Involving Vulnerable Populations) if entered as study subjects, if this information is not otherwise documented in IRB records.

Review Period: For Initial and Continuing Review, a record of the duration of the approval granted to each protocol, as determined by the IRB.

Risk Level: The risk categories to be used are minimal risk or greater than minimal risk.

HIPAA: A record, as required by 45 CFR Section 164(i)(2), indicating the approval of a waiver or alteration of the HIPAA Authorization requirement. The presence of a HIPAA waiver/alternation worksheet within the electronic study submission, which describes how each criterion for a waiver/alteration is met, will suffice for a record of why the waiver/ alteration was granted. Any additional discussion of how the study does or does not satisfy those criteria will be recorded in the minutes.

Consultants (and ad hoc Reviewers): A record of key information provided by Consultants if any.

Required Findings: Description of any required findings that IRB must make with regard to particular protocols along with the protocol-specific information justifying each IRB finding. In particular, documentation shall be included that:

Establishes that the Research meets each of the required criteria of 45 CFR Section 116(d) along with protocol-specific information to justify why the IRB considers the Research to meet each criterion when approving a consent procedure that does not include or that alters some or all of the required elements of informed consent, or when waiving the requirement to obtain informed consent.
Establishes that the Research meets each of the required criterion in 45 CFR 46.117 along with protocol specific information justifying why the IRB considers the Research to meet each criterion when the requirements for written documentation of consent are waived;

When approving Research that involves populations covered by 45 CFR Subparts B, C, or D, the minutes shall set forth the protocol specific justifications and findings regarding the determination stated in the Subparts, or the IRB’s agreement with the findings and justifications as presented by the Investigator on IRB forms.

When applicable under the FDA Regulations: rationale for significant risk/non-significant risk device determinations.

**Accuracy of Minutes:** IRB Committee meeting minutes must accurately reflect the discussion and voting that took place at the meeting. Protocol Analysts who attend the IRB Committee meeting and take notes during attendance are responsible for preparing the minutes.

**Alteration of Minutes:** The adding to or modifying of the minutes of an IRB Committee meeting by any IRB member, administrator, staff member or other party to reflect events that did not occur at the meeting is strictly prohibited. In addition, with the exception of corrections voted on as approved by the IRB Committee, the inclusion of any additions to or modifications to minutes that have approved by the IRB Committee also is prohibited. Violation of either of these prohibitions may be grounds for removal from the Emory IRB or dismissal from an administrative or staff position with the Emory IRB.

**Availability of Minutes:** All IRB minutes shall be available for inspection and copying by OHRP or the FDA upon request. The RDC shall have access to all non-redacted records of the IRB concerning the review of AVAMC Research. These minutes will be available to the RDC in a timely fashion after their approval. A copy of the IRB approved minutes for each IRB meeting shall be distributed to the IO, the Director of the Office of Research Compliance and University Counsel upon request.

**Retention of Minutes:** IRB minutes shall be kept according to the document retention specifications set forth in Section 26 (entitled: Documentation and Records Retention).

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §§ 164.308; .310; .312; .512; & .530.
35 CONFLICTS OF INTEREST – INVESTIGATORS

POLICY:

Participation by academic or staff members in external activities that enhance their professional skills or constitute public service can be beneficial to the University as well as to the individual. However, such activities can lead to conflicts of interest with regard to an Investigator’s responsibility to the University. Accordingly, Emory University has adopted a policy regarding Financial Interests in Research, with which Investigators are expected to comply.

Please note that, for Conflict of Interest purposes, the term Investigator is defined as follows:

The Project Directors, Principal Investigators, members of the research team identified as senior/key personnel on the grant or contract application, progress report, or any other report, and individuals identified by the Principal Investigator or Project Director who are responsible for and have substantial independent decision making in respect to the design, conduct or reporting of the research, such as Collaborators or Consultants named on the grant.

PROCEDURES:

General Conflict Management:

With regard to Research protocols submitted for IRB review, all Investigators who are PIs, Project Directors, Senior Key Research personnel, and individuals identified by the Principal Investigator or Project Director as having responsibility for and substantial independence in decision making with respect to the design, conduct or reporting of the research, must follow all applicable Emory University Policy for Investigators Holding a Financial Interest in Research, Emory Policy 7.7.

Researchers involved in VA Research must disclose conflicts of interest. This means disclosing to the IRB any potential, actual, or perceived conflict of interest of a financial, professional, or personal nature that may affect any aspect of the research, and complying with all applicable VA and other federal requirements regarding conflict of interest.

The following procedures apply when the Emory IRB is responsible for reviewing management plans for investigators. In cases where the Emory IRB has deferred review to a central IRB, the applicable IRB reliance agreement may stipulate other procedures for review of Conflict of Interest management plans. The terms of such reliance agreements are subject to prior review by the Conflict of Interest Office and the Office for Research Compliance in addition to the IRB Director and Institutional Official.

When the Emory Conflict of Interest (COI) Review Committee identifies a Significant Financial Interest Requiring Disclosure (SFI), the COI Review Committee must provide the IRB with documentation establishing the COI Review Committee’s decision regarding the Significant Financial Interest, as well as a copy of any management plan. The Compliance Review (CoRe) team will review any management plan to determine if the SFI will adversely affect the protection of Human Subjects and if the management plan is adequate. If the CoRe team
requests additions to the plan that the PI does not agree with, the recommended additions are
referred to the a convened meeting of the Emory IRB for further review. The full board’s
decision will apply. If the CoRe team is unable to make a determination they will also refer the
review (along with any recommendations) to a convened meeting of the Emory IRB.

Based on the significance of the SFI and potential for adverse effects on the protection of
subjects, management plans may include:

- disclosure to subjects through the consent process,
- modifications in the Research plan,
- monitoring by independent reviewers,
- divestiture of financial interests,
- appointment of a non-interested PI,
- or prohibition of the conduct of the Research at the University.

For PHS and NSF funded activities, the COI Review Committee will determine whether an FCOI,
as defined by 42 CFR Part 50, exists. The IRB Chair/Vice Chair, CoRe team, or IRB Committee
may require additional management tools than those required by the COI Review Committee.
The IRB Chair/Vice Chair, CoRe team, and IRB Committee cannot reverse the COI Review
Committee’s finding that a Financial Conflict of Interest exists.

A copy of the final management plan will be filed in the IRB Office electronically. A copy of the
revised, IRB-approved management plan will be sent via email or hard copy to the COI Review
Committee if the IRB requires substantial changes.

Alternate Paths for Identification of Potential SFI: Protocol-Specific Conflict Management
Alternatively, the IRB can be alerted to potential SFI through the IRB application, which asks
protocol-specific questions regarding Financial Interests of the investigators and key personnel.
Key Research personnel are those individuals who:

1) are identified as senior/key personnel on the grant or contract application, progress
report, or any other report; or
2) are identified by the Principal Investigator or Project Director as having responsibility
for and substantial independence in decision-making with respect to the design,
conduct or reporting of the research.

If a potential SFI is disclosed in an initial IRB study submission, the IRB will refer the matter to
the COI Office, and the review process described in the immediately preceding section will be
employed.

Change in Conflict of Interest Status and Continuing Review
If the SFI status of an Investigator changes during the course of a study, the individual is
required to notify the COI Office within thirty (30) working days of the change.

If the change removes an existing SFI and the COI Review Committee or Office determines that a
management plan is no longer required, the IRB will accept that determination and review any
modifications needed to eliminate the management plan.
If a new SFI arises, or an existing SFI changes such that the management plan requires revision by the COI Review Committee, any resulting management plan will be forwarded to the IRB by the COI Office, and will be handled per the section “Protocol-Specific Conflict Management” above. The IRB will review the change in status, along with any disclosures or protocol modifications required by an IRB-approved management plan, as a modification to the protocol. In addition, at the time of Continuing Review, the Investigator will be asked whether there has been any change in the financial interest status relating to the Research. Any new disclosures will be handled as per the process directly above.

Applicable Regulations:
45 CFR 46.107 (e)
38 CFR 16.107(e)
VHA Handbook 1200.05
36 CONFLICTS OF INTEREST ON THE PART OF IRB MEMBERS AND IRB STAFF

Any IRB member (or consultant), IRB Director, IRB staff, or IRB Patient Subject Advocate must disclose a conflicting interest in a project to the IRB Chair or Director before the project is reviewed under Full Committee Review. He/She may not review a project (exempt, expedited, or full committee review) in which he/she has a conflicting interest, and for studies reviewed by the Full Committee, he/she must leave the room during the discussion of and voting on such a project, except if the IRB member (or consultant), IRB Director, IRB staff, or IRB Patient Subject Advocate is providing information at the IRB’s request, in which case he/she will be present to provide the information, but will leave the room for the remainder of the discussion and voting.

DEFINED TERMS for this P&P:

A “conflicting interest” of an IRB member (or consultant), IRB Director, IRB staff, or IRB Patient Subject Advocate generally includes the following:

1) Participation of the IRB member, consultant, Director, staff or Patient Subject Advocate - or their immediate family - in a project (listed as an investigator on the project or is a member of the research team; involved in the design, conduct, or reporting of the research);
   - Immediate family means spouse and dependent children.

2) Supervisory relationship between the IRB Member and the Principal Investigator;

3) Financial interest if it involves: (a) receiving more than $10,000 annually as salary, consulting income, or other compensation from the sponsor of the project or from an entity whose products or services are being studied; (b) having an equity interest (including stock or stock options) that exceeds $10,000 or that represents more than 1% of a public company sponsoring the research or whose products or services are being studied; (c) any equity interest in a privately held company sponsoring the research or whose products or services are being studied; (d) having an ownership interest (including patent, trademark, trade secret or copyright interest) in the drug/product/technology that is the subject of the research project; or (e) receiving or expecting to receive compensation with a value that may be affected by the outcome of the study. For purposes of the requirements relating to financial interests, the financial interests of the IRB member (or consultant), IRB Director, IRB Assistant Director, or IRB Patient Subject Advocate and his/her immediate family is considered.

5) Personal relationship with investigator (has an immediate family relationship or other close personal relationship with the investigator);

6) Fiduciary relationship to sponsor or the product or service being studied (serves as an executive to a company sponsoring the research or the product or service being studied or serves on such a company’s board of directors);

7) Other non-financial interests that may be conflicting interests, such as having an interest that he/she believes conflicts with the ability to review a project objectively;
8) Any other reason for which the individual believes he or she has a conflicting interest with the research;

9) Institutional employees responsible for human research grant or contract administration may not serve as IRB members.

PROCEDURES:

For submissions reviewed at a convened meeting (includes new studies, modifications, continuing review applications, and reports of potential non-compliance and unanticipated problems):

The IRB meeting facilitator will compare the list of members expected to attend the meeting to which the submission is assigned with the study personnel listed in the electronic submission system. If a conflict is found, the facilitator will (1) note the conflict in their facilitator materials, and (2) ensure that the conflicted member is not assigned as a reviewer for the submission.

The IRB Chair presiding over the meeting shall remind the members to disclose any conflicts of interest prior to discussion of the relevant item, and to recuse themselves.

IRB members (or consultants), IRB Director, IRB Assistant Director, or IRB Patient Subject Advocate must review the list of projects for an upcoming meeting with the conflicts issue in mind and should disclose a conflicting interest as soon as possible to the IRB Chair, meeting facilitator, or Director. An IRB member, Consultant, IRB Director, IRB staff member, or IRB Patient Subject Advocate with a conflicting interest in a project will not accept that project for review, and the item will be reassigned to another IRB reviewer. If the only attending non-scientist member has a conflicting interest, the meeting facilitator will reassign the project to another panel for review.

If an IRB member (or consultant), IRB Director, IRB staff member, or IRB Patient Subject Advocate recognizes a conflicting interest in a project at the IRB meeting, the individual must inform the IRB Chair of the conflicting interest and leave the room during the discussion of and vote on the project.

An IRB Member may abstain from the review, deliberation, and voting at any time when he/she has any other concerns that in his or her own judgment warrant abstaining from review, deliberation, and voting on a project.

If other IRB members need to request information about the project from the IRB member (or consultant), IRB Director, IRB staff member, or IRB Patient Subject Advocate with the conflicting interest, the conflicted person may remain in the room during the presentation of the project. The conflicted person must then leave the room during the IRB’s discussion and vote.

IRB staff will record in the minutes a recusal of an IRB member based on a conflicting interest. The IRB member will not be counted as part of the quorum for the project. (Should the quorum fail, the IRB may not take further action or vote on the project.)
For submissions undergoing expedited or exempt review (includes new studies, modifications, continuing review applications, and reports of potential non-compliance and unanticipated problems)

The IRB analyst processing the submission reviews the list of study personnel in the electronic submission system and does not assign the submission to a designated reviewer who is clearly conflicted. If a designated reviewer is assigned a submission for review and is conflicted, the reviewer will not complete the review, will notify the analyst, and the analyst will reassign the submission to an unconflicted reviewer.
37 INDEPENDENCE OF EMORY IRB WITH RESPECT TO INSTITUTIONAL AND INVESTIGATOR INFLUENCE

POLICY

In order to fulfill its ethical obligations to protect human subjects in research, the Emory IRB must exercise autonomy and judiciousness in its thinking and decision-making. The Emory IRB should treat all human subjects with the same level of respect across protocol submissions, and must refrain from showing bias toward or against any investigators based on factors such as scoring by funding agencies or the relative power and influence amongst investigators submitting protocols for review.

A request by an investigator to hasten the review of a submission is not presumed to be an attempt at undue influence.

Any offers of special monetary incentives, favors in kind, or other rewards by investigators to IRB members or staff for the guaranteed approval of a submission is presumed to be an attempt at undue influence and must be reported to the appropriate IRB or institutional officials.

PROCEDURES FOR ASSESSING UNDUE INFLUENCE

The Emory IRB shall first determine whether an inappropriate and unethical inducement was presented by an investigator to an IRB member or staff such as special monetary incentives, favors in kind, or other rewards for the guaranteed approval of a submission.

If the action by the investigator is determined not to presumptively constitute undue influence, the Emory IRB shall then determine whether the action in question is reasonable or justified. The IRB shall take into consideration its own possible responsibility in creating delays in the review process in determining whether the actions of the investigator are reasonable or justified.

The Emory IRB shall make all attempts not to obstruct the conduct of ethical research involving human subjects at Emory, and shall consider requests from investigators to put a submission on the agenda of a certain scheduled IRB meeting on a case-by-case basis.

To evaluate such requests, the IRB Director (or designee such as the Chair or a Vice Chair) shall consider the interests of the prospective human subjects for the submission at issue, the size of the agenda with respect to meeting time, the availability of appropriately qualified reviewers, and whether the request constitutes undue influence or a reasonable and justifiable request. The IRB Director (or designee) will ensure that proper pre-review is conducted and on the merits of the pre-review, shall not agree to place the submission on the requested agenda unless the submission is deemed reasonably likely not to be deferred.

PROCEDURES FOR REPORTING UNDUE INFLUENCE

Emory IRB staff, who may be vulnerable to attempts by investigators to unduly influence their prioritization of assignments or the actions of IRB members, should report any such attempts
promptly to the IRB Director. In cases where the IRB Director, Chair, or Vice Chair is perceived as acting as an agent of an investigator attempting to unduly influence IRB staff or members, such attempts should be reported to the IO. The Director and/or the IO, either singly or in consultation with each other, will investigate the situation carefully and make reasonable and good faith efforts to protect the autonomy of the IRB members and staff in fulfilling their responsibilities and to mitigate any damage caused by attempts at undue influence. The person(s) investigating and managing allegations of undue influence may consult other qualified officials, such as the Director of Research Compliance.

In addition, Emory employees and students may call the confidential, vendor-serviced Trustline to discuss or report concerns about inappropriate or unethical conduct of the IRB.

AVAMC-appointed IRB members may directly contact the AVAMC Facility Director if they experience undue influence or if they have concerns about the IRB.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR 46.107(e)  
21 CFR 56.107(e)  
38 CFR 16.107(e)
38 POSSIBLE IRB ACTIONS ON HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH PROTOCOLS

POLICY:

In order to provide initial and/or continuing review to all nonexempt Human Subjects Research protocols that come before it, the Emory IRB, depending on the type of protocol involved, shall provide Full Committee Review (at a convened meeting with proper quorum) or Expedited Review.

For Full Committee Review the IRB shall take one of the following actions by a separate vote for each protocol (i.e., may not batch protocols together under a “block vote”): Approval; Approval Pending Modifications (i.e., specific minor revisions); Deferral; Disapproval; or Tabled. For studies reviewed by the Full Committee, substantive changes or requirements, requests for more information for IRB consideration, and other issues related to the criteria for approval require review and approval by the convened IRB and thus the submissions must be Deferred or Tabled. Deferred and Tabled studies must return to full board for review, unless changes are made such that the study meets the criteria for expedited review.

For Expedited Review, since voting does not take place, the IRB is authorized to Approve, but may not disapprove human subjects research. During the review period, if the reviewer(s) conducting the analysis require revisions in order to approve, the IRB may consider this a state of Expedited Approval Pending, but this term has no bearing on the effective date of the final approval. If the preliminary review leads to sufficient doubt as to the potential for eventual approval, the IRB must refer the application to Full Committee Review unless the PI withdraws the application, at his or her discretion. Only at Full Committee Review may the IRB disapprove a protocol.

The IRB shall determine the period for which Continuing Review shall be required based on the risk level, risk-benefit ratio, etc.; provided, however, that every protocol shall receive Continuing Review from the IRB not less than once per year. No non-Exempt Human Subjects Research activities may be performed on any protocol that does not have current IRB approval.

PROCEDURES:

Actions for nonexempt Human Subjects Research Protocols: The Emory IRB may take any of the following actions specified in the following table with regard to a protocol that is presented to the Emory IRB for initial or continuing review.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTION</th>
<th>ACTION DATE</th>
<th>ACTIVATION OF APPROVAL DATE</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>TAKEN BY (Expedited Review)</th>
<th>TAKEN BY (Full Committee Review)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approval</td>
<td>Full Committee: Date of meeting</td>
<td>Full Committee: Date of meeting or*</td>
<td>Action taken if Research protocol can be approved AS IS without the Chair, Vice Chair or qualified member</td>
<td>Majority of voting IRB members present if</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approval Pending Modification (specific minor revisions)</td>
<td>Full Committee: Date of meeting</td>
<td>Full Committee: Date of meeting as to the vote; as to activation of the approval upon receipt and acceptance of responsive materials, approval activates as of the date the reviewer decides the response is adequate (see paragraph directly below re: final approval of protocols granted approval pending modifications).</td>
<td>Action taken by full Committee if Research protocol requires only specific minor revisions (i.e., specified by the IRB in notice to PI), with activation of approval to follow upon acceptance of responses via Expedited Review.</td>
<td>In follow up to meeting, PI’s responsive material is reviewed on Expedited basis it confirms if it satisfies the Committee’s requests. If yes, activation of protocol may begin; if no, refer to Full Committee.</td>
<td>Quorum is present. Majority of voting IRB members present if Quorum is present. In follow up to meeting, If PI’s responsive material does not satisfy the Committee’s requests, refer back to Full Committee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deferral</td>
<td>Full Committee Review: Date of meeting at which vote takes place.</td>
<td>N/A (study must return to full board for review where it may be disapproved, deferred again, approved, or approved pending modifications; see those other categories in this table)</td>
<td>Action taken if substantive and complex additional information is needed to assess that required criteria for approval are met per 45 CFR 46.111/21 CFR 56.11</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Majority of voting members if quorum is present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disapproval</td>
<td>Date of Full Committee meeting</td>
<td>ONLY Full Committee Review: Research protocol cannot begin and cannot be resubmitted for review.</td>
<td>Action taken if Research protocol cannot be approved because required criteria per 45 CFR 46.111/21 CFR 56.11 are not met</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Majority of voting IRB members if quorum is present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tabled</td>
<td>Full Committee Review: Date of</td>
<td>N/A (study must return to full board for review</td>
<td>Action taken if IRB Committee</td>
<td>N/A.</td>
<td>Majority of voting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
meeting at which vote takes place.

where it may be disapproved, deferred, approved, or approved pending modifications; see those other categories in this table

postpones discussion and vote on a Research protocol until another meeting (e.g., due to loss of Quorum).

members present (administrative action to remove protocol from agenda)

**Final Approval for Research Protocols that are Granted Approval Pending:** When a Research protocol is granted Approval Pending, it means that the PI must provide the IRB Committee with documentation that he/she has made any specific minor revisions requested by the IRB Committee. The PI may not begin any human subjects research activities under the protocol until the IRB Chair/Vice Chair or a designated reviewer accepts the responsive material as satisfying the IRB’s requests. The date on which the information/changes are accepted is the approval activation date (sometimes called the “final approval” or “effective” date). The Emory IRB shall send a written notice that sets forth the effective date and dates of the approval period.

**Special Rule for Protocols Granted Approval Pending by the Full Committee:** It is important to remember that per OHRP Guidance, for protocols granted Approval Pending, the expiration date for the Research protocol is calculated based on the date that Approval Pending was granted and NOT on the final activation date. (Not applicable to Expedited Review.)

**Determination of Risk:** At the time of initial and continuing review, the IRB will make a determination regarding the risks associated with the Research. The risk categories to be used are Minimal Risk or Greater than Minimal Risk. The definition of Minimal Risk is set forth in the HHS and FDA Regulations. The meeting minutes will reflect the IRB Committee determination regarding risk levels and the IRB records will document the risk determination for studies approved by Expedited Review.

**Determination of Approval Period:** At the time of Initial Review and at Continuing Review each protocol is assigned an expiration date. For protocols reviewed by Full Committee Review, this expiration date will be the earlier of (a) one year from the date of the IRB Committee meeting at which the Approved or Approval Pending action was taken; or (b) any shorter period prescribed by the IRB Committee.

For Research protocols reviewed by Expedited Review, the expiration date will be the earlier of (a) one year from the date on which the reviewer granted Approval; or (b) any shorter period prescribed by the reviewer.

Generally, Research that meets any of the following criteria will require review more often than annually, depending on other factors listed below:

Carries significant risk of harm to Research subjects (e.g., death, permanent or long lasting disability or morbidity, severe toxicity) without the possibility of direct benefit to the subjects;
Carries significant risk of harm and involves especially Vulnerable Populations likely to be subject to undue influence or coercion (e.g., institutionalized psychiatric patients, incarcerated minors or pregnant women);

or

Having a history of Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance on the part of the PI.

The IRB shall also consider the following factors when determining which studies require review more frequently than once a year:

The likely medical condition of the proposed subjects;

The overall qualifications of the PI and other members of the Research team;

The specific experience of the PI and other members of the Research term in conducting similar Research;

The nature and frequency of adverse events observed in similar Research at this and other institutions

The novelty of the Research and the likelihood of unanticipated events;

The expected rate of subject accrual

Any other factors that the IRB deems relevant.

In specifying an approval period of less than annually, the IRB may define the period with either a time interval or a maximum number of subjects either studied or enrolled. If a maximum number of subjects studied or enrolled is used to define the approval period, it is understood that the approval period in no case can exceed one year and that the number of subjects studied or enrolled determine the approval period only when the number of subjects is studied or enrolled in less than one year. The meeting minutes will reflect the approval period specified.

Independent Verification Regarding Material Changes: Protecting the rights and welfare of Human Subjects sometimes requires that the IRB verify independently, using sources other than the PI, information about various aspects of the study including, but not limited to, adverse event reporting information in the scientific literature, reports of drug toxicity, drug approval status, eligibility, and informed consent procedures, and verification that no material changes occurred during the IRB-designated approval period.

Criteria Employed in Determining When Verification is Required: The IRB will determine the need for verification from outside sources on a case-by-case basis using criteria including, but not limited to, the following:

Information provided in a Continuing Review report or by other credible sources suggesting that material changes have occurred without IRB;
The protocol is one which is being conducted by a PI who has previously failed to comply with federal regulations and/or the requirements or determination for the IRB;

Probability and magnitude of anticipated risks to subjects;

Likely medical condition or vulnerable condition of the proposed subjects;

Probable nature and frequency of changes that may ordinarily be expected in the type of Research proposed.

In addition, the IRB may randomly select protocols for audit and verification.

**Timing of Verification:** In making determinations about independent verification, the IRB may prospectively require that such verification take place at predetermined intervals during the approval period; may retrospectively require such verification at the time of Continuing Review; or may require such verification at any time during the approval period in the light of new information.

**Continuing Review:** Per HHS, FDA and VA Regulations, each Research protocol that is reviewed by the Emory IRB must receive Continuing Review and Approval from the Emory IRB. The PI must submit a protocol to the IRB Committee for Continuing Review sufficiently in advance of the protocol’s expiration date to permit review and Approval by the IRB Committee.

IRB Approval is considered to have lapsed at midnight on the expiration date of the Approval.

The P&P entitled Continuing Review sets forth more information.

**Modifications (Amendments):** The IRB may review modifications to protocols by Full Committee Review or Expedited Review in accordance with the procedures set forth in the P&Ps entitled Expedited Review and entitled Full Committee Review respectively. As appropriate, the IRB Committee or reviewer may take any of the actions described in this chapter with regard to modifications.

The date on which a modification is considered approved and can be implemented is the date of activation of Approval. In the case of modifications granted Pending Approval, the date of Approval is the date of the decision to accept responsive material as adequate to address the IRB Committee’s requests.

The IRB shall state the approval period in a written notice to the PI.

**Approval in Principle or Approval of Programs and Projects Lacking Specific Human Subjects Research Plans:** There are two circumstances in which the IRB may grant approval required by a sponsoring agency without having reviewed all of the study procedures and consent documents. One is if the study procedures are to be developed during the course of the Research, but Human Subjects approval is required by the sponsoring agency. The other is if the involvement of Human Subjects depends on the outcomes of work with animal subjects. The IRB may then grant Approval in Principle without having reviewed the as yet undeveloped recruitment,
consent and intervention materials. However, if the proposal is funded, the PI must submit such materials for approval at least 60 days before recruiting Human Subjects into the study or into any pilot studies or pre-tests Approval in Principle is granted to satisfy sponsoring agency requirements or to allow investigators to have access to funding to begin aspects of the project that do not involve Human Subjects.

Reporting of IRB Actions to PIs: All IRB actions are communicated to the PI in writing within 10 working days of IRB action via a letter, which may be sent electronically and/or by interoffice mail, regular mail, or express mail. The signature of the appropriate IRB Chair, Vice Chair, member or staff may be recorded in the letter digitally or manually. Staff can sign letters which report on the actions of the IRB. The IRB staff will not sign on behalf of any Chair/Vice Chair except with express written permission. No signature stamps may be used. The IRB may also send a certification form conforming to the DHHS standards along with the letter. In absence of a certification form per se, the letter notice of Committee action shall be presumed to provide required certification. Copies of all notices, reports and other correspondence to and from Investigators shall be kept in the IRB records. The following information shall be contained in the IRB’s written reports of actions:

**Notices of Approval by Full Committee Review or Expedited Review:** The written notice sent by the Emory IRB to a PI stating that Approval has been granted to the PI’s protocol shall contain the following information:

- Date of IRB Committee meeting at which Approval was granted and the expiration date of the approval period.
- Copy of the approved consent documents showing the affixed approval with the dates of the approval.

**Notices Regarding Protocols Granted Approval Pending by Full Committee Review:** The written notice sent by the Emory IRB to a PI stating that Approval Pending has been granted to the PI’s protocol shall contain the following information:

- Description of the specific minor revisions to be made by PI, including replacement language.
- Date of IRB Committee meeting at which Approval Pending was granted.
- Date by which responsive materials must be submitted to the Emory IRB for review and potential acceptance.
- Notice that NO HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH ACTIVITY may begin under protocol until PI receives notice of activation of final Approval.

**Notices Regarding Protocols Granted Deferral by Full Committee Review:** The written notice sent by the Emory IRB to a PI stating that Deferral has been granted to the PI’s protocol shall contain the following information:

- Description of modifications or additional information or material required to
facilitate review, to be submitted by the PI;

Date by which information and modifications must be submitted to Emory IRB for referral to another Full Committee meeting.

Notice that NO HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH ACTIVITY may begin under protocol until PI receives notice of final Approval.

**Notices Regarding Protocols Granted Disapproval by Full Committee Review:** The written notice sent by the Emory IRB to a PI stating that Disapproval has been granted to the PI’s protocol shall contain the following information:

Description of the reasons for the Disapproval.

Invitation to the PI to respond in writing or in person to the Full Committee.

Any response from the PI is reviewed by the IRB panel that made the determination of Disapproval. When necessary, the IRB will seek consultation from qualified experts, other IRBs, the Office of Human Research Protections (OHRP) or the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Every attempt will be made to resolve the identified problem(s). The IRB, however, retains final authority over whether or not a proposal can be approved; institutional officials may not approve research if it has not been first approved by the IRB (45 CFR46.112; 21 CFR 56.112)).

**Notices Regarding Suspension or Termination of Approval by the IRB:** The written notice sent by the Emory IRB to a PI stating that its approval of a protocol has been Suspended or Terminated shall contain the following information:

Basis for the Suspension or Termination.

Notice that NO HUMAN SUBJECTS RESEARCH ACTIVITY may take place under the protocol until the IRB has lifted the Suspension.

An explanation that if it would adversely affect the health and safety of individual human subjects to discontinue research interventions or follow up, the PI should act in the best interests of the subject and notify the IRB of the individual subject identification numbers and the circumstances of continuing the interventions or follow up. The data generated under such circumstances may not be used for research purposes, absent a decision by the Full Committee.

Description of action that the IRB will take in follow-up to Suspension or Termination, along with any action required on the part of the PI.

With respect to a Termination, an explanation that approval cannot be reactivated but that the PI may consult with the IRB Chair or Vice Chair about whether he or she may resubmit the protocol as a new submission in the future.
**Reporting of IRB Actions to Institution:** The IRB reports its findings and actions to the institution in the form of its minutes which are stored permanently and securely in the IRB office and available upon request. The IRB may also distribute copies of certifications and/or notice letters to other institutional offices (such as the Office of Sponsored Programs). The IRB may also make its findings and actions available to the other institutional offices by arranging for access to the IRB database.

**Reporting of IRB Actions to AVAMC:** The IRB shall notify in writing the PI on any AVAMC Research, as well as the RDC, of its decision to grant Approval or Disapproval to a proposed Research activity, or of revisions required to secure IRB Approval. An IRB approved Research activity may be disapproved by the AVAMC RDC, the Director of the AVAMC, or the VA Office of Research and Development. If a Research activity is Disapproved by the IRB, the decision cannot be overruled by the RDC or any higher authority. The RDC and higher authority within the AVAMC may strengthen requirements and/or conditions or add other modifications to secure RDC approval or approval by a higher authority. Previously approved Research proposals and/or consent forms must be re-approved by the IRB before initiating any changes or modification.

**Reporting of IRB Actions to the Grady Research Oversight Committee (GROC):** Research conducted in the Grady Health System must also be approved by the Grady Research Oversight Committee before research activities begin. The PI is responsible for submitting a GROC application form along with a copy of the IRB approval letter and other supporting documents. If a Research activity is Disapproved by the IRB, the decision cannot be overruled by the GROC or any higher authority. The GROC and higher authority within the Grady Health System may strengthen requirements and/or conditions or add modifications to secure GROC approval or approval by a higher authority. Previously approved Research proposals and/or consent forms must be re-approved by the IRB before initiating any changes or modification.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR § 46.108
21 CFR Part 50
VHA Handbook 1200.05
CONTINUING REVIEW

POLICY:

The Emory IRB will conduct a **Continuing Review** of on-going Research at intervals that are appropriate to the level of risk for each Research protocol, but not less than once per year. **Continuing Review** shall occur for as long as the Research remains active for long-term follow-up of participants, even when the Research is permanently closed to the enrollment of new participants and all participants have completed all Research-related interventions. **Continuing Review** must occur even when the remaining Research activities are limited to the analysis of private identifiable information.

The Emory IRB uses the required regulatory criteria for approval for continuing review of research (see the P&P entitled **Criteria for Emory IRB Approval of Research**). Per FDA and OHRP guidance, when conducting continuing review, the IRB should start with the working presumption that the research, as previously approved, does satisfy all of the above criteria (provided, however, that the foregoing presumption may not apply if the IRB determines that it’s initial approval was granted based on incorrect information or the IRB determines that the initial review was flawed). The IRB makes its continuing review determination by considering whether any new information is available that would affect the IRB’s prior finding that the research meets the federal regulatory criteria for approval.

PROCEDURES:

**Determination of Approval Period**: The IRB shall make a determination of the approval period, as well as a determination of the need for additional supervision or oversight on a protocol-by-protocol basis, taking into consideration factors such as the nature of the protocol; nature of risks involved; past history of the investigator; number of participants; and health and background of participants.

**Indication of Approval Period**: For each initial or continuing Approval, the Emory IRB will indicate an approval period with an Approval expiration date specified. IRB Approval is considered to have lapsed at midnight on the expiration date of the Approval. The Approval date and Approval expiration date are clearly noted on all IRB certifications sent to the PI, and the PI must strictly adhere to these dates. Review of a change in a protocol ordinarily does not alter the date by which continuing review must occur.

**No Grace Periods**: Investigators must allow sufficient time for development and review of renewal submissions. The regulations make no provision for any grace period extending the conduct of Research beyond the expiration date of IRB Approval. Therefore **Continuing Review** and re-Approval of Research must occur by midnight of the date when the IRB Approval expires to avoid a lapse in approval. If the IRB performs **Continuing Review** within 30 days before the IRB approval period expires, the IRB may retain the anniversary data as the date by which the **Continuing Review** must occur.

**Continuing Review Process**: 
Renewal Notices: To assist PIs, the IRB office staff will send out renewal notices to PIs 60 days in advance of the expiration date. Nevertheless, it is the PI’s responsibility to ensure that the Continuing Review of on-going Research is approved prior to the expiration date, whether or not the PI receives a renewal notice. By federal regulation, no extension to that date can be granted.

Materials Submitted for Continuing Review: PIs must submit the following materials to the Emory IRB for Continuing Review of their protocols: (a) Continuing Review application; (b) current consent document(s) (if applicable); (c) any newly proposed consent document(s) (if applicable); and any other relevant materials.

Per OHRP and FDA, when conducting continuing review of the research the IRB must be provided with a status report on the progress of the research since the last IRB review, which includes the following information:

- The number of participants enrolled
- A summary of adverse events and any unanticipated problems involving risks to participants
- The number of participants that have withdrawn including the reasons
- A summary of any complaints about the research
- A summary of any recent literature, interim findings, and modifications to the research since the last review, including any relevant multicenter trial reports
- The PI’s revised risk/benefit assessment based on the existing study results (if applicable)
- Any other relevant information, especially information about risks associated with the research
- A copy of the current informed consent document

(A summary of amendments since the last IRB review is available within the eIRB system, thus does not need to be provided by the PI)

Conduct of Continuing Review -- Full Committee Review: In conducting Continuing Review of Research that is not eligible for Expedited Review, all IRB members are provided with and shall review all of the materials submitted by the PI for Continuing Review including the current protocol. Primary and secondary reviewers shall be appointed and shall review in depth the complete current protocol and proposed amendments for the current approval period. Primary and secondary reviewers shall lead the IRB through the completion of the regulatory criteria for approval specified in the IRB Continuing Review checklist.

| Primary reviewers are expected to review these materials in depth in advance of the IRB | All IRB members are expected to review these materials in advance of the meeting in enough time. |
Continuing Review

- The Initial IRB Application form (with all information in the above Study Outline) updated with any changes
- The Continuing Review IRB Application form
- The current consent documents.
- Any newly proposed consent documents.
- The complete protocol including any protocol modifications previously approved by the IRB.

- The Initial IRB Application form (with all information in the above Study Outline) updated with any changes
- The Continuing Review IRB Application form
- The current consent documents.
- Any newly proposed consent documents.

Conduct of Continuing Review – Expedited Review: In the case of Continuing Review conducted by Expedited Review, reviewers shall be provided with the same materials that the IRB members would have received for Full Committee Review, and they may request the IRB office staff to provide them with any additional related materials. The reviewer shall complete the IRB Continuing Review checklist to determine whether the protocol meets the criteria allowing Continuing Review via the Expedited Review procedure, and if so, whether the protocol continues to meet regulatory criteria for approval.

Generally, if Research did not qualify for Expedited Review at the time of initial review, it will not qualify for Expedited Review at the time of continuing review, except in limited circumstances described in Expedited Review Categories 8 and 9 in the P&P entitled Expedited Review. It also is possible that Research that previously qualified for Expedited Review may have changed or will change such that Expedited Review would no longer be permitted for Continuing Review.

Lapse in Approval: If the IRB has not reviewed and approved a Research protocol by the end of the approval period specified by the IRB, all Research activities must stop, including recruitment (e.g., media advertisements must be stopped); enrollment of new subjects; consent; interventions; interactions, data collection, and data analysis with identifiable information unless the IRB finds that it is in the best interests of individual subjects to continue participating in the Research interventions or interactions. In addition, if the IRB has approved the Research protocol with contingencies, but those contingencies have not been satisfactorily addressed by the end of the prior approval period, then all Research activities must likewise stop, unless the convened IRB determined that certain activities not affected by the contingencies could proceed. Specifically, the following steps will be taken in the case of a lapse in Continuing Review:

A PI’s failure to submit Continuing Review information on time may be considered to be Non-Compliance and handled in accordance with the P&P entitled Handling of Allegations of Non-Compliance – General Procedures.

The continuation of Research after expiration of IRB Approval is a violation of the HHS, FDA and VA Regulations and generally will be considered to be Serious
Non-Compliance and handled in accordance with the P&P entitled Handling of Allegations of Non-Compliance – General Procedures

Written notice of expiration will be sent to the PI by the last date of the approval period and the PI will be advised that all Research activities must stop even if the PI submitted Continuing Review information before the expiration date.

The PI should immediately provide the IRB with a summary regarding subjects who could be harmed by the cessation of study procedures, with rationale. If possible, this list should be prepared and delivered prior to the lapse. An IRB Chair with appropriate expertise shall review the list and determine which subjects, if any, may continue and what procedures may be performed because stopping those Research procedures could cause harm. In the case of any Research that is stopped, the IRB must review and re-approve the Research prior to its re-initiation. This continuing review shall further include a determination as to what and how data collected during the lapse may be used. If the study is FDA regulated, then the Board or Designated Reviewer conducting the continuing review (and the AVAMC Chief of Staff in the case of AVAMC Research) must follow FDA requirements set for in 21 CFR Section 56.108(b)(3) in making this decision.

For AVAMC Research, if Continuing Review does not occur within the timeframe set by the IRB, then the AVAMC Research is automatically stopped and the Emory IRB shall promptly notify the PI of the lapse in approval. For Research for which the approval has lapsed, enrollment for new subjects cannot occur, and continuation of Research interventions or interactions for already enrolled subjects should only continue when the IRB, in consultation with the AVAMC Chief of Staff, finds that it is in the best interests of the individual subjects to do so.

Review of Consent Documents: For continuing review of research the IRB determines that the current consent document is still accurate and complete. Review of currently approved or newly proposed consent documents must occur during the scheduled Continuing Review of Research by the IRB. Any significant new findings that arise from the continuing review process and that may relate to a subject’s willingness to participate (or continue to participate) in the study must be reflected in the most current consent document and communicated to all subjects (i.e. prospective new subjects and those already enrolled in the study). In addition, informed consent documents should be reviewed whenever new information becomes available that would require modification of information in the informed consent documents.

Applicable Regulations:
45 CFR Part 46, including 45 CFR § 46.108
21 CFR Part 50
21 CFR § 56.108
45 CFR § 16.108
40 PROTOCOL MODIFICATIONS (AMENDMENTS)

POLICY:

PIs may seek to modify or amend their approved protocols. PIs must seek and obtain IRB Approval before making any changes in approved Research, even though the modifications are planned for a period for which IRB Approval has already been given, unless the modification is necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard to subjects, in which case the IRB must be notified at once of the modification. The Emory IRB shall review proposed modifications to protocols by either Expedited Review or Full Committee Review as appropriate, in accordance with applicable regulations and policies.

PROCEDURES:

Request for Approval of a Modification: PIs must submit documentation to request approval of proposed changes in the protocol, including, but not limited to: form, revised investigator’s protocol or Sponsor’s protocol, revised approved consent/parental permission/assent documents, or other documentation that would be provided to subjects that relates to their willingness to continue to participate in the study, revised or additional recruitment materials, or any other relevant documents.

IRB Office staff will make an initial determination as to whether the proposed modification is minor (see below) and may be approved via Expedited Review, or whether the modification requires Full Committee Review. The reviewer using the Expedited Review procedure has the ultimate responsibility to determine whether the proposed modification can be reviewed via Expedited Review, or if not, referred for Full Committee Review.

Minor Changes in General

Minor Change: A minor change is one which, in the judgment of the IRB Reviewer, makes no substantial alteration in (i) the level of risks to subjects; (ii) the Research design or methodology (e.g., an addition of a procedure which would not increase risk to subjects); (iii) the number of subjects enrolled in the Research (depending on the risk level of the study and other factors; see specific examples below); (iv) the qualifications of the Research team; or (v) the facilities available to support safe conduct of the Research.

A minor change does NOT include the addition of any procedure that involves more than minimal risk. A minor change may include the addition of any procedure that poses minimal risk and falls into categories (1)-(7) of expeditable research.

Examples of minor changes are:

1. Changes in contact names, addresses, telephone numbers, advisor, adding a researcher, etc.
2. Scientific and/or therapeutic changes that leave the research population at the same or lower risk than risk(s) already approved; updates to risk information that indicate that subjects are at same or lower risk than previously known.

3. Changes in the consent form that reflect changes in scientific/therapeutic changes noted above

4. Adding new procedures that, independent of the rest of the study, are minimal risk and would qualify for one or more of the categories of expirable research as defined in the federal regulations

5. Changing the title of the protocol

6. Slightly rephrasing questions in a survey/interview/focus group instrument

7. Adding or deleting a question in a questionnaire that is similar to those approved and/or does not alter the scope of approved data collection consistent with the approved study aims

8. Decreases in sample size that do not affect the risk-benefit ratio

9. Increasing the sample size (a) by 25% or less than the currently approved number, or by five or fewer individuals above the currently approved sample size, whichever is larger, on more-than-minimal-risk studies; or (b) any size increase in sample size when using the same type of population indicated in the original protocol on studies that are no more than minimal risk; or (c) to accommodate the definition of “enrolled” to include all subjects who signed a consent form, not merely those who completed screening and began the study intervention; or (d) increasing sample size by any amount at Emory sites when change does not reflect an overall study-wide increase in sample size

Minor Administrative Changes: Some minor administrative changes may be approved by qualified IRB staff who do not serve as Designated Reviewers (a larger scope of modifications can be approved by IRB staff who are also Designated Reviewers and IRB Members; this scope is documented in a separate Standard Operating Procedure). These changes are exclusively limited to the following:

1. Change of contact information

2. Addition or deletion of junior level personnel (not co-investigator, principal investigators)

3. Addition of co-investigator

4. Addition or removal of co-investigator for minimal risk studies

5. Title change if not accompanied by a change in the study
6. Corrections of typographical errors

7. Reformattedting of unchanged text

8. Errors in completion of the IRB application, as confirmed with study staff as appropriate

9. Removal of study sites that were never activated

10. Change of funding status from “pending” to “approved” (addition of grant application should be sent to Designated Reviewer)

11. Other changes that involve only logistical or administrative aspects of the study (e.g., change of monitor), after consultation with IRB staff Designated Reviewer(s).

**Non-minor Changes in General**

**Definition:** For studies that undergo full board review, any change that is not minor or that is not limited to the addition of procedures that qualify for expedited review needs to go to a convened meeting for review. Non-minor changes to a study that is eligible for expedited review must be assessed on their merits to determine if the changes require full board review or may be reviewed on an expedited basis. Non-minor changes that increase the risk level above minimal require full board review.

**Examples of non-Minor Changes are:**

1. Adding a subject population different from those already approved

2. Adding questions to a questionnaire that open new avenues of inquiry than those previously approved or create a new risk of stigmatization if confidentiality were breached

3. Reconsenting of subjects

4. Changing the location of the research from that which has already been approved, if that change has a potential impact on the ability to safely conduct the study or if location adds new local context considerations

5. Adding a new site whose qualifications or facilities have not been previously evaluated by the IRB

6. Substantively changing the design of a clinical trial protocol.

7. Changing the way subjects are compensated for participation in research - such as increasing the amount, changing from a lottery to cash, etc.

**Expedited Review of Protocol Modifications:** The IRB may use **Expedited Review** procedures to review minor changes in on-going previously approved Research during the period for which...
approval is authorized. *Expedited Review* may be carried out by the IRB *Chair* or *Vice Chairs*. The reviewer will use the Expedited Criteria Checklist to determine whether the modifications meet the criteria for use of an *Expedited Review* procedure, and if so, whether the *Research* with the proposed modifications meets the regulatory criteria for approval. Minor modifications that involve more than minimal risk, or do not fall into categories for which expedited review is permissible, may not undergo expedited review and must be reviewed by the convened IRB.

**Full Committee Review of Protocol Modifications:** When a proposed change in a *Research* protocol is not minor, then the IRB must review and approve the proposed modification at a convened meeting before the modification can be implemented. The only exception is a modification necessary to eliminate apparent immediate hazards to the *Research* subjects. In such a case, the IRB should be promptly (no longer than within 30 days) informed of the modification following its implementation and should review each modification to determine if it is consistent with ensuring the subjects’ continued safety and welfare.

For modifications that undergo *Full Committee Review*, all IRB members (including alternates) are provided with and shall review the complete current approved protocol and all modified documents in depth, prior to the convened meeting. A primary and secondary reviewer shall be assigned. The primary reviewer shall present an overview of the modification at the IRB Committee meeting and lead the IRB through the completion of the regulatory criteria for approval. When the IRB reviews modifications to previously approved *Research*, the IRB considers whether information about those modifications might relate to participants’ willingness to continue to take part in the *Research*, and if so, whether to provide that information to participants.

**Applicable Regulations:**

See specific regulatory references as they appear in the P&Ps entitled *Expedited Review* and *Full Committee Review*.)
41 CLOSURE OF PROTOCOLS

POLICY:

The completion or closure of a study by a PI is a change in activity that must be reported to the Emory IRB at the time that it occurs. The IRB may administratively close a study in appropriate circumstances (e.g., investigator leaves institution).

PROCEDURES:

Submission of Closure Information: PIs should submit information that he or she has completed or closed a protocol at the time that closure or completion occurs. Closure/completion information should be submitted using the appropriate form if a paper study. If the study was submitted via e-Research, PIs should follow the specific instructions provided in e-Research.

Closure Reporting for Sponsors (including Emory faculty Sponsors or Sponsor-Investigators) of device studies: In the case of a significant risk device, the Sponsor or Sponsor-Investigator shall notify FDA within 30 working days of the completion or termination of the investigation and shall submit a final report to FDA and all reviewing the IRB’s and participating investigators within 6 months after completion or termination. In the case of a device that is not a significant risk device, the Sponsor or Sponsor-Investigator shall submit a final report to all reviewing IRB’s within 6 months after termination or completion. [21 CFR 812.150]

Review of Closure Information: Protocol Analysts will review the closure information for completeness and assign a closure date. If the Protocol Analyst is unable to make the determination as to whether the study can be closed out, he/she will consult with a senior staff member or any IRB member.

Premature Completion: The Researchers shall report, and explain, to the IRB any premature completion or closure of a study.


42 CRITERIA FOR EMORY IRB APPROVAL OF RESEARCH

POLICY:

In order for the Emory IRB to approve non-Exempt Human Subjects Research, it must determine that: (a) risks to subjects are minimized; (b) there is an appropriate risk- benefit ratio; (c) the selection of subjects is equitable; (d) appropriate procedures are followed for obtaining and documenting informed consent or waiving or altering informed consent documentation or procedures; (e) the Research plan has adequate provision for monitoring the data collected in order to ensure subject safety; (f) there are adequate provisions to protect subject privacy and data confidentiality; and (g) additional safeguards are included to protect the rights and welfare of any Vulnerable Populations involved in the Research.

PROCEDURES:

Procedure to be Followed in Evaluating Research Protocols: For each Research protocol that it evaluates, the Emory IRB shall perform the following analysis: (a) identify the risks associated with the Research, as distinguished from the risks of therapies the subject would receive even if not participating in the Research; (b) determine whether the risks are minimized to the extent possible; (c) determine that the study employs sound Research design; (d) identify the probable benefits, if any, to be derived from the Research; (e) determine whether the risks are reasonable in relation to the benefits, if any, to subjects, and to the importance of the knowledge to be gained from the Research; (f) ensure that potential subjects will be provided with an accurate and fair description of the risks or discomforts and the anticipated benefits, if any; of the Research; and (g) determine if there are any subjects from any Vulnerable Populations to be involved in the Research, and if so, ensure that appropriate safeguards are included to protect the rights and welfare of these subjects.

The Emory IRB includes in its review of human subjects research an assessment of whether plans for scientific, clinical (including medical and psychological), technical and other necessary personnel, equipment, time, and services are appropriate and adequate to maximize the safety of human subjects, both during and after participation in a research study. The IRB also identifies potential issues enrolling an adequate number of subjects to achieve the study’s goals.

The Emory IRB also ensures that Departmental approval is in place before it will review a protocol, and that other appropriate, ancillary committee approvals are complete before granting final approval for the initiation of human subjects research. (Ancillary committee approvals may include, for example, radiation, biosafety, and environmental safety committee approvals.)

Criteria that the IRB Must Consider in its Review of Protocols: In reviewing Research protocols for approval, the Emory IRB shall consider the following criteria. These criteria apply to both the Full Board and Expedited Review procedure for all reviews of research including initial review, continuing review, and review of a modification to previously approved research when the modification affects a criterion for approval:
Risks to Subjects are Minimized: The Emory IRB shall evaluate whether risks to subjects are minimized by the use in the protocol of procedures that (a) are consistent with sound *Research* design; (b) do not unnecessarily expose subjects to risk; and (c) when appropriate, are procedures that are already being performed on the subjects for diagnostic or treatment purposes.

Sound Research Design/Scientific Merit: The Emory IRB must evaluate whether the protocol employs sound *Research* design that can reasonably be expected to result in an answer to the proposed *Research* question, and that the procedures employed in the *Research* are consistent with such sound design. As part of this evaluation, the IRB requires prior review and approval by the PI’s departmental reviewer or faculty advisor for new studies; these reviews are conducted via the eIRB system where the final approval is required before the IRB can begin processing the submission. For cancer-related research, the Clinical and Translational Review Committee (CTRC) provides scientific review and IRB approval cannot be granted until any CTRC concerns are addressed. The IRB also recognizes that the following other entities provide scientific review during the preparation of a human subjects research protocol and may require changes:

- the sponsoring agency, via the peer review process, for federally-funded research;
- the FDA, for IND or IDE applications, and IRB approval is pending until that feedback is received and addressed by the PI, or until the 30 day period has passed after IND or IDE submission, indicating that the study may proceed.
- the VA Research and Development Committee for VA Research (post-IRB review, with RDC-required changes requiring review by the Emory IRB via modifications submitted in eIRB).

For protocols subject to a DOD Addendum, the Emory IRB shall ensure that scientific review has taken place. The scientific review may be the review provided by the funding agency (including DOD), by an established internal review mechanism in the researcher’s academic unit, or in the form of an ad-hoc review by the researcher’s Chair or Dean or committee of uninvolved faculty. Documentation of the scientific review must be provided to the IRB before IRB review takes place.

Risks to Subjects are Reasonable in Relation to Anticipated Benefits: The Emory IRB shall evaluate whether risks to the subjects posed by participation in the *Research* are justified by the anticipated benefits to the subjects, if any, and the importance of any knowledge that may reasonable be expected to result from the *Research*. In undertaking this evaluation, the Emory IRB shall judge whether either the anticipated benefit to the subjects from participating in the *Research*, or the new knowledge to be gained from the *Research*, justifies asking a person to undertake the risks of participation in the *Research*. In evaluating risks and benefits, the IRB should consider only those risks and benefits that may result from the *Research*, as distinguished from risks and benefits of therapies subjects would receive even if not participating in the *Research*. In addition, the IRB should not consider possible long-range effects of applying knowledge gained in the *Research*. The IRB should disapprove *Research* in which the risks are judged unreasonable in relation to the anticipated benefits.
Selection of Subjects is Equitable: The IRB will review the inclusion/exclusion criteria for the protocol to ensure equitable selection of subjects. In making this assessment the IRB shall take into account the purposes of the Research and the setting in which the Research will be conducted. The IRB shall be particularly cognizant of the special problems of research involving Vulnerable Populations. See the P&P entitled “Recruitment of Subjects” for more on what information is used in this evaluation.

Informed Consent: The IRB will review the informed consent procedures and documentation to ensure that informed consent will be appropriately obtained and documented from each prospective subject or the subject’s legally authorized representative, or alternatively that all criteria are met for the waiver or alteration of informed consent or documentation thereof, as more specifically set forth in the P&Ps entitled Informed Consent, and Research Involving Children – Additional Protections.

Data and Safety Monitoring: The IRB will review and evaluate the Data and Safety Monitoring Plan, if present, for each protocol at the time of Initial and Continuing Review as more specifically set forth in the P&P entitled Data and Safety Monitoring Plans.

Privacy and Confidentiality: The IRB will review the protocol to determine whether adequate procedures are in place to protect the privacy of subjects and to maintain the confidentiality of the data.

Privacy: The IRB shall determine whether the activities in the Research constitute an invasion of privacy by obtaining and evaluating the manner in which Investigators are gaining access to subjects or subjects’ information, as well as assessing the subjects’ expectations of privacy in the Research situation. The IRB also shall ensure that Investigators have appropriate HIPAA Authorization and/or consent to access subjects or their information. In the case of Research that falls within the scope of the HIPAA Regulations, the IRB shall perform the duties of an Institutional Privacy Board, as set forth in the P&P entitled HIPAA).

Confidentiality: The IRB shall ensure that the protocol includes appropriate provisions to protect the data collected from inappropriate disclosure and unauthorized access. The IRB shall ensure that the level of protections in place for data confidentiality are commensurate with the potential harm that could result from inappropriate disclosure.

Vulnerable Populations: The IRB shall review each protocol to determine if the protocol is likely to involve member of a Vulnerable Population, and if so, that additional safeguards are in place. See the P&P entitled Review of Research Protocols Involving Vulnerable Populations.

Applicable Regulations:
45 CFR §§ 46.111; 116; 117; 203-.207; .303-.306; & .403-.408.
21 CFR §§ 56.111; 50.20; 50.23; 50.25; 50.27; & 50.55.
38 CFR §§ 16.116; &.117.
O.C.G.A. §§ 31-9-2; 31-17-7; & 37-7-8.
SECNAVINST 3300.300 Para. Bc(6)
43 INFORMED CONSENT

POLICY:

Prior to the conduct of any Research involving a Human Subject, the PI (or designee) must obtain legally effective informed consent from the Human Subject or the Human Subject’s Legally Authorized Representative (or Permission from a Parent or other Legal Guardian in the case of a minor Human Subject); unless the conditions for a waiver or alteration of informed consent are met as determined by the Emory IRB after review and approval. Informed consent (or an IRB approved waiver thereof) must be obtained before entering a subject into a Research protocol and/or conducting any procedures required by the protocol.

PROCEDURES:

The IRB shall evaluate the description of the Informed Consent Process provided by the PI based on the following:

Enrollment: A subject is considered to be enrolled in a study when he/she gives informed consent to participate. The PI should consider attrition, including screen failures and withdrawals from study participation that may occur throughout the study when he/she estimates the number of subjects to be enrolled.

Informed Consent Prior to Screening Procedures: Screening procedures used strictly to assess whether prospective subjects are appropriate candidates for inclusion in studies require informed consent prior to research procedures. Procedures that are to be performed as part of the practice of medicine and which would be done whether or not study entry was contemplated, such as for diagnosis or treatment of a disease or medical condition, may be performed and the results subsequently used for determining study eligibility without first obtaining informed consent.

Required Elements of Informed Consent: The PI is responsible for ensuring that the following elements of consent, as required by HHS, FDA and VA Regulations, are incorporated into the consent document:

- A clear statement that the study involves Research.
- An explanation of the purposes of the Research.
- The expected duration of the Human Subject’s participation in the Research.
- A complete description of the procedures to be followed; differentiating procedures that are considered standard of care (i.e., would normally be provided to the Human Subject as standard treatment for the condition involved) from those that are performed solely for the purposes of Research.
- A description of the reasonably foreseeable risks or discomforts to the Human Subject.
A description of any benefits to the *Human Subject* or to others that may reasonably be expected from the *Research*.

A disclosure of appropriate alternative procedures or courses of treatment that might be advantageous to the *Human Subject*.

A statement describing the extent to which confidentiality of records identifying the *Human Subject* and privacy will be maintained, including a statement as to what information will or will not be included in the *Human Subject's* medical record, if any.

For *Research* involving more than *Minimal Risk*, an explanation as to whether any compensation is available and an explanation as to whether any medical treatments are available if injury occurs and, if so, what they consist of, or where further information may be obtained.

For *Research* subject to a *DOD Addendum*, the Emory IRB shall require that for studies of greater than minimal risk (and in the IRB’s discretion, for minimal risk studies), the study includes an arrangement to provide emergency treatment and necessary follow-up for subjects who suffer from a research-related injury. Further, if the Department of Defense has “primary involvement” in the research, then procedures must be in place to protect subjects from unpaid or unreimbursed costs resulting from such research related injury. “Primary involvement” shall be determined based on consideration of the DOD portion of total involvement (i.e., funding, personnel, facilities and all other resources) in the research. In addition, any DOD-unit specific requirements regarding research-related injury shall be followed.

An explanation of whom to contact for answers to pertinent questions about the Research; Research-related injury to the *Human Subject*; and complaints or concerns about the *Research*.

An explanation of whom to contact at the Emory IRB (as an alternative to or in lieu of contacting the *Research* staff) in order to obtain answers about the *Research*; voice concerns or complaints about the *Research*; and obtain information about *Research* participant rights.

A statement that participation is voluntary, refusal to participate will involve no penalty or loss of benefits to which the *Human Subject* is otherwise entitled and the *Human Subject* may discontinue participation at any time without penalty or loss of benefits to which the *Human Subject is* otherwise entitled.

For FDA-regulated studies, a statement that the FDA may inspect the *Research*-related records.

For *FDA-regulated Research*, the following requirements pertaining to subject withdrawal must be followed:

When a participant withdraws from a study, the data collected on the participant to the
point of withdrawal remains part of the study database and may not be removed. The consent document cannot give the subject the option of having data removed.

A researcher may ask a subject who is withdrawing whether the subject wishes to provide continued follow-up and further data collection subsequent to his or her withdrawal from the interventional portion of the study. Under this circumstance, the discussion with the participant would distinguish between study-related interventions and continued follow-up of associated clinical outcome information, such as medical course or laboratory results obtained through non-invasive chart review, and address the maintenance of privacy and confidentiality of the subject’s information.

The researcher must obtain the subject’s informed consent for this limited participation in the study (assuming such a situation was not described in the original informed consent document). The IRB must approve the consent document.

If a participant withdraws from the interventional portion of the study and does not consent to continued follow-up of associated clinical outcome information, the researcher must not access for research purposes the subject’s medical record or other confidential records requiring the subject’s consent. However, a researcher may review study data related to the subject collected prior to the subject’s withdrawal, and may consult public records, such as those establishing survival status.

For AVAMC Research, the following elements also must be included in the Informed Consent:

- A statement that VA will provide treatment for research related injury in accordance with applicable federal regulations.
- Any payments the subject is to receive for participating in the study
- Any real or apparent conflict of interest by investigators where the research will be performed
- When appropriate, a statement that informs VA research subjects that they or their insurance will not be charged for any costs related to the research. NOTE: Some Veterans are required to pay copayments for medical care and services specifically related to their medical care provided by VA. These co-payment requirements will continue to apply to medical care and services that are not part of the research procedures or interventions
- The informed consent for research must include information describing any photographs, video, and/or audio recordings to be taken or obtained for research purposes, how the photographs, video, and/or audio recordings will be used for the research, and whether the photographs, video, and/or audio recordings will be disclosed outside VA.
  - The consent for research does not give legal authority to disclose the photographs, video, and/or audio recordings outside VA. A HIPAA authorization is needed to make such disclosures.

Additional Elements of Informed Consent: The PI is also responsible for ensuring that the following additional elements of informed consent are included in the consent document when appropriate:
A statement that the particular treatment or procedure may involve risks to the Human Subject (or to the embryo or Fetus, if the Human Subject is or may become Pregnant) which are currently unforeseeable.

Anticipated circumstances under which the Human Subject’s participation may be terminated by the PI without regard to the Human Subject’s consent.

Any additional costs to the Human Subject that may result from participation in the Research.

The consequences of a Human Subject’s decision to withdraw from the Research and procedures for orderly termination of participation by the Human Subject.

A statement that significant new Findings developed during the course of the Research which may relate to the Human Subject’s willingness to continue participation will be provided to the Human Subject.

The approximate number of Human Subjects involved in the Research protocol.

The Emory IRB may require that information, in addition to that required in HHS, FDA and VA Regulations, be given to the Human Subjects when in its judgment the information would meaningfully add to the protection of the rights and welfare of the Human Subjects.

Process of Informed Consent:
Informed consent consists of more than obtaining a signature on the consent document; it involves a discussion of the elements of the consent document in a manner and in a language that is understandable to the Human Subject.

In evaluating the appropriateness of the informed consent process, the IRB will consider where the consent process will take place and whether the setting and process is designed to minimize the possibility of undue influence or coercion.

Informed consent must be conducted by someone who is familiar with the informed consent process and who has undergone CITI training (see P&P entitled Investigator Qualifications). If someone other than the PI will be obtaining the informed consent, then the PI must formally delegate this responsibility and that person should sign the consent form as the “person who obtained consent.”

In evaluating the consent process, the IRB also will consider the individual who will be providing informed consent (e.g., subject, legally-authorized representative, etc). The IRB also will evaluate the process to ensure that the Human Subject has adequate time to consider participation in Research, and that someone is available to answer all of the Human Subject’s questions prior to enrolling the Human Subject in the Research protocol. The Emory IRB may require the PI to obtain informed consent for certain studies.
For VA Research: If the investigator does not personally obtain informed consent, the investigator must delegate this responsibility in writing (e.g., by use of a delegation letter) to research staff sufficiently knowledgeable about the protocol and related concerns to answer questions from prospective subjects, and about the ethical basis of the informed consent process and protocol.

No Exculpatory Language: No informed consent, whether oral or written, may include any exculpatory language by which the Human Subject or his/her Legally Authorized Representative is made to waive or appear to waive any of the Human Subject’s legal rights, or which releases or appears to release the PI, the Sponsor, Emory University, or any of their agents or employees from liability for negligence.

Documentation of Informed Consent: Informed consent must be appropriately documented in accordance with and the extent required by 45 CFR Section 46.117 or 21 CFR Section 50.27. Informed consent must be documented by the use of a written consent form that is approved by the IRB and signed and dated at the time of consent by the subject or the subject’s Legally Authorized Representative. The PI is responsible for obtaining a signed and dated consent document prior to enrolling any person in a Research protocol, except in circumstances in which the IRB has granted waiver of informed consent or a waiver of the documentation of informed consent (see the P&P chapters on Waiver of Documentation of Informed Consent and Waiver or Alteration of Informed Consent for Research).

If the Human Subject cannot sign the Informed Consent Document (due to physical impairment): Emory IRB does not require a Legally Authorized Representative to provide consent for subjects who are cognitively capable of consenting, but physically unable (for example, due to paralysis). In those cases, obtaining consent from the subject with the assistance of a witness is usually sufficient. Emory IRB can provide additional guidance for these situations upon request.

For FDA-regulated studies, the person must be physically able to indicate approval or disapproval for participation in the clinical investigation. The informed consent document must set forth the method used for communication with the prospective subject; the specific means by which the subject indicated he/she wanted to participate; and be signed by an impartial third party who witnessed the entire consent process.

The PI is responsible for maintaining a copy of each signed consent document and must be able to provide a copy of these to the Emory IRB upon request. A copy of the consent document (or Permission document signed by a Parent or Legal Guardian in the case of the enrollment of a Child) must be provided to the Human Subject or his/her Legally Authorized Representative.

Form of Informed Consent Document: The informed consent form may be either: (a) a written consent document that embodies the elements of informed consent that is read by or read to the subject or the subject’s Legally Authorized Representative; or (b) a Short Form written consent document stating that elements of informed consent have been presented orally to the subject or the subject’s Legally Authorized Representative in accordance with the provision below entitled Use of the Short Form.

Informed Consent Template: A template for the informed consent document can be
Review and Approval of the Informed Consent Form: The IRB is responsible for the review and approval of the informed consent form prepared by the PI. The wording on the informed consent form must contain all of the required elements, any additional elements (listed above) deemed necessary by the IRB, and meet all other requirements as described in this section. If the wording of the informed consent form has been initially prepared by an external entity (e.g., a pharmaceutical company or a cooperative study group, including National Cancer Institute groups), the IRB need to ensure that the wording of the informed consent document meets all the requirements of or has been reviewed by all Other Research Review Committees, as appropriate. IRB approval of the wording of the informed consent document must be evidenced through the use of a certification stamp on each page that indicates the date of the most recent IRB approval of the document. If the consent form is amended during the protocol approval period the form must bear the approval date of the amendment, rather than the date of the approved protocol.

Obtaining Consent or Assent from Individuals who Cannot Read (such as those who are temporarily or legally blind or illiterate): In cases where the potential Human Subject cannot read, the PI (or person authorized to obtain consent) is responsible for reading aloud the entire consent or assent document with the Human Subject and for documenting that the Human Subject cannot read. Adequate opportunity for discussing questions and concerns of the subject must be offered (including repeating and explaining portions of the Informed Consent/Assent and HIPAA Document[s]). An impartial individual should witness the consent or assent process and document for the Research records that the process took place, that the subject understands the Research and consent/assent process, and that the subject consented to participate. In the case of subjects who cannot write, “making their mark” is sufficient. The Human Subject should be provided with names and telephone contact numbers for the study PI and the IRB Office.

Parental Permission and Assent. In accordance with applicable HHS and FDA Regulations, the Emory IRB must determine that adequate provisions have been made for soliciting the Permission of the parents or Legally Authorized Representatives of any Children who are participating in a Research protocol. In addition, prior to participation in Research, the Emory IRB must determine whether it is necessary to obtain Assent from the Children participating in the Research. Detailed requirements for permission and assent are found in the P&P chapter Research Involving Children - Additional Protections.

Applicable Regulations:
45 CFR § 46.116-.117, .403-408.
21 CFR §§ 50.20, .23, .25, .27 & .55
38 CFR § 16.116-.117.
O.C.G.A. §§ 31-9-2; 31-17-7; 37-7-8.
DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 5.3.4 and SECNAVINST 3900.39D Para. 6(a)(5).
44 INFORMED CONSENT OF NON-ENGLISH SPEAKING SUBJECTS

POLICY:

Investigators in human subjects research studies have an obligation under the federal regulations and institutional policies to inform potential subjects, or their legally authorized representative(s), of certain information regarding human research. In order to ensure the subject, or their representative(s), are sufficiently informed to make a decision regarding their rights and the risks and benefits of participation, this information shall be in a language understandable to the subject or representative(s).

PROCEDURES:

**Obtaining Consent from Individuals who do not Speak English:** The PI is responsible for providing a description of the Research protocol in a language that is understandable to the potential Human Subject. A certified translator should be present to assist the PI as needed, and the fact of the translation, translator’s name and a statement that he/she believes that the subject understands the consent process should be documented in the Research records. A certified translated copy of the complete consent document is required to be submitted to the Emory IRB, unless an Emory IRB approved Short Form is used (refer to provision below entitled Use of the Short Form).

If a non-certified translator is used during the consent process then a statement verifying the translator’s credentials and/or expertise may be submitted to the IRB. A statement from the translator attesting to the translator’s proficiency in English and the other language (e.g., he/she is a native born speaker of the other language and has completed 4 or 5 years of education in English or other evidence that he/she speaks and reads both languages fluently) meets this requirement.

If a certified translator cannot be obtained for translation of the informed consent document, then a “back translation” should be performed, in most cases. This requires the PI have one individual translate the documents from English to the other language and then have a second individual translate the translated version back to English.

**Non-English Speaking Subject Population:** In general, in studies for which it is expected that study recruitment will include a significant number of persons who do not speak English, PIs will be expected to translate the informed consent documents into the subjects’ prevalent language(s). Investigators may submit the translated form(s) at initial review or later in the course of the study.

The HHS, FDA and VA Regulations permit the use of a Short Form written informed consent document in situations in which a non-English speaking subject is unexpectedly enrolled, as this facilitates enrollment of a diverse study population. The short form documents that the elements of informed consent, as required by 45 CFR 46.116 and 21 CFR 50.25, have been presented and are understood by the participant or the participant’s legally authorized representative. The IRB will consider the use of Short Forms on a study-by-study basis.
IRB Approval of the Use of Short Form and Short Form Documents: For the short form to be used in a study, the IRB must review and approve the potential enrollment of non-English speakers. This should be reflected in the eIRB submission forms, in the selection of non-English speakers as a study population, either at initial submission or via an amendment. It may also be reflected in the study protocol. The IRB will consider the study complexity and the amount and duration of participant involvement when determining if using the short form consent process is appropriate and can be approved. The IRB will also consider whether a significant number of people who speak the language in question would be expected to enroll, and may request a translation of the full consent (and HIPAA form, if separate) instead.

If the investigators wish to use the translated Short Form(s) provided by the IRB, then those forms do not need to be submitted to and approved by the IRB prior to use. If the investigators wish to create and translate their own Short Form(s), those, including the English version, must be reviewed and approved by the IRB prior to use.

If a non-English speaking participant is initially consented for a study through an approved short form process, to the extent the study includes ongoing interventions or interactions with the participant, investigators and the IRB may assess the feasibility of translating the full English consent, as well as other study-related documents, into the participant’s language whenever possible.

Procedures to be Followed When Use of Short Form is Permitted: In studies in which the Emory IRB has approved the use of the Short Form, the following procedures must be used:

There must be a Short Form written consent document stating that the required, as well as any appropriate additional, elements of informed consent have been presented orally to the Human Subject or his/her Legally Authorized Representative. The oral presentation and the written Short Form must be in a language that is understandable to the Human Subject.

There must be a witness to the oral presentation. If the presentation is in a language other than English, the witness must be fluent in both English and the language of the presentation. If the person obtaining consent is being assisted by a translator, the translator may serve as the witness.

A written summary of what is to be said to the Human Subject or his/her Legally Authorized Representative must be presented to and approved by the Emory IRB. In cases in which a Short Form is being used only for Human Subjects who do not speak English, the English language informed consent document may serve as this written summary. The Emory IRB, however, reserves the right to require the PI to provide the Human Subject with an additional document that describes the Research protocol translated into the Human Subject’s primary language.

Who Must Sign the Short Form and Written Summary:

The Human Subject or his/her Legally Authorized Representative (or in the case of a Child, his/her Parent or Legal Guardian) must sign and date the Short Form.
The witness shall sign and date both the \textit{Short Form} and copy of the written summary (and any additional documentation describing the \textit{Research} protocol that is required by the Emory IRB).

The person actually obtaining consent shall sign and date a copy of the written summary (and any additional documentation describing the \textit{Research} protocol that is required by the Emory IRB).

A copy of the written summary (and of any additional documentation describing the \textit{Research} protocol that is required by the Emory IRB) shall be given to the \textit{Human Subject} or his/her representative, in addition to a copy of the \textit{Short Form}.

\textbf{Additional requirements for studies involving FDA-regulated products} The \textit{Human Subject} or his/her Legally Authorized Representative shall sign and date only the short form (not the written summary). The witness and person obtaining consent both must sign and date the short form and a copy of the summary.

The original short form and summary must be retained for the files. A copy of the summary and of the signed short form must be given to the subject or to his/her legally-authorized representative.

\textbf{Optional Consent Items for Short Form:} If the English consent has optional consent items (e.g., extra blood for research, permission for central imaging review), the translator must write a comment on the last page of the short form to indicate the subject made specific choices on the English consent. The translator should indicate the subject’s choice (e.g., checks/circles Yes or No) and include the translator’s initials for each choice on the English consent.

\textbf{Applicable Regulations:}
45 CFR § 46.116-.117, .403-408.
21 CFR §§ 50.20, .23, .25, .27 & .55
38 CFR § 16.116-.117.
O.C.G.A. §§ 31-9-2; 31-17-7; 37-7-8.
DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 5.3.4 and SECNAVINST 3900.39D Para. 6(a)(5).
45 LEGALLY AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVES AND SURROGATE CONSENT

POLICY:

Unless otherwise approved by the IRB, informed consent must be obtained directly from the individual subject. Under appropriate conditions, however, PIs also may obtain informed consent from a Legally Authorized Representative of the subject.

PROCEDURES:

Determining if Human Subject May Give Informed Consent: The Human Subject who is enrolling in the Research protocol should normally be capable of giving informed consent if he/she is Adult or is an Emancipated Minor (as described in the provision entitled Emancipated Minor below); is of sound mind and body; is conscious, mentally unimpaired, and physically able to read and/or hear and understand the elements of informed consent; and has not otherwise been declared to be legally incompetent. In cases in which a judicial determination of incompetence has not been rendered, the PI shall conduct a competency assessment whenever there is a possibility of either impaired mental status or decision-making capacity in prospective subjects, and as part of such an assessment shall perform and consider information from the appropriate medical evaluations:

If an appropriate medical evaluation that reveals that the prospective subject lacks decision-making capacity and is unlikely to re-gain it soon

When the determination regarding decision-making capacity is based on a diagnosis of mental illness, a consultation should be conducted with a licensed psychiatrist or psychologist.

Determining if Another Person/Entity May Give Informed Consent on Behalf of a Human Subject: If the Human Subject does not meet the requirements set forth in the immediately foregoing section, then legal counsel for the University has stated that the following guidance should be used to determine if a Legally Authorized Representative can give informed consent on behalf of a Research subject in the State of Georgia. (NOTE: If the Research takes place outside the State of Georgia, then a determination as to who may provide informed consent must be made under the law of the site at which the Research takes place, and PIs must consult with University legal counsel in order to make this determination.).

Emancipated Minors in Georgia: In Georgia, a person who is under 18 years of age may be considered to be an Emancipated Minor if he/she is married; in the armed services; or is self-supporting and has been declared to be emancipated by court order. An Emancipated Minor in Georgia may give informed consent for Research.

Non-Emancipated Minors/Children: If a Child is not an Emancipated Minor, then the provisions for parental permission and assent found in the P&P entitled Research Involving Children – Additional Protections apply.

Legally Incompetent Adult Human Subjects and Research Involving Medical Treatment: If an
**Adult Human Subject** or an **Emancipated Minor** does not meet the requirements of the provision above entitled *Determining if Human Subject May Give Informed Consent* above and therefore cannot give informed consent, then the following persons may give informed consent on his/her behalf for **Research** that involves lawful surgical or medical treatment which may be recommended, prescribed or directed by a duly licensed physician:

Any **Adult may delegate to another Adult the authority to give consent** for him/herself by a lawful Advanced Directive for Health Care or other appropriate legal document.

Any married person, whether an **Adult** or **Minor**, for him/herself and for his/her spouse.

In the event that an **Adult** cannot consent for him/herself and in the absence of any person to consent under the provisions in set forth in the subsections immediately above, then the following persons may sign informed consent documents in the following order of priority:

Any **Adult** offspring for his/her **Parents**.

Any **Parent** for his/her **Adult** offspring.

Any **Adult** for his/her brother or sister.

Any grandparent for his/her grandchild.

**Legally Incompetent Adult Human Subjects and Research that Does Not Involve Medical Treatment:** If an **Adult Human Subject** or **Emancipated Minor** does not meet the requirements of the subsection above entitled *Determining if Human Subject May Give Informed Consent* and therefore cannot give informed consent, then the following persons may sign informed consent documents on his/her behalf for **Research** that does not involve lawful surgical or medical treatment which may be recommended, prescribed or directed by a duly licensed physician:

Any person who is authorized to give consent for the **Adult** to participate in **Research** pursuant to the terms of an appropriate power of attorney.

**Requirements for the Execution of Informed Consent Documents in States Other than Georgia:** The provisions set forth in this section apply only to **Human Subjects** in the State of Georgia. If the **Human Subject** is somewhere other than Georgia, the laws of that jurisdiction should be consulted in determining whether the **Human Subject** is legally competent to give informed consent and in determining if/when a **Minor** is an **Emancipated Minor**; if/when a **Minor** may give informed consent; and who may give informed consent on behalf of a **Minor** or a legally incompetent Adult. PIs should consult with University legal counsel with regard to making such a determination.

**Responsibilities of LARs:** LARs are acting on behalf of the potential subjects, therefore:

- LARs must be told that their obligation is to try to determine what the subjects would do if able to make an informed decision.
- If the potential subjects’ wishes cannot be determined, the LARs must be told they are responsible for determining what is in the subjects’ best interest.
**Explanation of Research:** If feasible, the PI must explain the proposed Research to the prospective subject, even if a surrogate gives consent for the subject to participate. Under no circumstances may a subject be forced or coerced to participate in Research.

**AVAMC Research:**

For AVAMC Research surrogate consent may be obtained from: a health care agent appointed by the person in an Advanced Directive for Health Care or other appropriate legal document; a court appointed guardian; or from next-of-kin in the following order of priority, unless otherwise specified by applicable state law: spouse; Adult offspring; Parent; Adult sibling; grandparent; Adult grandchild. NOTE: The persons authorized to consent on behalf of persons who lack decision-making capacity for participation in the research may not necessarily be the same as the persons authorized to provide permission for the use and disclosure of information on a HIPAA authorization on behalf of persons who lack decision-making capacity (see VHA Handbook 1605.1).

**Research Subject to a DOD Addendum:** In the case of Research subject to a DOD Addendum, the IRB must determine that the research is intended to be beneficial to the subject before a legally authorized representative can consent to the research on behalf of an incompetent subject.

**Applicable Regulations:**
- 45 CFR §§ 46.116 - .117, .403 – 408.
- 21 CFR §§ 50.20, .23, .25, .27 & .55
- VHA Handbook 1200.05
- VHA Handbook 1605.1
- O.C.G.A. §§ 31-9-2; 31-17-7; 37-7-8.
- DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 4.2.1
46 WAIVER OF DOCUMENTATION OF INFORMED CONSENT

POLICY:

The IRB may waive the requirement for the PI to obtain a signed consent form for some or all subjects if it finds that the applicable criteria set forth in applicable HHS, FDA, and/or VA Regulations are satisfied.

PROCEDURES:

Waiver of Documentation of Informed Consent for Studies that do NOT Involve Drugs, Devices or other Items Regulated by the FDA: For studies that do not involve items regulated under the FDA Regulations, the Emory IRB, at its discretion, may waive the requirement for the PI to obtain a signed consent document in either of the following two situations:

The only record linking the Human Subject and the Research is the consent document and the principal risk would be potential harm resulting from a breach of confidentiality. In such cases, the Human Subject will be asked whether he/she wants documentation linking him/her with the Research, and the Human Subject’s wishes will govern; or

The Research presents no more than Minimal Risk of harm to Human Subjects and involves no procedures for which consent is normally required outside of the Research context.

Statement Regarding Research: In cases in which the Emory IRB waives the requirement for a signed consent document, the Emory IRB may require the PI to provide Human Subjects with a written statement regarding the Research. In addition, the PI must provide in the IRB application a written summary of the information that is to be communicated to the subject regarding the study.

Waiver of Documentation of Informed Consent for Studies that Involve Drugs, Devices or other Items Regulated by the FDA: For studies that involve items regulated under the FDA Regulations, the Emory IRB, at its discretion, may waive the requirement for the PI to obtain a signed consent document if:

The Research presents no more than Minimal Risk of harm to the Human Subjects and involves no procedures for which written consent is normally required outside the Research context; or

The requirements for an exception from informed consent for Planned Emergency Research, as set forth in the P&P entitled Waiver of Informed Consent for Planned Emergency Research) are met.

Statement Regarding Research: In situations in which the Emory IRB waives the requirement for documentation of informed consent, the Emory IRB may require the PI to provide subjects with a written statement regarding the Research. In addition, the PI must provide in the IRB application a written summary of the information that is to be communicated to the subject.
regarding the study.

**Waiver or Alteration of Elements of Informed Consent**: A waiver or alteration of some or all of the elements of informed consent for participation in *Research* may only be approved by the IRB in the limited circumstances situations described in the P&P entitled *Waiver or Alteration of Informed Consent for Research*.

**Applicable Regulations:**

- 45 CFR §§ 46.116 - .117, .403 – 408.
- 21 CFR §§ 50.20, .23, .25, .27 & .55
- O.C.G.A. §§ 31-9-2; 31-17-7; 37-7-8.
47 WAIVER OR ALTERATION OF INFORMED CONSENT FOR RESEARCH

POLICY:

For Research protocols that do NOT involve FDA regulated items, the Emory IRB may waive or alter some or all of the elements of informed consent (as those elements are set forth in the P&P entitled Informed Consent Policy in accordance with applicable HHS Regulations. For Research protocols that DO involve FDA regulated items, the Emory IRB must comply with both HHS Regulations and FDA Regulations. FDA Regulations do not permit the waiver of informed consent for Research that involves FDA-regulated products, but FDA Regulations do provide for certain exceptions for FDA informed consent requirements in certain emergency situations.

Family Member: Any of the following legally competent persons: spouses, parents, children, brothers, sisters and spouses of brothers and sisters; and any individual related by blood or affinity whose close association with a Human Subject is the equivalent of a family relationship.

PROCEDURES:

Approval of Consent Procedure that Does not Include or Alters Elements of Informed Consent for Research Protocols that do NOT Involve Items Regulated by the FDA: The Emory IRB may, by review and vote of the IRB Committee approve a consent procedure that does not include, or alters, some or all of the elements of informed consent described in the P&P entitled Informed Consent Policy of these P&Ps for Research protocols that do NOT involve items regulated by the FDA. The IRB Committee may consider the grant of a waiver of informed consent, or the alteration of some or all elements of informed consent, on its own initiative or at the request of a PI, who has completed the appropriate provision of the Emory IRB Protocol Application.

Alteration or Waiver of Elements of Informed Consent for Research Protocols Involving State or Local Government Officials that do NOT Involve Items Regulated by the FDA: The Emory IRB may waive or alter some or all elements of informed consent, or waive the requirement to obtain informed consent, for Research protocols that are conducted by or subject to the approval of state or local government officials, if the IRB Designated Reviewer determines, or the IRB Committee determines by majority vote, and documents in the IRB Committee meeting minutes, that the following elements are met after:

The Research protocol is designed to study, evaluate or otherwise examine:

Public benefit or service programs; or

Procedures for obtaining benefits or services under public benefit or service programs; or

Possible changes in or alternatives to public benefit or service programs or procedures; or

Possible changes in the methods or levels of payment for benefits or service under public benefit or service programs; AND
The Research protocol could not practicably be carried out without a waiver or alteration of some or all of the elements of informed consent.

Alteration or Waiver of Elements of Informed Consent for Other Research Protocols that do NOT Involve Items Regulated by the FDA: The Emory IRB may waive or alter some or all elements of informed consent, or waive the requirement to obtain informed consent, for a Research protocol if the IRB Designated Reviewer determines, or the IRB Committee determines by majority vote, and documents in the IRB Committee meeting minutes, that the following elements are met:

The Research protocol involves no more than Minimal Risk to Human Subjects;

The waiver of informed consent or the waiver or alteration of some or all of the elements of informed consent will not adversely affect the rights and welfare of the Human Subjects;

The Research protocol could not practicably be carried out without the waiver of informed consent or the waiver or alteration of some or all of the elements of informed consent; and

Whenever appropriate, the Human Subjects will be provided with additional pertinent information after their participation in the Research protocol.

For Research subject to a DOD Addendum, the IRB also must determine that the research participants for whom consent is to be waived do not fall within the category of “experimental subjects” as set forth within the term “Research Involving a Human Being as an Experimental Subject.” If the participants do meet this definition, then informed consent cannot be waived unless approval of such waiver is obtained from the Assistant Secretary of Defense for Research and Engineering. The Assistant Secretary for Defense for Research and Engineering may waive the requirements for consent when all of the following are met:

The research is necessary to advance the development of a medical product for the Military Services.

The research may directly benefit the individual experimental subject.

The research is conducted in compliance with all other applicable laws and regulations.

For classified research, waivers of consent are prohibited

Additional Requirements for Waiver of Permission from Parents/Legal Guardian for Research Protocols involving Children that do NOT Involve FDA Regulated Products: In order to waive the requirement of obtaining Permission from Parents/Legal Guardian for Research protocols in which Children are participating as Human Subjects, the IRB Committee must determine that the elements set forth in the P&P entitled Research Involving Children – Additional Protections are met. This determination may be made by Expedited or Full Committee Review, depending on the criteria for eligibility of the Protocol, including the proposed waiver, for Expedited Review.
Emergency Medical Care Exception -- Exception to Requirement to Obtain Informed Consent for the Use of an FDA-Regulated Item in Emergency Medical Care Situations: In certain emergency medical care situations, informed consent for the use of an item regulated by the FDA in a Human Subject does not need to be obtained by the Investigator who needs to use the FDA-regulated item, nor approved in advance by the Emory IRB, if the following criteria are met:

Certification: The Investigator and a licensed physician who is not participating in the Research protocol certify in writing that:

The Human Subject in which the FDA-regulated item is to be used is confronted by a life-threatening situation that necessitates the use of the item.

Informed consent cannot be obtained from the Human Subject because of an inability to communicate with or obtain legally effective informed consent from the Human Subject.

There is not sufficient time to obtain informed consent from the Human Subject’s Legally Authorized Representative.

There is no available alternative method of FDA-approved or generally recognized therapy that provides an equal or greater likelihood of saving the Human Subject’s life.

If the Investigator determines that the immediate use of the FDA-regulated item is necessary to preserve the Human Subject’s life, and there is not enough time to obtain the written certification of the non-participating physician before the item must be used, then the Investigator may make his/her written certification and provide it to a non-participating physician for the completion of that physician’s written review and evaluation within five (5) working days after the item is used.

Documentation Provided to Emory IRB: The written certification and/or review/evaluation by the Investigator and the non-participating physician must be provided to the Emory IRB Chair within five (5) working days after the use of the item/process. The IRB Chair shall review the documentation provided for compliance with applicable regulatory requirements.

NOTE: HHS Regulations do not permit the initiation of Research activities involving Human Subjects without prior IRB review and approval, even in emergency situations. If emergency medical care is initiated without prior IRB review and approval, the care may not be considered to be Research; the patient may not be considered to be a Human Subject; and no data regarding the care may be included in any report of a prospective Research study.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR §§ 46.116; .117 & 46.408.
38 CFR §16.116 &.117.
10 USC 980(b)
DOD Directives 3210.7, 3216.2, 6200.2.
SECNAVINST 3900.39D
OPNAVINST 5300.8C
48 WAIVERS OF, AND EXCEPTIONS FROM, INFORMED CONSENT FOR PLANNED EMERGENCY RESEARCH

POLICY:

FDA and HHS Regulations provide for a waiver of/exception to the requirements for informed consent for Research that may be carried out in Human Subjects who are in need of emergency therapy and for whom, because of the subjects’ medical condition and the unavailability of legally authorized representatives of the subjects, no legally effective informed consent can be obtained. The Emory IRB may approve Research under this provision provided that the Research meet the criteria in the federal regulations.

PROCEDURES:

Investigator Responsibilities: Investigators should consult with the IRB Director or Chair prior to submitting a protocol requesting a waiver for planned emergency Research.

Investigators must submit to the IRB materials describing the plan for community consultation and public disclosure.

Investigators must submit a summary of efforts to contact legally authorized representatives at Continuing Review.

Emergency Research Exception -- Exception from Informed Consent (EFIC) Requirements for Emergency Research Involving an FDA-Regulated Item: The Emory IRB may approve an EFIC for a Research protocol involving the use of a FDA-regulated item/process for Human Subjects, if the Emory IRB, with the concurrence of a licensed physician who is a member of or consultant to the IRB Committee, and who is not participating in the Research protocol determines by majority vote and documents in the IRB Committee meeting minutes that the following requirements are met after Full Committee Review:

The Human Subjects that are to be enrolled in the Research protocol are in a life-threatening situation;

Available treatments for the Human Subjects are unproven or unsatisfactory;

The collection of valid scientific evidence, which may include evidence obtain through randomized placebo-controlled investigations, is necessary to determine the safety and effectiveness of the FDA-regulated item that is to be used in the Research protocol;

The Research protocol sets forth informed consent procedures and documentation that meet the requirements of Section 41 (entitled Informed Consent Policy), and are approved by the IRB Committee, for use with those Human Subjects for whom it is feasible to obtain informed consent from the Human Subject or his/her Legally Authorized Representative.

The Research protocol defines the length of the potential therapeutic window for the
proposed intervention based on scientific evidence, and the **Investigator** commits to attempting to obtain informed consent within that window of time from a **Legally Authorized Representative** of the **Human Subject**, rather than proceeding without informed consent. The **Investigator** will summarize his/her efforts to contact each **Human Subject’s Legally Authorized Representative** and will provide this summary to the **IRB Committee** at the time that the **Research** protocol is subject to **Continuing Review**.

Further, the **IRB Committee** must find that informed consent may not be feasible to obtain in all situations under the **Research** protocol because:

**Human Subjects** won’t be able to give informed consent as a result of his/her medical condition;

The FDA-regulated item under investigation must be administered before it is feasible to obtain consent from the **Human Subjects’ Legally Authorized Representative**; and

There is no reasonable way to prospectively identify the **Human Subjects** who are likely to become eligible for participation in the **Research** Protocol.

That participation in the **Research** protocol has the prospect of direct benefit to the **Human Subjects** because:

**Human Subjects** are facing a life-threatening situation that requires intervention;

Appropriate animal and other pre-clinical studies using the FDA-regulated item have been conducted and the information from those studies and related evidence support the premise that the intervention will provide a direct benefit to the **Human Subjects**.

Risks that are associated with the use of the FDA-regulated product are reasonable in relation to what is known about the medical condition of the potential class of **Human Subjects**; the risks and benefits of any standard therapy; and the known risks and benefits of the proposed intervention.

The **Research** protocol could not practicably be carried out without a waiver of informed consent.

That the **Research** protocol provides for at least the following additional protections of **Human Subjects’** rights and welfare:

Consultation, including consultation by the IRB Committee where appropriate, with representatives of the communities in which the **Research** protocol will be conducted and from which **Human Subjects** will be drawn;

Prior to the initiation of the protocol, public disclosure to the communities in which the protocol is to be conducted and from which the **Human Subjects** will be drawn, of plans for the protocol and its risks and benefits; and
Establishment of an independent data monitoring committee to exercise oversight of the Research protocol;

That after the conclusion of the Research protocol, public disclosure of sufficient information to apprise the community and Researchers of the Research protocol, the demographic characteristics of the Human Subjects population involved in the Research protocol, and its results;

That the Research protocol sets forth procedures to ensure that the Human Subject; or if he/she is incapacitated, then the Human Subject’s Legally Authorized Representative; or if a Legally Authorized Representative is not reasonably available, then a Family Member of the Human Subject is informed as soon as possible of: the Human Subject’s inclusion in the protocol; the details of the protocol; the right to discontinue the Human Subject’s participation in the Research at any time without penalty or loss of benefits to which the Human Subject may otherwise be entitled; and any other information that is contained in the informed consent documentation.

That the Research protocol sets forth procedures to tell the Human Subject about the subject’s participation in the Research protocol if the Human Subject’s condition improves, even if a Legally Authorized Representative was previously provided with this information.

That the Research protocol set forth procedures to be followed in the event that the Human Subject is enrolled in the Research protocol under a waiver of informed consent or EFIC, and the Human Subject dies before his/her Legally Authorized Representative or family member can be contacted whereby information about the Research protocol is made available to the Legally Authorized Representative or family member, if feasible.

That if the Research protocol involves an Investigational Drug, then it is performed under a separate Investigational New Drug application (IND), even if an IND for the drug under study already exists.

That if the Research protocol involves an Investigational Device, then it is performed under a separate Investigational Device Exemption (IDE), even if an IDE for the device under study already exists.

**Disapproval of Emergency Research Involving an FDA-Regulated Item/Process:** If the Emory IRB disapproves of Emergency Research for which a waiver of informed consent or EFIC is requested, it must document its reasons for disapproval in writing and provide them to the Investigator, as well as to the Sponsor of the Research protocol. The Research Sponsor is then responsible for disclosing this information to the following individuals/entities: the FDA; other of the Sponsor’s Investigators who are participating in or are asked to participate in the same Research protocol or a substantially similar Research protocol; and other IRBs that have reviewed or are asked to review the same or a substantially similar Research protocol.
Emergency Research Consent Waiver/EFIC: HHS permits IRBs to grant a waiver/EFIC to the requirement to obtain informed consent for the following classes of Research activities:

Research Subject to FDA Regulations: Research for which the IRB has:

- Approved the activity;
- Approved a waiver of informed consent; and
- Found and documented that:
  
  The Research is subject to the regulations codified by the FDA at 21 CFR Part 50 and will be carried out under an IND or an IDE, the application for which has clearly identified the protocols that would include subjects who are unable to consent; and

  The requirements set forth in 21 CFR Section 50.24 for EFIC for Emergency Research have been met for those protocols.

Research Not Subject to FDA Regulations: Research for which the IRB has approved the Research and a waiver of informed consent and has found and documented that:

- The Human Subjects are in a life-threatening situation;
- Available treatments are unproven or unsatisfactory;
- Collection of valid scientific evidence, which may include evidence obtained through randomized placebo controlled investigations, is necessary to determine the safety and effectiveness of particular interventions;
- Obtaining informed consent is not feasible because:
  
  The Human Subjects will not be able to give informed consent as a result of their medical condition;

  The intervention involved in the Research must be administered before consent from the Human Subjects’ Legally Authorized Representatives is feasible; and

  There is no reasonable way to identify prospectively the individuals likely to become eligible for participation in the Research.

Participation in the Research holds out the prospect of direct benefit to the Human Subjects because:

Subjects are facing a life-threatening situation that requires intervention.
Appropriate animal and other preclinical studies have been conducted and the information derived from those studies and related evidence support the potential for the intervention to provide a direct benefit to the individual Human Subjects.

Risks associated with the Research are reasonable in relation to what is known about the medical condition of the potential class of Human Subjects, the risks and benefits of standard therapy if any, and what is known about the risks and benefits of the proposed intervention or activity.

The Research could not practicably be carried out without the waiver.

The proposed Research protocol defines the length of the potential therapeutic window based on scientific evidence, and the PI has committed to attempt to contact a Legally Authorized Representative for each subject within that window of time, and, if feasible, to asking the Legally Authorized Representative contacted for consent within that window, rather than proceeding without consent. The PI must summarize efforts made to contact such Legally Authorized Representatives and make this information available to the IRB at the time of continuing review.

The IRB has reviewed and approved informed consent procedures and an informed consent document in accordance with applicable HHS Regulations, and these procedures and the informed consent document will to be used with Human Subjects or their Legally Authorized Representatives in situations in which their use is feasible.

The IRB has reviewed and approved procedures and information to be used for providing an opportunity for a Family Member of the Human Subject to object to a Human Subject’s participation in the Research.

The IRB shall provide for the additional protection of the rights and welfare of the Human Subjects will be provided including at least:

Consultation, including, where appropriate, consultation carried out by the IRB with representatives of the communities in which the research will be conducted and from which the subjects will be drawn.

Public disclosure to the communities in which the Research will be conducted and from which the Human Subjects will be drawn, prior to the initiation of the Research, of plans for the Research and its risks and expected benefits;

Public disclosure of sufficient information following completion of the Research to apprise the community and researchers of the study, including the demographic characteristics of the Research population
and its results.

Establishment of an independent data monitoring committee to exercise oversight of the Research.

The PI commits that if obtaining informed consent is not feasible and a Legally Authorized Representative is not reasonably available, than the PI will attempt to contact within the therapeutic window the subject’s Family Member who is not a Legally Authorized Representative and ask whether he or she objects to the subject’s participation in the Research. The PI must summarize efforts made to contact family members and make this information available to the IRB at the time of continuing review.

The Emory IRB also shall ensure that:

Procedures are in place to inform, at the earliest feasible opportunity, each Human Subject, or if the Human Subject remains incapacitated, the Human Subject’s Legally Authorized Representative or Family Member, of the Human Subject’s inclusion in the Research, the details of the Research and other information contained in the informed consent document.

There is a procedure to inform the Human Subject, or if he/she remains incapacitated, then his/her Legally Authorized Representative or Family Member that the Human Subject may discontinue the Human Subject’s participation at any time without penalty or loss of benefits to which the Human Subject is otherwise entitled.

If a Legally Authorized Representative or Family Member is told about the Research, and the Human Subject’s condition improves, then the Human Subject also shall be informed about the Research as soon as feasible.

If the Human Subject is entered into the Research with waived consent and the Human Subject dies before a Legally Authorized Representative or Family Member can be contacted, information about the Research is to be provided to the subject’s Legally Authorized Representative or Family Member, if feasible.

VA Research: No waiver of consent for planned emergency research may be granted to VA research because the VA has no provisions for waiver of consent for planned emergency research.

Research Subject to a DOD Addendum: For Research subject to a DOD Addendum, the head of
the DOD unit that is conducting or supporting the Research must waive the requirement of informed consent for planned emergency research. In order to grant such a waiver, the research project must advance the development of a medical product necessary to the Armed Forces, and the DOD unit must determine that the research may directly benefit the research subject and is being carried out in accordance with all other applicable laws and regulations, including 21 CFR Section 50.24.

Applicable Regulations/Policies:

21 CFR Sections 50.20, .23 - .24
DOD Directive 3216.2 Section 4.2.2; 10 U.S.C. Section 980; SECNAVINST 3900.39D Para. 7(a)(1).
49 CONSENT MONITORING

POLICY:

The Emory IRB may monitor the informed consent process employed for Research studies in order to ensure that the consent process is carried out in accordance with all protocol, IRB and regulatory requirements and to reduce the possibility of any coercion or undue influence.

PROCEDURES:

Use of Consent Monitoring: In reviewing the adequacy of informed consent procedures for proposed Research, the IRB may, in its discretion, determine that special monitoring of the consent process by an impartial observer (consent monitor) is required in order to ensure that the consent process is being carried out in accordance with protocol, IRB and regulatory requirements. Such monitoring may be particularly warranted when the Research presents significant risks to subjects, or if subjects are likely to have difficulty understanding the information to be provided. Monitoring also may be appropriate as a corrective action when the IRB has identified problems associated with a particular Investigator or a Research project.

Performance of Consent Monitoring: When the IRB requires consent monitoring to be performed, it will assign an appropriate IRB staff member, IRB member, another appropriate individual from the University, or an outside consultant to perform the monitoring. The person who is assigned shall be thoroughly familiar with the informed consent process for Research and applicable regulations, as well as with the specific consent for the protocol(s) for which monitoring will occur. The monitor shall observe the consent process as directed by the IRB and provide constructive feedback to the PI and study team within five business days.

In addition, the monitor shall provide a report on his/her observations to the IRB Chair, along with any recommended corrective actions. The IRB Chair will review the report and decide if it shall be reviewed by the convened IRB, in which case the IRB Committee shall vote on whether to accept the report and any recommended corrective actions. The Chair may review the report in an expedited manner if there are no concerns.

Following review of the report by the IRB Chair or IRB Committee, the IRB shall notify the PI of the results of the monitoring and any corrective action that should be employed.

Applicable Regulations:

CFR §§ 46.109(e); & .111(b)
21 CFR §§ 56.109(f); .111(b)
50 DATA AND SAFETY MONITORING PLANS

POLICY:

It is the policy of the Emory IRB that each research application, excluding Exempt research, submitted to the IRB for review must include a plan to assure the safety and welfare of its Subjects as appropriate for the study design. For Research subject to a DOD Addendum, the Emory IRB shall consider the appointment of a research monitor.

PROCEDURES:

Appointment of a DSM or DSMB: The Principal Investigator should appoint a DSM or DSMB for his or her study as appropriate for the size, complexity, and level of risk involved in the Research. Research activities should consider including a DSM or DSMB if:

- The study is intended to provide definitive information about the effectiveness and/or safety of a medical intervention;
- Prior data suggests that the intervention under study has the potential to induce a potentially unacceptable toxicity; and/or
- The study is evaluating mortality or another major endpoint, such that inferiority of one treatment arm has safety as well as effectiveness implications; or It would be ethically important for the study to stop early if the primary question addressed has been definitively answered, even if secondary questions or complete safety information were not yet fully addressed.

DSMB Composition:

The DSMB should have multidisciplinary representation, including physicians from relevant medical specialties and biostatisticians. Such representation may include other experts such as bioethicists, epidemiologists and basic scientists.

The DSMB should have membership limited to individuals free of apparent significant Conflicts of Interest, whether they are financial, intellectual, professional, or regulatory in nature.

The appropriate size of a DSMB will depend upon the particular study and types of expertise needed.

DSM or DSMB Responsibilities: The primary responsibility of the DSM or DSMB is to safeguard the interests of study subjects. Therefore, the DSM or DSMB must approve the safety measures in the protocol in order to (a) preserve the study integrity and credibility; and (b) facilitate the availability of timely and reliable findings to the broader clinical community. In addition, the DSM or DSMB should:

- Provide written documentation confirming review of the protocol and agreement with the study design and the data safety monitoring plan (DSMP).
Review the progress of the study carefully and diligently. The DSM or DSMB should assure that all significant **Adverse Events** are reported to the IRB according to policies and procedures.

The DSM or DSMB should be available to the **Investigator** for consultation concerning any untoward study events or any questions regarding consent issues.

The **DSM** or **DSMB** should provide a letter to the **IRB** at predefined frequency, through the **Investigator**, which summarizes the oversight activities and recommendations of the **DSM** or **DSMB** and any concerns regarding subject safety identified during the monitoring period.

**DSM or DSMB Charter:** Each DSM or DSMB should have a written charter or charge that sets forth its mission and responsibilities. The DSM or DSMB charter should include the following:

- A detailed presentation of the membership composition, including qualifications and experience;
- Roles and responsibilities of the DSM or DSMB and if relevant, of Steering Committee members;
- The authority of the DSM/DSMB (e.g. advisory to the **Sponsor**, PI);
- The timing and purpose of DSMB meetings;
- The procedures for maintaining confidentiality;
- The format, content and frequency of DSM or DSMB reports;
- Statistical procedures including monitoring guidelines, which will be used to monitor the identified primary, secondary, and safety outcome variables; and
- Plans for changing frequency of interim analysis as well as procedures for recommending protocol changes.

A copy of the relevant DSM or DSMB Charter should be maintained with the related research study files.

**DSM or DSMB Tasks:** DSM or DSMB tasks may include, but need not be limited to, the following:

- Conducting initial review of the proposed **Research** to assure quality study conduct;
- Reviewing procedures to assure quality of study conduct including data management and quality control procedures;
Evaluating the quality of ongoing study conduct by reviewing the study accrual, compliance with eligibility, subject adherence to study requirements, and accuracy and completeness of data;

Consideration of factors external to the study when relevant information becomes available, such as scientific or therapeutic developments that may have an impact on the safety of the subjects or the ethics of the study;

Recommending early termination based on efficacy results;

Recommending termination due to unfavorable benefit-to-risk or inability to answer study questions;

Recommending continuation of ongoing studies;

Consideration of overall picture; primary and secondary analysis;

Modification of sample sizes based on ongoing assessment of event rates; and

Review of final results.

Data and Safety Monitoring Plan: Some studies do not require a DSM or a DSMB; however, a detailed Data and Safety Monitoring Plan (DSMP) is required for all Research that involves more than Minimal Risk, and may be required in Minimal Risk studies at the discretion of the IRB. The level of detail in the plan should be based upon the degree of risk to the subjects. At a minimum, all DSMP's must contain the following:

A description of how risks are minimized;

A description of how risks are reasonable in relation to anticipated benefits;

Identification of a DSM or DSMB, if applicable;

A description of the general Data and Safety Monitoring Plan;

A description of the plan to monitor progress and safety. Such descriptions may include:

A plan for safety review either by an assigned board, committee or monitor at predetermined intervals relevant to the complexity of the Research; and

Depending on the complexity of the Research, assessments of data quality, timeliness, subject recruitment, accrual and retention.

A description of the plan to assure compliance with reporting of Adverse Events and/or Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others. This may include:
A description of the process for detecting and reporting Serious and Unexpected Adverse Events and/or Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others;

Specification of who will be monitoring and collecting the Adverse Events (e.g., PI, research nurse, etc.);

Specification of who will be notified of an Adverse Event (e.g., IRB, NIH, FDA, PI, etc.);

A reporting plan indicating the timing of reports;

A plan for annual reporting of Adverse Events if the study will continue beyond one year;

A description of the plan to assure Suspensions of funded trials are reported to the grants program director; and

A description of the plan to assure data accuracy and protocol compliance.

Research Subject to a DOD Addendum: For Research involving more than minimal risk that is subject to a DOD Addendum, the IRB shall require the appointment of one or more named, independent research monitor(s) who is a healthcare provider capable of overseeing the progress of the research protocol, and in particular, matters of subject management and safety. In addition, the Emory IRB may consider the appointment of a research monitor for minimal risk research. The research monitor must be independent of the investigation team and possess sufficient educational and professional experience to serve as a subject/patient advocate. The monitor may be an ombudsman or a member of the data safety monitoring board. The IRB must approve a written summary of the monitors’ duties, authorities, and responsibilities. If Emory is the sole site, or the lead or coordinating site for the DOD Research, an IRB representative must communicate with research monitors to confirm their duties, authorities, and responsibilities.

Depending on the nature of the research, the IRB may require that the research monitor perform some or all of the following tasks:

(a) Assess one of more of the following study activities: subject recruitment; subject enrollment; data collection; or data storage and analysis.
(b) Discuss research progress with the PI.
(c) Interview subjects.
(d) Consult on individual cases.
(e) Evaluate adverse event reports.

In all cases, research monitors shall have the following responsibilities and authority: (i) to promptly report discrepancies or problems to the IRB; (ii) to stop a research study in progress; (iii) to remove individual subjects from a study; (iv) to take whatever steps are necessary to protect the safety and well-being of research subjects until the IRB can assess the monitor’s report on an issue.
Applicable Regulations:

DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 4.4.3.
51 REVIEW OF RESEARCH PROTOCOLS INVOLVING VULNERABLE POPULATIONS

POLICY:

In Research protocols that are likely to include Human Subjects who are likely to be vulnerable to coercion or undue influence, the Emory IRB must ensure that appropriate additional safeguards are employed to protect the Human Subjects’ rights and welfare.

PROCEDURES:

Types of Vulnerable Populations: The following types of Human Subjects populations are considered to be Vulnerable Populations: (a) Pregnant Women; (b) human Fetuses and Neonates; (c) Prisoners; (d) Children; (d) Wards of the State; and (e) cognitively impaired persons. In certain Research protocols, special classes of Human Subjects also may be considered Vulnerable Populations that require additional protections, e.g., comatose subjects, terminally ill subjects, elderly and aged persons, minorities, students, employees, and international Research subjects.

Review by Emory IRB: When the IRB reviews Research that involves categories of participants who are considered to be Vulnerable Populations, the review process will include one or more individuals who are knowledgeable about or experienced in working with these participants.

General Additional Safeguards: In considering Research protocols that involve Vulnerable Populations, the Emory IRB, in addition to employing its typical standards for review of Research protocols, also shall determine, and document its determinations in appropriate meeting minutes or review documents, whether the involvement of the Vulnerable Populations in the Research protocol is justified and whether the Research protocol minimizes risks to Human Subjects who are in these Vulnerable Populations. In making these determinations, the Emory IRB shall consider the following factors:

- Whether the PI provided sufficient justification for the inclusion of members from a Vulnerable Population as Human Subjects;
- Whether the PI provided a plan for protecting the rights of the Vulnerable Population from possible coercion or undue influence;
- The nature and degree of risk to the Vulnerable Population;
- The condition of the particular Vulnerable Population involved;
- The nature and level of anticipated benefits to the Vulnerable Population;
- The thoroughness of the presentation through the informed consent process of relevant risk and benefits to the Vulnerable Population;
The nature and level of any monetary payments or other incentives to the **Vulnerable Population**, and whether such payments/incentives may constitute an undue inducement;

The nature of the proposed safeguards to be employed in the **Research** protocol and whether these safeguards are adequate to protect the **Vulnerable Population**;

Whether minorities receive an equal share of the benefits of the **Research** protocol and do not bear a disproportionate share of the burden; and

Whether the possibility of exploitation of the **Vulnerable Population** exists, and the steps that have been taken to reduce or eliminate it.

**Additional Safeguards Specific to Certain Vulnerable Populations**: 45 CFR Part 46, Subparts B, C and D provide extra protections for the following specific **Vulnerable Populations**:

- **Subpart B**: Additional Protections for Pregnant Women, Human Fetuses and Neonates Involved in Research
- **Subpart C**: Additional Protections pertaining to Biomedical and Behavioral Research Involving Prisoners as Subjects
- **Subpart D**: Additional Protections for Children Involved as Subjects in Research

The specific additional protections that are required for each of these specific **Vulnerable Populations** are set forth below in the following P&Ps. The Emory IRB will require the additional protections described in the P&Ps named below for all research reviewed by the Emory IRB, provided, however, that for research which is not federally funded or which is not subject to FDA regulations, then review by consultants selected by the IRB, shall be substituted for any review by a federal agency or official required in those P&Ps.

- **Research Involving Children – Additional Protections**
- **Research Involving Wards of the State – Additional Protections**
- **Research Involving Prisoners – Additional Protections**
- **Research Involving Pregnant Women, Human Fetuses & Neonates – Additional Protections**

**Research Subject to a DOD Addendum**: Research subject to a **DOD Addendum** that affects vulnerable classes of subjects (e.g., fetuses, pregnant women, human in vitro fertilization, prisoners or children) shall meet the protections of 45 CFR Part 46, Subparts B, C, and D. Actions authorizing or requiring any action by an official of the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) shall instead require action by the Director, Defense Research and Engineering.

**Applicable Regulations**:
45 CFR §§ 46.201-.207; .301-.306; .401-.409
21 CFR §§ 50.50 -.56.
42 U.S.C. § 298; Public Health Service Act § 498A
DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 4.4.1.
52  **RESEARCH INVOLVING CHILDREN – ADDITIONAL PROTECTIONS**

**POLICY:**

In reviewing *Research* that involves *Children* the Emory IRB shall ensure that the *Research* complies with the applicable requirements of 45 CFR Part 46, Subpart D or 21 CFR Part 50, Subpart D.

**PROCEDURES:**

**Additional Protections for Specific Vulnerable Populations – Children.** The additional protections set forth in this section must be followed for *Research* protocols that include *Children* as *Human Subjects*.

**Limits on Exemption and Exempt Review:** *Research* protocols involving *Children* shall not be eligible for exemption from IRB review pursuant to 45 CFR Section 46.101(b)(2) concerning *Research* involving survey or interview procedures or observations of public behavior, except for *Research* involving the observation of public behavior when the investigators do not participate in the activities being observed.

**IRB Determination of Applicable Category Required:** In addition to other responsibilities assigned to the IRBs for Research Protocol review, in conducting review of proposed Research involving Children, the IRB may approve only Research involving Children that fits all of the requirements set forth below for four permissible categories. Depending on the type of *Research* being reviewed, the Emory IRB, in addition to performing its standard review, shall be required to make the following additional findings:

1) **Minimal Risk Research:** *Minimal Risk Research* is *Research* that does not involve physical or emotional risk greater than that ordinarily encountered in daily life or during the performance of routine physical or psychological examination or tests.

   To approve a *Research* protocol of this type, the Emory IRB must determine and document in its meeting minutes and/or review documents that the protocol:

   - Is being reviewed pursuant to 45 CFR Section 46.404, and pursuant to 21 CFR Section 50.51 if an FDA-regulated product is involved;
   - Presents only *Minimal Risk* to the *Children* who are enrolled; and
   - Provides adequately for obtaining the *Assent* of the *Children* and the *Permission* of their *Parents* or *Legal Guardians*, as set forth in this P&P entitled *Research Involving Children – Additional Protections* and P&P entitled *Legally Authorized Representatives & Surrogate Consent*. The IRB shall determine if adequate provisions attaining *Assent* are included and shall decide if the *Permission* of one *Parent* or *Legal Guardian* is sufficient to safeguard the *Child* or if the *Permission* of both *Parents* is required.

2) *Research* with more than *Minimal Risk* that Presents Prospect of Direct Benefit to
Participants: To approve a protocol of this type, the Emory IRB must determine and document in its meeting minutes and/or review documents that the protocol:

- Is being reviewed pursuant to 45 CFR Section 46.405 and pursuant to 21 CFR Section 50.52 if an FDA regulated product is involved;

- Poses risk to the subjects that is justified by the anticipated benefit to the subject (by an intervention or procedure, or by a monitoring procedure that is likely to contribute to the participant’s well-being);

- Presents anticipated benefit in relation to the risk that is at least as favorable to the subject as that provided by available alternative approaches; and

- Provides for obtaining the Assent of the Children and the permission of their Parents or Legal Guardians, as set forth in this P&P entitled Research Involving Children – Additional Protections and P&P entitled Legally Authorized Representatives & Surrogate Consent. The IRB shall determine if adequate provisions attaining Assent are included and shall decide if the Permission of one Parent or Legal Guardian is sufficient to safeguard the Child or if the Permission of both Parents is required.

3) Research Involving More than Minimal Risk and No Prospect of Direct Benefit to Individual Subjects, but Likely to Yield Generalizable Knowledge about the Subject’s Disorder or Condition: To approve this type of Research protocol, the Emory IRB must determine, and document in its meeting minutes and/or review documents, that:

- The Research protocol is being reviewed pursuant to 45 CFR Section 46.406 and pursuant to 21 CFR 50.53 if an FDA-regulated product is involved;

- That the risk of the Research protocol is just a minor increase over Minimal Risk;

- That the intervention or procedure presents experiences to the subject that are reasonably commensurate with those inherent in their actual, or expected medical, dental, psychological, social or educational situations;

- That the intervention or procedure is likely to yield generalizable knowledge about the subject’s disorder or condition which is of vital importance for the understanding or amelioration of the disorder or conditions; and

- That the Research protocol provides adequately for obtaining the assent of the children and the Permission of their Parents or Legal Guardians, as set forth in P&Ps Research Involving Children – Additional Protections and Legally Authorized Representatives & Surrogate Consent. Both Parents must give their Permission unless one Parent is deceased, unknown, incompetent or not reasonably available, or when only one Parent has legal responsibility for the care and custody of the Child.
4) **Research** that Cannot be Approved under 45 CFR Section 46.404, 405 or 406, or 21 CFR 50.51, 52, or 53 if an FDA-regulated product is involved, but that Presents a Reasonable Opportunity to Further the Understanding, Prevention or Alleviation of a Serious Problem Affecting the Health or Welfare of *Children*: This type of **Research** protocol requires approval by both the IRB and OHRP if the protocol is subject to DHHS regulation, and by the FDA, if the **Research** protocol involves an item regulated by the FDA.

**IRB Approval**: Before an IRB can submit a **Research** protocol in this category to OHRP and/or to the FDA for review, it must make and document in meeting minutes and/or review documents the following findings:

- That the **Research** protocol is appropriately being reviewed pursuant to 45 CFR Section 46.407 and pursuant to 21 CFR Section 50.54 if an FDA regulated product is involved.

- That the **Research** protocol does **not** meet the conditions for approval under 45 CFR Sections 46.404, 405 or 406, or under 21 CFR Sections 40.51, .52 or .53 if an FDA regulated product is involved.

- That the **Research** protocol provides adequately for obtaining the assent of the *Children* and the **Permission** of their *Parents* or *Legal Guardians*, as set forth in this P&P entitled **Research Involving Children – Additional Protections** and P&P entitled **Legally Authorized Representatives & Surrogate Consent**. Both *Parents* must give their **Permission** unless one *Parent* is deceased, unknown, incompetent or not reasonably available, or when only one *Parent* has legal responsibility for the care and custody of the *Child*.

- That the **Research** protocol, including all **Assent** and informed consent forms, comply with all with all other applicable regulatory requirements set forth in 45 CFR Sections 46.111, .408 and .409, and in 21 CFR Sections 50.55, .56 and 56.111, and any changes to the protocol and consent/**Assent** documents requested by the IRB are incorporated.

**OHRP Submission for 407 Research Subject to HHS Regulation**: In order for OHRP to determine whether review under Section 46.407 may proceed, the IRB in conjunction with the PI shall submit the following documents (in both hard copy and electronic format, if possible) to OHRP, Division of Policy and Assurances, Department of Health and Human Services, 1101 Wootton Parkway, Suite 200, Rockville, MD 20852:

- Documentation of required IRB findings that protocol does not qualify for review under Sections 46.404, 405 or 406, but does meet review requirements of 407.
- Name of institution and IRB, along with assurance number for IRB.
- IRB contact person’s name, title, phone number, fax number, mailing address and email address.
- **Title of protocol and name of PI.**
- **HHS application number and name of funding agency.**
- **Relevant HHS grant application or proposal.**
- **Most current version of protocol and grant application submitted to and reviewed by the IRB and modified by the principal investigator if required by the IRB.**
- **Most current version of parental permission/Assent documents submitted to and reviewed by the IRB and modified by the PI if required by the IRB.**
- **Relevant IRB minutes and correspondence.**

**OHRP and FDA Approval of 407 Research that is Federally Supported:** Expert panels established by OHRP and FDA (if a FDA regulated item is involved) must review and approve Research in this category after seeking public comments on the research through the federal register and holding a meeting of the panel.

**Non-Federally Supported 407 Research and Does Not Involve FDA Regulated Products:** If the IRB finds that Research that is not subject to HHS jurisdiction cannot be approved under 45 CFR Section 46.404, 405 or 406 (or Research subject to 21 CFR 50.51, .52 or .53) but presents a reasonable opportunity to further the understanding, prevention or alleviation of a serious problem affecting the health or welfare of Children, the IRB shall seek the opinion of Consultants before making its final decision whether to approve the project.

**Parental or Legal Guardian Permission:** The Emory IRB must determine that adequate provision have been made for soliciting the permission of each Child’s Parents or Legal Guardians. Parents or Legal Guardians must be provided with the basic elements of consent, as well as any additional elements of informed consent as the IRB deems necessary, as set forth in P&P entitled Informed Consent). Permission by Parents or Legal Guardians must be documented in accordance with 45 CFR Section 46.117, and 21 CFR 50.27 if an FDA regulated product is involved.

**Research Requiring Only One Parent’s Permission:** If the Research into which the Child is to be enrolled involves no more than Minimal Risk or if the Research involves greater than Minimal Risk but presents the prospect of direct benefit to the individual Human Subject participants, then, if the Child is in the legal care/custody of his/her Parents, the IRB may find that the Permission of only one of the Child’s Parents is sufficient to safeguard the interests of the Child.

If the Child is not in the legal care/custody of his/her Parents, then the Child’s Legal Guardian may sign the informed consent/Permission documentation; provided, however, that if the Child is a Ward of the State, then the procedures set forth in the P&P entitled Research Involving Wards of the State – Additional Protections must be followed. A signed statement should be obtained from the Legally Authorized Representative certifying that he/she is the Legally Authorized Representative and copies of appropriate supporting documentation (e.g., copy of court order) also should be obtained and kept with the certification.

**Research Requiring Both Parents’ Permission:** If the Research into which the Child is to be enrolled is presents greater than Minimal Risk and offers no prospect of direct benefit to the
individual Human Subject participants, or if the Research meets the requirements of 45 CFR §46.407 (i.e., Research not otherwise approvable, which presents an opportunity to understand, prevent or alleviate a serious problem affecting the health or welfare of Children), then if the Child is in the legal care/custody of his/her Parents, the informed consent/Permission documents should be signed by both Parents unless one Parent is deceased, unknown, legally incompetent or not reasonably available, or when only one Parent has legal responsibility for the care and custody of the Child.

If the Child is not in the legal care/custody of his/her Parents, then the Child’s Legal Guardian should sign the informed consent/Permission documents; provided, however, that if the Child is a Ward of the State, then the procedures set forth in the P&P entitled Research Involving Wards of the State – Additional Protections must be followed. A signed statement should be obtained from the Legal Guardian certifying that he/she is the Legal Guardian and copies of appropriate supporting documentation (e.g., copy of court order) also should be obtained and kept with the certification.

Research Involving Medical Treatment for Pregnancy, Childbirth, Pregnancy Prevention: If the Research into which a Child who is not an Emancipated Minor is enrolling involves lawful surgical or medical treatment which may be recommended, prescribed or directed by a duly licensed physician, then a female Child, regardless of age or marital status, may sign informed consent documents for herself in connection with Pregnancy, or the prevention thereof, or childbirth; provided, however, that certain notice requirements may apply with regard to any Research concerning abortion procedures.

Research Involving Treatment for Drug Abuse or Certain Venereal Disease: If the Research into which the Child who is not an Emancipated Minor is enrolling involves lawful treatment for drug abuse or for the treatment of syphilis, gonorrhea and/or chancroid, then the Child may sign informed consent documents for himself/herself.

Research Involving Medical Treatment: If the Research into which the Child who is not an Emancipated Minor is enrolling involves lawful surgical or medical treatment which may be recommended, prescribed or directed by a duly licensed physician, then the following persons may give consent/permission:

Any Parent, whether an Adult or a Minor for his/her non-Emancipated Minor Child.

Any person temporarily standing in the place of a Parent, whether formally serving or not, for a non-Emancipated Minor under his/her care; provided, however, that if the non-Emancipated Minor is a Ward of the State, then the provisions of the P&P entitled: Research Involving Wards of the State – Additional Protections must be followed.

Research Not Involving Medical Treatment: If the Research into which a Child who is not an Emancipated Minor is enrolling does not involve lawful surgical or medical treatment recommended, prescribed or directed by a duly licensed physician, then the following persons may give permission:

Any Parent, whether an Adult or a Minor, for his/her non-Emancipated Minor offspring;
Any Legal Guardian of the Child; provided, however, that if the Child offspring is a Ward of the State, then the provisions of the P&P entitled Research Involving Wards of the State – Additional Protections must be followed. A signed statement should be obtained from the Legal Guardian certifying that he/she is the Legal Guardian and copies of appropriate supporting documentation (e.g., copy of court order) also should be obtained and kept with the certification.

Documentation in IRB Records of Parental Permission Requirements: The IRB shall document its determination of whether Permission must be obtained from one or both Parents in the IRB meeting minutes (for Full Committee Review), specific study records (for Expedited Review), and in the approval letter to the PI.

Waiver of Parental Permission: The IRB may waive the requirement for obtaining the Permission of a Parent/Legal Guardian if:

The Research is not FDA Regulated; and

The Research meets the requirements for waiver set forth in 45 CFR Section 46.116(d)(1) – (4); and

The IRB determines that the protocol is designed for conditions or a subject population for which Permission from a Parent or Legal Guardian is not a reasonable requirement to protect the subjects (e.g., neglected or abused Children) AND an appropriate mechanism for protecting the Children who participate is substituted, and further provided that the waiver is not inconsistent with federal, state or local law. (NOTE: The choice of an appropriate substitute mechanism will depend upon the nature and the purpose of the Research activities, the risk and anticipated benefit to the subjects, and the subjects’ age, maturity, status and condition.)

Assent from Children: In general, a Minor who is participating in Research should actively show his/her willingness to participate in the Research, rather than just complying with directions to participate without resistance. When judging whether Children are capable of Assent and evaluating the Assent process to be used, the IRB shall take into account the ages, maturity and psychological state of the Children who are involved. The Emory IRB has the discretion to judge Children’s capacity to Assent on the basis of the characteristics of the group of Children who will be participating in the Research, or on an individual basis. The Emory IRB also may determine whether, for a particular Research protocol, the decision as to whether assent should be obtained should be made on a child-by-child basis; for example, a therapeutic study for which some Children may be too sick on a given day to focus on the information presented by the Researchers. In such cases, the Emory IRB shall provide the criteria for Children from whom assent should be obtained and the criteria for Children from whom assent need not be obtained. The PI or other qualified study team members will apply these criteria to each individual child.

If the IRB determines (a) that the capability of some or all of the Children who will be enrolled is so limited that they cannot reasonably be consulted; or (b) that the intervention or the procedures involved in the Research hold out a prospect of direct benefit that is important to the health or well-being of the Children and is available only in the context of the Research,
then the IRB may determine that the **Assent** of the **Children** is not a necessary condition for proceeding with the **Research**.

The IRB, as appropriate, shall document the following in meeting minutes for protocols reviewed by **Full Committee Review** or the specific study record for protocols reviewed by **Expedited Review**, whether subjects, as a group, are capable of **Assenting**; whether **Assent** is or is not required for the **Research** to proceed; if **Assent** is required, whether and how **Assent** must be documented; or if subjects are not capable of **Assenting**, whether **Assent** may be waived and how the protocol meets the requirements for waiver.

**Waiver of Assent**: Even though the IRB determines that subjects are capable of giving **Assent**, the IRB may waive the requirement that **Assent** be obtained under circumstances in which informed consent may be waived under 45 CFR Section 46.116. If the IRB after **Full Committee Review** determines by majority vote that **Assent** may be waived, then it will document how the protocol meets all requirements for waiver in the meeting minutes.

**Process for Obtaining Assent from Children**: The Emory IRB presumes that **Children** below the age of 6 years and any **Children** with a cognitive impairment will not be required to provide **Assent** prior to participation in **Research** provided that their **Parent(s)** or **Legally Guardian** provide(s) **Permission** for the **Children** to participate in the **Research**. Subject to the specific circumstances of an individual **Child**, as described above, the Emory IRB uses the general principles below regarding **Assent**:

The Emory IRB requires that **Children** between the ages of 6 to 11 years be provided with an explanation of the **Research** protocol and that their verbal **Assent** to participate is obtained. The verbal assent must be documented in the research records. **Children** from 11 up to and until 18 years of age must be provided with a written **Assent** document and their signed **Assent** obtained prior to enrollment in any **Research** (unless documentation of Assent is waived by the IRB). It is possible that a subject may come from another state where the age of majority is not 18; in that case, their state’s law will determine whether the subject gives assent or consent.

**Assent Template**: A template of the Emory IRB **Assent** document is available from the following website: [www.irb.emory.edu](http://www.irb.emory.edu).

PIs should ensure that the **Assent** form is age appropriate and study specific, taking into account the typical **Child’s** experience and level of understanding. The **Assent** form should include essential about the **Research** protocol including: (a) a description of why the **Research** is being conducted; (b) a description of what will happen and for how long or how often it will happen; (c) an explanation that it is up to the **Child** to participate and that the **Child** may refuse to participate; (d) an explanation of whether the procedures in the **Research** will hurt and if so for how long and how often; (e) a description of what other choices the **Child** may have instead of participating in the **Research**; (f) a description of any good things that might happen from the **Research**; (g) a description of any compensation that the study participant will receive; and (h) a description of how and of whom the **Child** may ask questions regarding the **Research**. The form should be drafted in a format that takes into consideration the age(s) of the **Child** who may participate in the **Research**.

**Inconsistency Between Parent/Legal Guardian Permission and Child Assent**: In general, a
Child’s refusal to Assent to participate in a Research protocol will override Permission granted by the Parent/Legal Guardian for participation. However, the IRB may consider a request to waive Assent on an individual subject basis in situations in the Parent/Legal Guardian has given permission for participation, but the Child has refused Assent.

When a Child Subject Becomes an Adult: When a child who was enrolled in research with parental or Legal Guardian’s permission subsequently reaches the legal age of consent to the procedures involved in ongoing research, the investigator should seek and obtain informed consent from the now-adult subject for any ongoing interactions or interventions.

For AVAMC Research, research involving children must not be conducted by VA investigators while on official duty, or at VA-approved off-site facilities unless a waiver has been granted by the Chief Research and Development Officer.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR §§ 46.101-.102; 46.111; 46.201-.207; .301-.306; .401-.409
21 CFR §§ 50.3(q); 5050 - .56; & 56.111.
42 U.S.C. § 298; Public Health Service Act § 498a
53 RESEARCH INVOLVING WARDS OF THE STATE – ADDITIONAL PROTECTIONS

POLICY:

In reviewing Research that involves Wards of the State the Emory IRB shall ensure that the Research complies with the applicable requirements of 45 CFR Part 46, Subpart D.

DEFINED TERMS:

Wards of the State: Children who are under the care of a governmental agency either directly or through placement in an individual or institutional foster care setting.

PROCEDURES:

Additional Protections for Specific Vulnerable Populations – Wards of the State: In addition to the specific protections set forth in the P&P entitled Research Involving Children – Additional Protections regarding Research involving Children as Human Subjects, the following additional protections also must be followed for Research protocols that include Children who are Wards of the State as Human Subjects:

The governmental agency that has control of the Child provides written documentation evidencing its legal authority to give permission for the Child’s participation in the Research protocol and authorizing a named agency representative to sign appropriate Permission and HIPAA Authorization forms on behalf of the child; and

If the Research protocol either (a) involves greater than Minimal Risk with no prospect of direct benefit to individual subjects but is likely to yield generalizable knowledge about the subjects’ disorder or condition; or (b) is Research that must be approved under 45 CFR Section 46.406 or .407, or 21 CFR Section 50.53 or .54, then in order for Wards of the State to be considered for enrollment, the IRB must:

Determine that the Research protocol is related to the subjects’ status as Wards of the State; or it must be conducted in schools, camps, hospitals, institutions or similar setting in which the majority of Children involved as subjects are not Wards of the State;

Appoint an advocate for each Child who is a Ward of the State, and the advocate shall meet the following qualifications and have the following responsibilities:

The advocate will serve in addition to any other individual acting on behalf of the Child as Legal Guardian or in loco parentis.

A single person may serve as advocate for more than one Child;

The advocate must be an individual who has the background and experience to act in and agrees to act in the best interest of the child for
the duration of the Child’s participation in the Research protocol.

The advocate must not be associated in any way with the clinical investigation, the Investigators or the guardian organization.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR §§ 46.102(l); 46.201-.207; .301-.306; & .401-.409
21 CFR §§ 50.50 -.56.
42 U.S.C. § 298; Public Health Service Act § 498A
54  RESEARCH INVOLVING PRISONERS – ADDITIONAL PROTECTIONS

POLICY:

In reviewing Research that involves Prisoners the Emory IRB shall ensure that the Research complies with the applicable requirements of 45 CFR Part 46, Subpart C.

For Research subject to a DOD Addendum, neither Prisoners of War nor Captured or Detained Personnel may be Research subjects. This prohibition does not apply to research involving investigational drugs and devices when the same products would be offered to US military personnel in the same location for the same condition.

PROCEDURES:

Additional Protections for Specific Vulnerable Populations – Prisoners: The additional protections set forth in this section must be followed for Research protocols that include Prisoners as Human Subjects.

Composition of the IRB: When reviewing any Research protocol involving Prisoners as Human Subjects, the Emory IRB shall ensure that in addition to the composition requirements set forth in the P&P entitled IRB Membership, the following composition requirements are met:

- A majority of the Emory IRB members, excluding members who are Prisoners or Prisoner Representatives, will not be associated with the prisons involved.

- One member of the Emory IRB shall be a Prisoner or a Prisoner Representative. A Prisoner Representative is an IRB member who has appropriate background and experience that includes a close working knowledge, understanding and appreciation of prison conditions from the Prisoner’s perspective.

- The Prisoner or Prisoner Representative must be present, either in-person or by speakerphone, at any meeting of the Emory IRB for full board review of new Research protocols involving Prisoners and amendments adding Prisoners. For Continuing Reviews at full board, the IRB must document the participation of the Prisoner Representative in the review, but the Prisoner Representative does not have to be present. For expedited reviews of Research involving Prisoners, the participation of the Prisoner Representative must be obtained and documented.

- The fact that the Emory IRB meets the compositional requirements for the review of a Research protocol involving Prisoners will be documented in the meeting minutes at which the Research protocol is reviewed.

- The Emory IRB staff shall notify OHRP of any change in the Emory IRB Committee rosters that result from the addition of a Prisoner or Prisoner Representative as a member of an Emory IRB Committee. IRB staff shall also keep on file a copy of the Prisoner or Prisoner Representative’s curriculum vitae or other documentation that he/she possesses the necessary qualifications to serve in this capacity.
The Prisoner Representative must be a member of the IRB. The Prisoner Representative may be listed as an alternate member who serves as a voting member when needed. The Prisoner Representative must review research involving prisoners, focusing on the requirements of Subpart C. S/he must receive all review materials pertaining to the research, just as the primary reviewer does. The Prisoner Representative must be present at a convened meeting when the research involving prisoners is reviewed. If the prisoner representative is not present, research involving prisoners cannot be reviewed or approved. The Prisoner Representative may attend the meeting by speakerphone, video conference, or webinar, as long as s/he is able to participate in the meeting as if s/he were present in person at the meeting.

The Prisoner Representative must present his or her review either orally or in writing at the convened meeting of the IRB when the research involving prisoners is reviewed.

**Type of Review:**

Minor modifications to research may be reviewed using the expedited procedure. Modifications involving more than a minor change reviewed by the convened IRB must use the same procedures for initial review, including the responsibility of the Prisoner Representative to review the modification and participate in the meeting.

Continuing review must use the same procedures as for initial review, including the responsibility of the Prisoner Representative to review the continuing review materials and to participate in the meeting as described above. If no participants have been enrolled, the research may receive continuing review using the expedited procedure under expedited category #8.

Research involving interaction with prisoners reviewed may be reviewed by the expedited procedure (except for DOD supported Research involving Prisoners of War), if a determination is made that the research involves no greater than minimal risk for the prison population being studied. The Prisoner Representative must concur with the determination that the research involves no greater than minimal risk. The Prisoner Representative must review the research as a reviewer, designated by the Chair or as a consultant. This may be as the sole reviewer or in addition to another reviewer, as appropriate. Review of modifications and continuing review must use the same procedures for initial review using this expedited procedure including the responsibility of the Prisoner Representative.

For research that does not involve interaction with prisoners (e.g., existing data, record reviews) reviewed by the expedited procedure: this research may be reviewed by the expedited procedure, if a determination is made that the research involves no greater than minimal risk for the prison population being studied. Review by a Prisoner Representative is not required. The Prisoner Representative may review the research as a reviewer or consultant if designated by the IRB Chair. Review of modifications and continuing review must use the same procedures as initial review.

*Exempt* review procedures may not be used for research involving prisoners.
If a participant becomes a prisoner while enrolled in a research study that was not reviewed according to Subpart C (see section below on Research Subject to a DOD Addendum below for specific requirements for those studies)

The IRB shall:

- Confirm that the participant meets the definition of a “Prisoner”;
- Ensure that the PI terminates enrollment of the subject, or shall review the research under Subpart C if it is feasible for the participant to remain in the study and the PI does not wish to withdraw the subject from the research. Before requiring that the PI terminate the enrollment of the incarcerated participant, the IRB should consider the risks associated with termination of the subject in the study. If the participant cannot be terminated for health or safety reasons, the IRB should advise the PI to keep the subject enrolled in the study and it shall review the research under Subpart C. If some requirements of Subpart C cannot be met, but it is in the best interests of the subject to remain in the study, the subject shall remain enrolled and the IRB shall inform OHRP of the decision along with the justification. The IRB shall advise the PI to remove the participant from the study and to keep the participant on the study intervention under an alternate mechanism as necessary.
- Note: if a participant is incarcerated temporarily while enrolled in a study: if the temporary incarceration has no effect on the study, the participant shall remain enrolled. If the temporary incarceration has an effect on the study, the IRB shall handle the case according to the case set forth above.

The PI must:

- Immediately notify the Emory IRB and indicate whether the PI wishes to amend the protocol to permit the participation of the Prisoner or of Prisoners as a class.
- Immediately cease all Research interactions and interventions, including obtaining private information about the Human Subject who is now a Prisoner until Research protocol has been reviewed by the IRB in accordance with the requirements of the provision above entitled Findings that the Emory IRB Must Make Regarding the Research, UNLESS the PI provides written documentation to IRB Chair describing special circumstances that justify why it is in the Human Subject’s best interest to continue to remain in the Research protocol while the IRB undertakes the review process set forth in the aforesaid provision.
- Alternatively, if PI does not believe that Research protocol will meet review requirements for Research protocols involving Prisoners as Human Subjects, or if the Prisoner does not wish to continue participation, the PI may withdraw the Human Subject from Research protocol upon learning that Human Subject has become a Prisoner.

**Approvable Categories of Research Involving Prisoners as Subjects:** For any biomedical or behavioral Research protocols involving Prisoners, the Emory IRB must determine and document within its meeting minutes or study records that the Research meets the criteria for approval of research, and protocol falls into one of the categories of Research listed below. In addition, if the Research protocol is receiving HHS funding then the HHS Secretary also must determine that the proposed Research fits one of the following four categories of permissible Research or is eligible for the epidemiological waiver described below:

1) Study of possible causes, effects, and processes of incarceration and of criminal
behavior, provided the study presents no more than Minimal Risk for Research involving Prisoners, and no more than inconvenience to the Human Subject.

2) Study of prisons as institutional structures or of Prisoners as incarcerated persons provided that the study presents no more than Minimal Risk for Research involving Prisoners and no more than inconvenience to the Human Subjects.

3) Study of conditions particularly affecting Prisoners as a class (e.g., Research on a health problem that is more prevalent in prisons than elsewhere) provided that with regard to HHS-funded Research the HHS Secretary approves the study after consulting with experts in penology medicine and ethics and publishes a notice of the intent to approve the study in the Federal Register.

4) Study of practices, whether innovative or accepted, that have the intent and reasonable probability of improving the health or well-being of the Human Subject; provided however, that if the Research is HHS-funded and is of a type that requires that Prisoners be assigned to control groups that may not benefit from the Research, then the study may proceed only after the HHS Secretary approves the study after consulting with appropriate experts, including experts in penology medicine and ethics and publishing a notice of intent to approve the study in the Federal Register.

Prisoners should receive a copy of their signed consent form at the time of signing, unless the possession of the consent form might create a risk of breach of confidentiality for the subject that could result in indignity, stigmatization, or physical harm. Provisions should be made to allow the prisoner access to review a copy of their signed consent form at a later date (e.g., by keeping a copy at the research office and giving the subject the contact information he or she can use to request it later).

Epidemiology Waiver: The IRB does not have to make the finding that the Research fits one of the four categories described above if all of the criteria for the Epidemiology Waiver apply.

The HHS Secretary has waived the applicability of 45 CFR Section 46.305(a)(1) and 46.306(a)(2) for certain Research conducted or supported by HHS that involves epidemiologic studies that involve no more than Minimal Risk and no more than inconvenience to the participants that meet the following criteria:

- The sole purpose of the Research is (a) to describe the prevalence or incidence of a disease by identifying all cases; or (b) to study potential risk factor associations for a disease; and
- The IRB has approved the Research and fulfilled its duties under 45 CFR 46.305(a)(2)-(7) and determined and documented that: (a) the Research presents no more than Minimal Risk and no more than inconvenience to the Prisoner-subjects and; (b) Prisoners are not a particular focus of the Research.
- The waiver permits the conduct of Minimal Risk Research that does not otherwise fall within the categories set forth in 45 CFR Section 46.302(a)(2) and applies to research that uses epidemiologic methods such as interviews and collection of biological specimens.
Findings that the Emory IRB Must Make Regarding the Research: In addition to determining which of the permissible categories the Research fits, or invoking the epidemiology waiver, the Emory IRB must make the following determinations with regard to its review of any Research protocol involving Prisoners as Human Subjects and document justification for each of these findings within its meeting minutes or in the record of expedited review findings:

- Any possible advantages accruing to the Prisoner by participating in the Research, when compared to general living conditions, medical care, quality of food, amenities and opportunity for earning in prison, are not of such a magnitude that they would impair the Prisoner’s ability in the prison environment to weigh the risks of the Research against the value of the advantages;

- The risks involved in the Research are commensurate with risks that would be accepted by non-Prisoner Human Subject volunteers;

- The procedures for the selection of subjects within the prison are fair to all Prisoners and are not subject to arbitrary intervention by prison authorities or Prisoners;

- Any control subjects must be selected randomly from the group of available prisoners who meet the characteristics needed for the Research Protocol unless the PI provide the IRB with written justification for following some other selection procedure.

- The information regarding the Research protocol is presented in language that is understandable to the subject population.

- The Emory IRB receives adequate assurance that parole boards will not take into account a prisoner’s participation in the Research protocol in making decisions regarding parole, and each Prisoner is clearly informed in advance that participation in the Research protocol will have no effect on his/her parole;

- If the Emory IRB determines that there may be a need for follow-up examination or care of participants in the Research protocol after the end of participation, then the Research protocol must make adequate provision for such examination or care, taking into account the varying lengths of individual Prisoners’ sentences, and for informing participants of this fact.

Additional Federal Approval Requirements for Research Protocols Funded by HHS: If the Research that involves Prisoners is being funded by HHS, then in addition to the requirements for such Research specified above, the Emory IRB must certify to the HHS Secretary that it has carried out all of its required functions with regard to the review and oversight of Research involving Prisoners. To effect this certification, Emory University, through the IRB Chair, Director, or the IO, must send a certification letter to OHRP that meets the following requirements:

- Contains the name and address of institution at which study is being conducted.

- Contains the name of Research protocol.
Contains the name of any associated HHS grant application or proposal.

Contains a certification that the Emory IRB has reviewed the Research protocol and made the findings set forth in the provision above entitled Findings that the Emory IRB Must Make Regarding the Research.

Contains as an attachment a copy of the Research protocol approved by the Emory IRB; any associated HHS grant application or proposal; any Emory IRB application forms; any other information required or requested by the Emory IRB during the Emory IRB’s initial review.

The foregoing materials should be sent to OHRP at the following address: Attention: OHRP Prisoner Research Contact Person, Office for Human Research Protections, Dept of Health and Human Services, The Tower Bldg., 1101 Wootton Prkwy., Suite 200, Rockville, MD 20852. Upon receipt and review of materials listed above, OHRP will make a determination as to whether Research falls within an appropriate category, and if so, which category. OHRP also shall publish any notices regarding the Research in the Federal Register, as may be necessary.

NOTE: AVAMC Research involving Prisoners must not be conducted by VA investigators while on official duty, or at VA-approved off-site facilities unless a waiver has been granted by the Chief Research and Development Officer. If the waiver is granted, the Research must be in accordance with applicable federal regulations pertaining to Prisoners as Research subjects (see 45 CFR Part 46, Subpart C 46.301 – 46.306, Additional Protections Pertaining to Biomedical and Behavioral Research Involving Prisoners as Subjects).

Research Subject to a DOD Addendum:

Neither Prisoners of War, nor Captured or Detained Personnel may be subjects in Research subject to a DOD Addendum. This prohibition does not apply to research involving investigational drugs and devices when the same products would be offered to US military personnel in the same location for the same condition. In reviewing Research subject to a DOD Addendum that may involve Prisoners of War or Captured or Detained Personnel, the Emory IRB shall be apprised of the definition of the terms Prisoners of War and/or Captured or Detained Personnel that is used by the DOD unit supporting the Research, so that this definition may be correctly applied in evaluating the project.

When a participant becomes a prisoner on a Research study that is subject to a DOD Addendum: if the researcher asserts to the IRB that it is in the best interest of the prisoner-participant to continue to participate in the research while a prisoner, the IRB chair may determine that the prisoner-participant may continue to participate until the convened IRB can review this request to approve a change in the research protocol and until the organizational official and DoD Component office review the IRB’s approval to change the research protocol. Otherwise, the IRB chair must require that all research interactions and interventions with the prisoner-subject (including obtaining identifiable private information) cease until the convened IRB can review this request to approve a change in the research protocol. The convened IRB, upon receipt of notification that a
previously enrolled human participant has become a prisoner, must promptly re-review the research protocol to ensure that the rights and wellbeing of the human subject, now a prisoner, are not in jeopardy. The IRB should consult with a subject matter expert having the expertise of a prisoner representative if the IRB reviewing the research protocol does not have a prisoner representative. If the prisoner-participant can continue to consent to participate and is capable of meeting the research protocol requirements, the terms of the prisoner-participant’s confinement does not inhibit the ethical conduct of the research, and there are no other significant issues preventing the research involving human participants from continuing as approved, the convened IRB may approve a change in the study to allow this prisoner-participant to continue to participate in the research. This approval is limited to the individual prisoner-participant and does not allow recruitment of prisoners as participants.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR §§ 46.101; 46.107; 46.201-.207; .301-.306; .401-.409
SECNAVINST 3900.39(D) Para. 6(a)3, 6(a)6 & 6(a)8; DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 4.4.2; 10 U.S.C. 980.
VHA Handbook 1200.05
55 RESEARCH INVOLVING PREGNANT WOMEN, HUMAN FETUSES AND NEONATES – ADDITIONAL PROTECTIONS

POLICY:

In reviewing Research that involves Pregnant Women, human Fetuses or Neonates, the Emory IRB shall ensure that the Research complies with the applicable requirements of 45 CFR Part 46, Subpart B.

PROCEDURES:

Additional Protections for Specific Vulnerable Population – Pregnant Women: Research protocols that involve the participation of Pregnant Women as Human Subjects must meet the following additional protection requirements:

Where scientifically appropriate, preclinical studies have been conducted, including studies on Pregnant animals, that provide data for assessing potential risks to Pregnant Women and Fetuses.

Where scientifically appropriate, clinical studies have been conducted, including clinical studies on non-Pregnant Women, that provide data for assessing potential risks to Pregnant Women and Fetuses.

Any risk in the Research is the least possible risk for achieving the objectives of the Research.

Any risk to the Fetus from the Research is caused solely by interventions or procedures that hold the prospect of direct benefit for the Pregnant Woman or the Fetus, or if there is no prospect of such direct benefit, then the Research poses only Minimal Risk to the Fetus and the Research’s purpose is the development of important biomedical knowledge that cannot be obtained by any other means.

Only the Pregnant Woman’s informed consent (and not the informed consent of the Pregnant Woman and the father of the Fetus) must be obtained in accordance with these P&Ps if the Research meets the following criteria:

It holds the prospect of direct benefit to the Pregnant Woman or to both the Pregnant Woman and the Fetus; or

It does not hold the prospect of direct benefit for the Pregnant Woman or the Fetus, but the risk to the Fetus is no greater than minimal; and the purpose of the Research is the development of important biomedical knowledge that cannot be obtained by any other means.

Informed consent of both the Pregnant Woman and the Fetus’ father must be obtained in accordance with these P&Ps if the Research holds out the prospect of direct benefit solely to the Fetus; provided, however, that the father’s consent does not have to be
obtained if he is unable to consent because he is unavailable; incompetent; temporarily incapacitated; or if the Pregnancy resulted from rape or incest.

If the Pregnant Woman is a minor, then, as applicable, informed consent/assent/permission must be obtained in accordance with the P&Ps entitled Research Involving Children – Additional Protections and Legally Authorized Representatives & Surrogate Consent.

Any person from whom informed consent is required under this section must be fully informed regarding the reasonably foreseeable impact of the Research on the Fetus or Neonate.

Individuals who are engaged in the Research protocol will play no part in any decision regarding: (a) the timing, method and procedures used to terminate the Pregnancy; and/or (b) determining the viability of a Neonate.

No monetary or other inducements or incentives may be offered to terminate the Pregnancy for purposes of the Research protocol.

Research Involving Pregnant Women or Fetuses that Does not Meet the Requirements Set Forth Immediately Above: If the IRB determines that a Research protocol does not meet the requirements of the provision above entitled Additional Protections for Specific Vulnerable Population – Pregnant Women, then the Research protocol will be eligible for conduct or funding by HHS only if the IRB determines that:

The Research presents a reasonable opportunity to further the understanding, prevention or alleviation of a serious problem affecting the health or welfare of Pregnant Women or Fetuses; and

The HHS Secretary, in consultation with a panel of experts, makes the findings set forth at 45 CFR § 46.207(b).

Additional Protections for Specific Vulnerable Populations – Neonates: The following additional protections must be followed for Research protocols that include Neonates:

Nonviable Neonates: Nonviable Neonates may be involved in Research if the IRB, either through Full Committee or Expedited Review, determines and documents that all of the following conditions are met:

Each individual engaged in the Research will have no part in determining the Viability of a Neonate;

Vital functions of the Neonate will not be artificially maintained (e.g., for the purpose of the research);

The Research will not terminate the heartbeat or respiration of the Neonate;

There will be no added risk to the Neonate resulting from the Research;
The purpose of the *Research* is the development of important biomedical knowledge that cannot be obtained by other means;

Where scientifically appropriate, preclinical and clinical studies have been conducted that provide data for assessing potential risk of the *Research* to *Neonates*;

Each individual providing informed consent for the *Research* is fully informed about the reasonably foreseeable impact of the *Research* on the *Neonate*; and

The following requirements concerning informed consent are met:

- Informed consent is obtained from both *Parents* of the *Neonate*; provided, however, that if either *Parent* is unable to consent because he/she is unavailable, incompetent, or temporarily incapacitated, then the informed consent of one parent of a *Nonviable Neonate* will suffice, and further provided that the father’s consent does not need to be obtained if the *Pregnancy* resulted from rape or incest;

- No waiver or alternation of the elements of informed consent may be granted by the IRB; and

- The consent of *Legally Authorized Representatives* of either or both *Parents* of the *Neonate* is not sufficient to provide informed consent.

*Neonates of Uncertain Viability: Neonates* of uncertain *Viability* may not be involved in *Research* unless the IRB determines that the following requirements are met:

The *Research* holds out the prospect of enhancing the probability of survival of the *Neonate* to the point of viability and any risk is the least possible for achieving that objective; or the purpose of the *Research* is the development of important biomedical knowledge that cannot be obtained by other means and there will be no added risk to the *Neonate* resulting from the *Research*; and

Where scientifically appropriate, preclinical and clinical studies have been conducted that provide data for assessing potential risk of the *Research* to *Neonates*;

The *Neonate* has been determined to be of uncertain *Viability*; provided, however, that individuals engaged in the *Research* have no part in determining the *Viability* of a *Neonate*;

Each individual providing informed consent for the *Research* is fully informed about the reasonably foreseeable impact of the *Research* on the *Neonate*; and

The following informed consent requirements are met:
The legally effective informed consent of either Parent of the Neonate is obtained; provided, however, that if neither Parent is able to consent because of unavailability, incompetence or temporary incapacity, then legally effective informed consent of either Parent’s Legally Authorized Representative may be obtained, except that the consent of the father or his Legally Authorized Representative need not be obtained if the Pregnancy resulted from rape or incest.

**Viable Neonates:** A Neonate, after Delivery, that has been determined to be Viable may be included in Research only to the extent permitted under the general P&Ps concerning the involvement of Children in Human Subjects Research.

**Additional Protections for Specific Vulnerable Population – Research Involving the Dead Fetus or Fetal Material after Delivery:** Research protocols that involve the Dead Fetus or Fetal Material after Delivery must meet the following additional protection requirements:

The Research must be conducted in accordance with any applicable federal, state or local laws and regulations governing such activities.

If information associated with the dead Fetus or Fetal Material is recorded for Research purposes in a manner by which living individuals can be identified (either directly or through identifiers linked to the individuals), then those living individuals shall be considered to be Human Subjects and all laws, regulations and P&Ps that regularly apply to Research involving Human Subjects shall apply.

See also the P&Ps entitled Requirements for Research Involving Human Embryonic Stem Cell, Germ Cells, Stem Cells Derived Test Articles & the Transplantation of Human Fetal Tissue for Therapeutic Purposes for additional restrictions that apply to Research involving Human Fetal Tissue used in federally funded Research involving the transplantation of such tissue for therapeutic purposes.

**For AVAMC Research** Involving Pregnant Women, Human Fetuses, and Neonates as Subjects:

Research that involves provision of in vitro fertilization services cannot be conducted by VA investigators while on official duty, or at VA facilities, or at VA-approved off-site facilities. (NOTE: Prospective and retrospective studies that enroll or include pregnant subjects who conceived through in vitro fertilization or other artificial reproductive technologies are permitted).

Research in which the focus is either a fetus, or human fetal tissue, in-utero or ex-utero (or uses human fetal tissue), cannot be conducted by VA investigators while on official duty, at VA facilities, or at VA-approved off-site facilities. Use of stem cells shall be governed by the policy set by NIH for recipients of NIH research funding.

VA investigators cannot conduct interventions in research that enroll neonates while on official duty, or at VA facilities, or at VA-approved off-site facilities. Prospective observational and retrospective record review studies that involve neonates or neonatal outcomes are permitted.
Women who are known to be pregnant and/or their fetuses may be involved in research if all of the requirements of 45 CFR 46.204 are met along with the following criterion, which is verified by the VA RDC:

- The VA medical facility Director certifies that the medical facility has sufficient expertise in women’s health to conduct the proposed research

For DOD supported Research: For purposes of applying Subpart B, the phrase “biomedical knowledge” must be replaced with “generalizable knowledge.” The applicability of Subpart B is limited to research involving pregnant women as participants in research that is more than minimal risk and included interventions or invasive procedures to the woman or the fetus or involving fetuses or neonates as participants. Fetal research must comply with the US Code Title 42, Chapter 6A, Subchapter III, Part H, 289g.

Applicable Regulations

45 CFR §§ 46.201-.207; .301-.306; .401-.409
21 CFR §§ .50.50 -.56
42 U.S.C. § 298; Public Health Service Act § 498A
VHA Handbook 1200.05
SECNAVINST 3900.39(D) Para. 6(a)3, 6(a)6 & 6(a)8; DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 4.4.2; 10 U.S.C. 980.
56 RESEARCH INVOLVING PERSONS WITH MENTAL DISABILITIES OR PERSONS WITH IMPAIRED DECISION-MAKING CAPACITY

POLICY:

Research that involves persons with mental disabilities or persons with impaired decision-making capacity warrants special attention because this population is considered vulnerable to coercion and undue influence and Research involving these subjects often presents greater than Minimal Risk and may not offer any direct benefit to the subjects. Accordingly, the Emory IRB shall ensure that the Research incorporates the additional safeguards set forth in this section.

PROCEDURES:

IRB Composition: When reviewing Research that purposefully requires inclusion of children with disabilities or subjects with mental disabilities or persons with impaired decision-making capacity, the IRB membership shall include at least one member who is primarily concerned with the welfare of these research participants. In addition, consideration may be given to seeking review by a consultant who has experience with the subject population, such as a family member of such a person or a representative of an advocacy group for that population.

Approval Criteria: In addition to employing its typical standard for review of Research protocols, the Emory IRB shall also determine, and document in appropriate meeting minutes or review documents, whether the involvement of the individuals with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities in the Research protocol is justified and whether the Research protocol minimizes risks to these Human Subjects. In making these determinations, the Emory IRB shall consider the following factors:

- Whether the PI provided sufficient justification for the inclusion of an individual with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities as a Human Subject. In this regard, the PI must demonstrate to the IRB that there is a compelling reason to include incompetent individuals or persons with impaired decision-making capacity in the Research;
- The cause and predicted degree of decisional incapacity and any anticipated variations in the decisional capacity of the Human Subject, and whether the PI provided a plan for the assessment of the decisional incapacity of the Human Subject,
- The nature and degree of potential limitations on the ability of the Human Subject with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities to provide sufficient interaction to satisfy the requirements of the Research protocol;
- The nature and degree of risk to the Human Subject with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities. The Research should not entail any risk of injury to the subject unless the Research is intended to benefit the subject and the probability of benefit is greater than the probability of harm, or is likely to yield generalizable knowledge that is of vital importance to understanding the subject’s disorder or condition;
- Whether the PI provided a plan for protecting the individuals with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities from coercion;
o The nature of the proposed safeguards to be employed in the Research protocol and whether these safeguards are adequate to protect the Human Subject with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities;
o The nature of the proposed plan to assure adequate protections for the privacy of the Human Subject and the confidentiality of the information gathered;
o The nature and level of any monetary payments or other incentives to the Human Subject with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities, and whether such payments/incentives may constitute an undue inducement;
o Whether the possibility of exploitation of the Human Subject with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities exists, and the steps that have been taken to reduce or eliminate it;
o The nature and level of anticipated benefits to the Human Subject with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities;
o The thoroughness of the presentation through the informed consent process of relevant risk and benefits to the Human Subject with mental disabilities or impaired decision-making capacities.
o The incorporation into the Research of procedures to ensure that the participant’s representatives are well informed regarding their roles and obligations to protect incompetent subjects or persons with impaired decision making capacity. In this regard, the subject’s Legally Authorized Representatives must be provided with description of the proposed Research and any obligations that the Legally Authorized Representative would have with regard to the subject’s participation.
o Whether the elements of informed consent for a legally incompetent adult, as set forth in Section 41 (entitled: Informed Consent Policy), are met. Consent from the Legally Authorized Representatives of the subjects must be obtained in accordance with the requirements set forth in the P&P entitled: Legally Authorized Representatives & Surrogate Consent with regard to determining whether to consent for the enrollment of the subject in the study, the Legally Authorized Representative should be informed that he/she is to act in the subject’s best interests. Even if the consent of a Legally Authorized Representative is obtained, if a subject resists participation in a Research protocol, under no circumstances may he/she be forced or coerced to participate.
o Whether plans, if any, for obtaining written or verbal assent from the subject are appropriate.

Fluctuating Decision-Making Capacity: For studies that involve subjects whose decision making capacity may fluctuate or decrease, the PI may need to employ a re-consenting process using surrogate consent as set forth in the P&P entitled Legally Authorized Representatives & Surrogate Consent. It is the responsibility of the PI to monitor the decision-making capacity of subjects enrolled in Research studies and to determine if surrogate consent must be re-obtained. The IRB will require PIs to conduct periodic competency assessment when there is a possibility of either decreased mental functioning or fluctuating decision-making capacity in prospective subjects.

For AVAMC research with human subjects, the following criteria must be met in order for incompetent persons to be enrolled as subjects:
  • The IRB determines that the proposed research entails no greater than minimal risk to the subject; or presents a greater probability of direct benefit to the subject than
harm to the subject; or greater than minimal risk and no prospect of direct benefit to individual subjects, but likely to yield generalizable knowledge about the subject’s disorder or condition that is of vital importance for the understanding or amelioration of the subject’s disorder or condition. In addition to satisfying the conditions above, the IRB determines that:

- the research cannot be performed solely with persons who possess decision-making capacity and the focus of the research is the disorder leading to the subjects’ lack of decision-making capacity, whether or not the lack of decision-making itself is being evaluated (e.g., an individual who lacks decision-making capacity as the result of a stroke can participate in a study of cardiovascular effects of a stroke);
- or the subject of the research is not directly related to the subjects’ lack of decision-making capacity but the investigator has presented a compelling argument for including such subjects (e.g., transmission of methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus infections in a nursing home where both individuals with and without decision-making capacity are affected).

The investigator must also address in the protocol how they will determine when surrogate consent will be required. Please see P&P entitled Legally Authorized Representatives And Surrogate Consent.

If feasible, the investigator must explain the proposed research to the prospective research subject even when the surrogate gives consent. Although unable to provide informed consent, some persons may resist participating in a research protocol approved by their representatives. Under no circumstances may a subject be forced or coerced to participate in a research study even if the LAR has provided consent.

LARs are acting on behalf of the potential subjects, therefore:

1. LARs must be told that their obligation is to try to determine what the subjects would do if able to make an informed decision.
2. If the potential subjects’ wishes cannot be determined, the LARs must be told they are responsible for determining what is in the subjects’ best interest.

**Applicable Regulations:**

- 45 CFR §46.107(a)
- 21 CFR §56.107(a)
- VHA Handbook 1200.05
- *The Belmont Report*
57 REQUIREMENTS FOR RESEARCH INVOLVING HUMAN EMBRYONIC STEM CELLS, GERM CELLS, STEM CELL-DERIVED TEST ARTICLES AND THE TRANSPLANTATION OF HUMAN FETAL TISSUE FOR THERAPEUTIC PURPOSES

POLICY:

Any proposed Research that involves human embryonic stem cells, germ cells, stem cell-derived test articles and/or Human Fetal Tissue shall be reviewed by the Emory IRB to determine the applicability of: (a) HHS Regulations; (b) FDA Regulations; and (c) other state, federal or local regulatory requirements, depending on the type and location of Research, and the funding source for the Research.

PROCEDURES:

Applicability of HHS Regulations: The Emory IRB will review the Research involving human embryonic stem cells, germ cells, stem cell-derived test articles and/or the transplantation of Human Fetal Tissue for therapeutic purposes (hereinafter collectively referred to as “Human Fetal Tissue, Embryonic Tissue or Cell Research”) to determine if HHS Regulations will be applicable to such Research. Results of the review shall be documented in the IRB meeting minutes or in appropriate review documentation. Such Research shall be considered to fall under HHS Regulations and require Emory IRB review and approval if it meets the following requirements:

The Research involves Interaction or Interventions with living individuals or obtaining Individually Identifiable Private Information, such as the use of human cell lines in which the donor(s) are identified, including Research regarding cells that have a link (directly or indirectly) to identifying information.

HHS and FDA Regulations: HHS Regulations shall not be considered to apply to in vitro Research or Research in animals that uses already derived and established human cell lines from which the identity of the donor(s) cannot be ascertained by the investigator directly or by links to identifying information. Both HHS and FDA Regulations, as well as other federal regulations, may apply to the same Research protocol. Alternatively, either HHS or FDA Regulations may apply to a Research protocol.

Applicability of FDA Regulations: The Emory IRB will review the Human Fetal Tissue, Embryonic Tissue or Cell Research to determine if FDA Regulations will be applicable to such Research. Results of the review shall be documented in the IRB meeting minutes or in appropriate review documentation. Such Research shall be considered to fall under the FDA Regulations and require Emory IRB review and approval if it meets the following requirements:

The Research includes clinical Research involving drugs, devices, and/or biological products that are regulated by the FDA, including cells or test articles regulated as drugs, devices and/or biological products. In the case of such Research, FDA Regulations regarding investigational new drugs shall apply, as well as FDA Regulations regard informed consent.
Both **FDA** and **HHS Regulations**, as well as other federal regulations may apply to the same Research protocol. Alternatively, either **FDA** or **HHS Regulations** may apply to a Research protocol.

**Applicability of Other Regulatory Requirements to Research Involving Human Fetal Tissue used in Federally Funded Research Involving the Transplantation of Such Tissue for Therapeutic Purposes:** The Emory IRB will review the Human Fetal Tissue, Embryonic Tissue or Cell Research to determine if other federal, state or local regulatory requirements apply in view of the nature and location of the Research and funding source therefore. Applicable state, federal and local regulations may apply in addition to, or in lieu of, **FDA** and **HHS Regulations**. Results of the review shall be documented in the IRB meeting minutes or in appropriate review documentation. The Emory IRB shall consult legal counsel for the University with regard to determining state and local regulatory requirements. The following specific regulatory requirements shall apply to the Research described below, when that Research is federally funded:

**Germ Cell and Stem Cell Research:**

Research involving the derivation and use of human embryonic germ cell from Human Fetal Tissue may be conducted with federal funding;

Research on existing human embryonic stem cell lines may be conducted with federal funding if it meets the criteria set forth in the Notice of Criteria for Federal Funding of Research on Existing Human Embryonic Stem Cells and Establishment of NIH Human Embryonic Stem Cell Registry (Notice: NOT-OD-02-005, November 7, 2001 at http://grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/notice-files/NOT-OD-02-005.html. Among the requirements in this Notice are the following:

The stem cells must have been derived from an embryo that was created for reproductive purposes;

The embryo was no longer needed for these purposes;

Informed consent must have been obtained for the donation of the embryo; and

No financial inducements were provided for donation of the embryo.

The stem cells that are being used must be listed on the NIH Human Embryonic Stem Cell Registry found at: http://stemcells.nih.gov/research/registry/

Research involving the derivation of new stem cells from human embryos or the use of human embryonic stem cells that are not listed on the NIH Registry specified above may not be conducted with federal funding support.

Research Involving the Transplantation of Human Fetal Tissue for Therapeutic Purposes: If the
Research involves the transplantation of Human Fetal Tissue for therapeutic purposes and is funded by a federal agency, then the following requirements also must be met, and the Emory IRB shall document that these requirements are met in the meeting minutes and/or other appropriate review documentation:

**Source of Tissue** – The Human Fetal Tissue may be obtained pursuant to a spontaneous or induced abortion or pursuant to a stillbirth

**Informed Consent of Donor** -- The woman providing the Human Fetal Tissue must sign a written informed consent document that contains the following statements, and the Emory IRB shall review the informed consent documentation to ensure that these requirements are met:

The woman is donating the Human Fetal Tissue for use in Research on the transplantation of Human Fetal Tissue for therapeutic purposes;

The donation is made without any restriction regarding the identity of the individuals who may be the recipients of transplantations of the Human Fetal Tissue; and

The woman has not been informed of the identity of any such individuals.

**Written Statement of Attending Physician**: The attending physician who obtains the Human Fetal Tissue from the donor woman for use in the Research must provide a signed, written statement that states as follows, and the Emory IRB shall ensure that a template for this statement is included in the Research protocol:

The Human Fetal Tissue has been donated by the woman for use in Research on the transplantation of Human Fetal Tissue for therapeutic purposes;

Full disclosure has been provided to the woman with regard to the physician’s interest, if any, in the Research to be conducted with the Human Fetal Tissue and any known medical risks to the woman or risks to her privacy that might be associated with the donation of the tissue and that are in addition to risks of such type that are associated with the woman’s medical care; and

In the case of Human Fetal Tissue obtained pursuant to an induced abortion:

The consent of the woman for the abortion was obtained prior to requesting or obtaining consent for a donation of the Human Fetal Tissue for use in the Research;

No alteration of the timing, method or procedures used to terminate the Pregnancy was made solely for the purpose of obtaining the Human Fetal Tissue; and

The abortion was performed in accordance with applicable State laws,
**Written Statement of PI**: The PI for whose Research the donated Human Fetal Tissue is used must sign a written statement stating as follows, and the Emory IRB shall ensure that a template for this statement is included in the Research protocol:

The PI is aware that the tissue is Human Fetal Tissue; that it may have been obtained pursuant to a spontaneous or induced abortion, or pursuant to a stillbirth; and that it was donated for Research purposes.

The PI has provided the foregoing information other key personnel who have responsibility regarding the Research;

The PI will provide the foregoing information to the person who is to receive the Human Fetal Tissue transplantation prior to obtaining this person’s consent to participate in the Research.

**Written Statement of Transplant Recipient**: The recipient of the donation of the Human Fetal Tissue shall sign a written acknowledgement that the PI provided him/her with the information set forth in the provision immediately above, and the Emory IRB shall ensure that a template for this statement is included in the Research protocol.

**Recordkeeping Requirements**: The PI shall keep copies of all of the statements required above as a part of his/her Research records and shall make them available for audit by the IRB or by appropriate governmental agencies.

**Prohibition Regarding Certain Use of Human Fetal Tissue**: Research involving Human Fetal Tissue is prohibited, no matter what the source of funding for the Research, if the Research:

Involves the unlawful solicitation, knowing acquisition, receipt of, or acceptance of a donation of Human Fetal Tissue for the purpose of the transplantation of such tissue into another person if the tissue is or will be obtained pursuant to an induced abortion; and

The donation will be or is made pursuant to a promise to the donating individual that the donated Human Fetal Tissue will be transplanted into a recipient specified by such individual; or

The donated Human Fetal Tissue will be transplanted into a relative of the donating individual; or

The person who solicits or knowingly acquires, receives or accepts the donation has provided valuable consideration (not including reasonable payments associated with the transportation, implantation, processing, preservation, quality control or storage of Human Fetal Tissue) for costs associated with the abortion.

**Applicable Regulations/Laws/Guidance:**

45 CFR §§ 46.101 – .102
21 CFR §§ 50.20; 56.101-.103; & Part 312.
42 U.S.C. § 298; Public Health Service Act § 498A
NIH Human Embryonic Stem Cell Registry at http://stemcells.nih.gov/research/registry
58  COMPLAINTS

POLICY:

The Emory IRB will inquire into and address, as appropriate, any complaints or concerns reported to the Emory IRB concerning items within the scope of the IRB.

PROCEDURES:

Reporting of Complaints: Complaints or concerns regarding the IRB or Research that is subject to the oversight of the IRB may be reported directly to the IRB by contacting the IRB Chair, Vice Chair, Director, IRB staff or any IRB member. Complaints also may be reported to the IO or to University officials who have administrative responsibility with regard to the IRB, such as the IO. Persons who wish to make a complaint anonymously may do so by contacting the Office of Research Compliance or by calling the Emory Trustline at 1-888-550-8850. Complaints that are reported to persons outside of the IRB shall be provided to the IRB Chair and Director for inquiry and handling; provided, however, that if the complaints concern the Chair or Director, they shall be reported to the IO.

Handling of Complaints: The IRB shall promptly inquire into any complaint or concern received in order to determine the nature and accuracy of the complaint/concern and to determine what, if any, investigative and/or corrective action should be taken to address the complaint/concern. Upon receipt of a complaint/concern, the IRB will evaluate to determine whether it may constitute an Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Participants or Others or other reportable matter, and if so, proceed with appropriate reporting procedures. In addition, if the IRB determines that the complaint should be appropriately referred to another unit or committee of the University, it shall make such referral. If the identity of the person who made the complaint or raised the concern is known, the IRB may let him/her know the findings of any inquiry and or any corrective action implemented, provided that the IRB is not prohibited from sharing any such information based upon legal, privacy, or confidentiality considerations. The IRB may consult with University legal counsel and/or the Office of Research Compliance to seek assistance in the handling of any complaint or concern.

Complaints that the PI receives that need to be reported to the IRB: The PI must report complaints that he/she receives from participants or others that involve potential risks to participants or others or may change the risk/benefit ratio. These reports must be made to the IRB within 10 business days of the PI receiving the complaint. The IRB may consult with the Office of Research Compliance and the Office of Sponsored Programs if necessary. The PI may also report any complaints about which he/she believes the IRB should be aware.

See also, the P&P entitled Communication Channels for Human Subjects About Research.
59 COMMUNICATION CHANNELS FOR HUMAN SUBJECTS ABOUT RESEARCH

POLICY:

The Emory IRB maintains a safe, confidential, and reliable channel for current, prospective, or past human subjects or their designated representatives that permits them to discuss problems, concerns, and questions, obtain information, or offer input with an informed individual who was unaffiliated with the specific research protocol (except for its IRB review).

PROCEDURES:

Input from Participants

The Emory IRB operates a toll-free telephone line and requests that investigators include the number in the contact information in the informed consent document. The Emory IRB shall make the toll-free number available to the public on its website. For international studies where phone or internet is not available, the contact information in the informed consent must contain reasonable contact information (such as street address or fax number) to allow subjects to contact a local or the reviewing IRB.

Complaints made to the Emory IRB shall be routed to a knowledgeable IRB staff member, preferably the IRB Director, immediately. The staff member shall ensure the confidentiality of the conversation and shall listen carefully and respectfully to the caller and answer any questions to the best of his or her ability, in consultation with the IRB Director, Chair, Vice Chair, or IO if necessary.

The IRB Director shall ensure that appropriate follow-up occurs to answer the questions of the caller. The Emory IRB shall maintain a record of the issues raised and shall observe principles of confidentiality in setting up such record.

Further, the IRB Director will make reasonable accommodations to requests from participants or members of the public considering participation in research to answer questions via other media besides the telephone (e.g., by written correspondence, email, or meetings).

Community Outreach

The Emory IRB also endeavors to educate the community about human subjects research, and to work with other HRPP and area partners in their efforts. Emory IRB maintains a webpage for Participants containing research-related definitions, the Participant Bill of Rights, information about clinical trials, information on how to find opportunities for participating in research, and frequently asked questions. The IRB may also work with the ACTSI Community Engagement Research Program, which supports community-university partnerships, obtains input into university research, and increases health research in community settings that is responsive to the health needs of the community. The IRB Director periodically assesses the Organization’s outreach activities and will work with IRB Chair(s), the IO, and other Organization and Community stakeholders as needed to make improvements in these efforts.
See also the P&P entitled *Complaints*.

**Applicable Regulations:**
45 CFR § 46.103(b)(5)
21 CFR § 56.108(b)
60 REVIEW OF INSTANCES OF NON-COMPLIANCE FOR DETERMINATION OF SERIOUS OR CONTINUING NON-COMPLIANCE AND REPORTING

POLICY:

All members of the University community involved in Human Subjects Research are expected to comply with the highest standards of ethical and professional conduct in accordance with federal and state regulations and institutional and IRB policies governing the conduct of Human Subjects Research.

The IRB may receive allegations or reports of Non-Compliance from a variety of sources such as individual complaints, compliance reviews or audits, investigator self-reports, and reports from Sponsors or governmental entities.

This IRB will review all instances of non-compliance in order to determine whether or not they constitute Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance as defined in the Glossary. The IRB will report Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance as set forth in elsewhere in these P&Ps.

PROCEDURES

Receipt of Allegations/Reports of Non-Compliance: The IRB may receive Allegations of Non-Compliance from a number of sources including: complaints or concerns reported directly to the IRB or reported to other University units and/or through the Emory Trustline for anonymous reporting of compliance concerns; findings from audits conducted by or for the IRB or by other University units, governmental entities or sponsors; and items reported by PIs. These allegations/reports shall be handled in accordance with the P&Ps entitled Protocol Oversight; Procedures for Handling Audits & Violations; and Procedures for Receiving and Conducting Inquiries into Allegations/Reports of Non-Compliance and reviews/audits, inquiries and other review processes shall be employed as set forth in that section.

See also P&P entitled Reporting to Governmental Regulatory Authorities.

Notification to Investigator of IRB Review of Alleged Non-Compliance: The IRB must inform the Investigator that it has received allegations of non-compliance and invite the Investigator to respond. The Investigator may respond to the IRB in writing and/or in person or by telephone at a convened meeting.

Referral of Instances of Non-Compliance that May Constitute Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance: A qualified IRB analyst, Team Lead, or CoRe Team member (senior analyst, Team Lead, Co-Chair, Vice Chair, IRB Director) shall make the initial determination about whether an allegation of non-compliance has a basis in fact. All instances of non-compliance that may potentially constitute Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance shall be referred to the full IRB Committee for review in accordance with the definitions set forth in the Glossary and a vote as to whether the instances constitute Serious and/or Continuing Non-Compliance.

In addition, in accordance with VHA Handbook 1058.01, the IRB must review any report of potential or apparent serious or continuing noncompliance at its next appropriately constituted
convened IRB meeting. Should the IRB determine that the matter constitutes serious or continuing noncompliance, the IRB Chair or designee must report the determination directly (without intermediaries) to the medical center director within five business days of the determination. The IRB Chair or designee’s report must be made in writing, with a simultaneous copy to the Associate Chief of Staff for Research, the Research and Development Committee, and any other relevant research review committee. An initial report of an IRB determination that serious or continuing noncompliance occurred is required, even where the determination is preliminary or disposition of the matter has not been resolved at the time of the report.

Further with respect to VA research, the IRB must research a determination that serious or continuing noncompliance did or did not occur within 30-45 days after receiving a report of apparent noncompliance. Remedial actions involving a specific study or research team must be completed within 90-120 days of the IRB’s determination. Remedial actions involving programmatic noncompliance must be completed within 120-180 days after the IRB’s determination, unless remediation requires substantial renovation, fiscal expenditure, hiring, legal negotiations, etc.

**Reporting:** The Emory IRB shall report a determination of Serious or Continuing Non-compliance to any other IRB with jurisdiction over the study, the IO and other appropriate institutional officials, sponsors, and government regulatory and funding agency officials in accordance with the P&P entitled *Reporting to Governmental Regulatory Authorities.*

In addition, for AVAMC Research or VA-supported Research, the Emory IRB shall report as follows: (a) to the AVAMC Institutional Official and Research Office, who in turn will forward this to the VA Office of Research and Development; (b) to the Regional Office of Research Oversight; (c) to the VA Privacy Office if the report involves unauthorized use, loss or disclosure of individually identifiable patient information; and (d) to the VHA Information Security Officer if the report involves violations of VA information security requirements.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR § 46.103(b)(5); & .113
21 CFR § 56.108(b); & .113.
VHA Handbook 1200.05
VHA Handbook 1058.01
61 PROTOCOL OVERSIGHT AND PROCEDURES FOR HANDLING AUDITS AND VIOLATIONS

POLICY:

The Emory IRB is responsible for continuing oversight of Research protocols under its jurisdiction to ensure that they are being carried out in accordance with the requirements of the approved Research protocol; all determinations of the IRB; all applicable federal and other governmental regulations; and all applicable IRB and University policies.

The Emory IRB may carry out these oversight responsibilities by commissioning or conducting for-cause or not-for-cause compliance reviews or audits of Research protocols; conducting inquiries into any Allegations/Reports of Non-Compliance with IRB requirements and/or referring allegations to other appropriate committees or units within the University for inquiry under applicable University policies and procedures.

Depending on the nature of the Allegations/Reports of Non-Compliance and/or the results of any inquiry, the IRB may take such actions such as requiring additional training for personnel; requiring periodic audit; requiring monitoring; Terminating or Suspending IRB Approval of Research protocols; and/or instituting sanctions against PIs or other research personnel, up to and including ending their participation on Research protocols under the Emory IRB’s jurisdiction. All allegations or incidences of Non-Compliance in Human Subjects Research, including protocol violations, failure to comply with applicable federal or other governmental regulations, or failure to comply with the requirements or determination of the IRB will be handled according to the procedures set forth in this P&P.

PROCEDURES:

The Emory IRB may carry out its oversight function using the following methods:

**PI Reports:**

Requiring PI to provide Reports of Non-Compliance (e.g. reports of any failure to follow protocol requirements); and/or

Requiring PI to provide a status report on his/her Research protocol.

**Compliance Reviews/Audits:** Conducting, or requesting a third party to conduct, on behalf of the IRB, a compliance review or audit of a Research protocol.

**For research at the AVAMC:**
Audits of research conducted at the AVAMC may be carried out by the Research Compliance Officer (RCO) in accordance with VA Regulations. If the RCO identifies apparent serious or continuing non-compliance during an audit he/she must report it directly to the facility director, and copy the ACOS for Research, the R&D Committee, and the IRB no later than 5 business days after the discovery of the potential non-compliance.
The IRB may require more frequent audits by the research compliance officer or by other means. The IRB also may require the research compliance officer to conduct more focused audits of one or more aspects of the study. The requirement to increase the frequency of audits or to audit specific aspects of the study might be based on considerations including, but not limited to:

• Involvement of vulnerable populations.
• Level of risk.
• Phase I or Phase II studies.
• Involvement of FDA approved drugs for which there has been a new safety warning issued, or change in the labeling that indicates increased risks.
• Issues of noncompliance.
• Data confidentiality or security concerns.

Inquiries: Conducting an inquiry into Allegations of Non-Compliance received regarding a Research protocol under its jurisdiction.

Referrals: Referring allegations of non-compliance received in connection with Research protocol to an appropriate Emory University unit or committee for inquiry under other applicable Emory policies and procedures and requesting a report on the unit/committee’s findings for the Emory IRB’s review and use.

PI Reporting Obligations Regarding Protocol Non-Compliance: Each PI shall provide the IRB with a written report of any Non-Compliance with or failure to follow the requirements of an IRB approved protocol (e.g., protocol deviations) or to follow applicable laws, regulations or IRB policies or procedures. The report shall be provided to the IRB as soon as possible after the Non-Compliance occurs, but no later than 10 business days.

Contents of Protocol Non-Compliance Report: The PI’s report should specify: (a) protocol requirement, IRB policy or procedure or law or regulatory requirement that was not followed; (b) description of manner in which actions taken deviated from or failed to comply with the requirement including date and time of event; (c) effect of Non-Compliance, including any effect on Human Subjects; (d) reason for deviation/failure; and (e) any action that will be taken in terms of modifying or amending Research protocol or process/procedure to be put in place to ensure that Non-Compliance does not occur again.

Status Reports: In addition, the PI shall include any previously unreported instance of Non-Compliance in any Research status report that the PI provides to the IRB in connection with Continuing Review or in response to a request for a status report received from the IRB.

Findings: The IRB Chair, Director, or qualified IRB staff (analyst, Team Lead) shall perform an initial review of all reports received in accordance with the provision entitled PI Reporting Obligations Regarding Protocol Non-Compliance above. In the fact-finding stage, all reasonably relevant documents shall be reviewed, e.g., correspondence, minutes, study records, and site visits and interviews may be
conducted, as appropriate. If a determination is made that an inquiry or for-cause audit is necessary, it will be conducted in accordance with the provision below entitled 

**Conduct of Review.**

**Conduct of Review/Audit:** The compliance review/audit may be conducted by IRB personnel (including qualified analysts, Team Leads, IRB Director, CoRe team member, or ad hoc consultant); or personnel from any one or more University administrative personnel with responsibility for **Research** compliance (e.g., personnel from Office of Research Compliance, Office of the General Counsel, Office of Sponsored Programs/Grants and Contracts Administration, Office for Clinical Research) acting on behalf of the IRB; or outside consultants with whom the IRB has contracted. A review/audit may be conducted as a for-cause or not-for-cause review/audit. If University legal counsel determines that any review/audit should be conducted under the auspices of attorney-client privilege, the audit will be coordinated or conducted by the University's Office of the General Counsel.

**Scope of Review/Audit:** **Research** protocols shall be reviewed/audited to determine compliance with protocol requirements; applicable federal and state laws and regulations; specific requirements from **Sponsors**; IRB policies and procedures; and University policies and procedures. The items that may be examined include but are not limited to: informed consent procedures and documentation; adherence to inclusion and exclusion criteria; reporting of **Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others and Adverse Events**; adherence to **HIPAA Regulations**; protocol adherence and fulfillment of documentation and record-keeping requirements. The specific scope of the audit/review shall be determined by the **IRB Chair, Vice Chair, or IRB Director** in consultation with review/audit personnel. The scope of the review/audit may be broadened or narrowed as necessary depending on findings made as the review/audit proceeds.

**PI Cooperation:** The PI and all personnel involved in the study have an obligation to cooperate with any review/audit conducted by or on behalf of the IRB and to provide any testimony, documentation or other materials requested in a timely manner. The PI shall cooperate in making the documents available at the site at which they are kept and shall provide the review/audit personnel with space there to conduct the review/audit.

After a review/audit has been announced or initiated, the PI shall ensure that all records and other materials pertaining to the **Research** protocol that is being reviewed/audited are preserved and maintained intact, and without alteration, until the IRB notifies the PI that the materials may once again be subject to their normal record retention schedule. Review/audit personnel shall immediately advise the IRB **Chair, Vice Chair, or IRB Director** of any evidence that may indicate that study records have been subject to loss, destruction or tampering. The Office of Research Compliance at Emory must also be notified.

**Not-For-Cause Review/Audit Procedure:** Not-for-cause audits may be performed as a part of the IRB’s Research oversight measures. The IRB shall follow the procedure set forth below for conducting not-for-cause reviews/audits:

The **IRB Chair, Vice Chair, Director**, or qualified IRB staff shall notify the PI for the **Research** protocol to be reviewed/audited and advise him/her that the protocol has been selected for a review/audit. The notice shall set forth the protocol(s) to be
reviewed/audited; approximate dates of the review/audit; persons who will be performing the review/audit; and records requested.

If the PI requests that a not-for-cause review/audit be re-scheduled due to extenuating circumstances concerning a PI's schedule, the IRB shall make reasonable attempts to do so; provided, however, that any not-for-cause review/audit may only be rescheduled by the PI once.

The review/audit shall be on site at the offices at which the PI keeps the protocol records, and the PI shall provide the review/audit personnel with sufficient space within which to examine the study records. The review/audit personnel may examine all relevant documentation and materials including: protocols; all documentation submitted to the IRB; any audit or inspection reports of governmental or Sponsor auditors or monitors; consent documents; case report forms; and medical records. In addition, review/audit personnel may interview appropriate personnel. Consultants with particular expertise may be retained to assist with the review/audit.

The review/audit personnel shall document the review/audit findings in a report and provide the report to the IRB CoRe team. Any corrective and preventive action recommendations shall be included in the report.

The IRB case manager shall present the audit findings, along with any additional suggestions that the case manager may have for corrective action, to the IRB CoRe team.

The CoRe team will identify if a case involves presumptively serious or continuing noncompliance, referring to the IRB guidance document. The CoRe team will assess whether the evidence of error or mitigating and aggravating factors is compelling, and may determine that the presumption of serious or continuing noncompliance has been overcome. If such a determination is made by the CoRe team, the case can be closed and does not require further review by Committee Q. If the CoRe team determines that the presumption has not been overcome (yet), it must forward the case to a convened meeting of the Emory IRB. If the analysis by the CoRe team is inconclusive, the CoRe team must forward the case to the convened IRB for review.

The CoRe team may consider relevant criteria, including precedents set by duly constituted subcommittees of the Emory IRB at convened meetings (i.e., precedents of determinations of serious, not serious, continuing, or not continuing noncompliance).

The CoRe team must document its analysis of whether a case is presumptively serious or continuing noncompliance, and whether the presumption has been overcome by the evidence collected to date and mitigating factors, in the case records and report the matter to the Emory IRB.

If a case of non-compliance is referred for Full Committee Review, the IRB Committee will vote on whether to accept the review/audit findings and corrective and preventive actions recommended, or alternatively, on alternative measures that should be taken.
The IRB case manager will write to the PI and inform him/her of the audit findings and corrective actions/sanctions recommended.

The PI shall agree to a timetable for the completion of any recommended corrective actions and shall provide the IRB with documentation that corrective actions have been completed.

If at any time during a not-for-cause review/audit, it becomes apparent to the review/audit personnel that there is evidence of _Continuing_ or _Serious Non-Compliance_, then the review/audit personnel promptly shall report such fact to the _CoRe team_ and the IRB case manager shall route the case to a convened IRB. The _Full Committee_ shall review cases of potentially Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance to make the following determinations: (a) necessity of notifying governmental regulatory agencies, institutional officials and/or _Sponsors_; (b) adequacy of any corrective and preventive action proposed or taken by PI; (c) necessity of suspending or terminating enrollment or Approval of the _Research_ protocol; or (d) necessity of conducting for-cause review/audit and/or inquiry; or (e) necessity of referring matter to other university units for consideration and action under other university policies and procedures. In making this determination, the convened IRB may take into consideration, any harm or ill effects to _Human Subjects_ or others caused by the deficiencies; the seriousness of any review/audit findings; any voluntary reporting by PI; nature of the protocol; and whether the personnel involved have a record of deficiencies on any other _Research_ protocol. The review/audit shall then follow the procedures set forth for for-cause reviews/audits described in the next section of this P&P.

**For-Cause Reviews/Audits Procedure:** For-cause reviews/audits may be performed at the request of the IRB _Chair, Vice Chair, or Director_ after an initial review of an _Allegation/Report of Non-Compliance_. The following procedures shall be used in performing a for-cause review/audit:

A qualified IRB analyst, Team Lead, or _CoRe Team_ member (senior analyst, Team Lead, Co-Chair, Vice Chair, IRB Director) shall make the initial determination about whether an allegation of non-compliance has a basis in fact. If a decision is made to proceed with the for-cause review/audit, the review/audit may be conducted in consultation with the Office of Research Compliance (or an outside consultant retained by that office) or through the Office of the General Counsel, if University counsel determine that this is the appropriate route to take. Personnel conducting the review/audit shall contact the PI and promptly secure/sequester all records relating to the protocol. The review/audit may be conducted as a stand-alone review/audit, or it may be conducted in connection with an inquiry being conducted pursuant to the provision below entitled _Conduct of an IRB Inquiry_. If the for-cause review/audit is conducted as a stand-alone review/audit, the results shall be reported to the Core team that will make a recommendation to the full IRB as to whether an inquiry is necessary.

As set forth above, the _CoRe team_ shall make a recommendation to the Co-Chairs and/or the convened IRB whether to suspend the _Research_ protocol or temporarily halt enrollment into the protocol pending the results of the review/audit. This
determination will be based on the potential for harm to the Research subjects, including consideration of the effect of suspension in therapeutic trials, and the nature of the allegations.

The CoRe team, in consultation with the Office of Research Compliance and/or the Office of the General Counsel shall determine whether the matter needs to be referred to any other unit of the University for proceedings under other University policies or procedures.

The review/audit may take place at the Research site or at such site at which the records have been secured/sequestered. The review/audit personnel may examine all relevant documentation and materials including: protocols; all documentation submitted to the IRB; any audit or inspection reports of governmental or Sponsor auditors or monitors; consent documents; case report forms; and medical records. In addition, review/audit personnel may interview appropriate personnel. Consultants with particular expertise may be retained to assist with the review/audit.

The review/audit personnel shall document the review/audit findings in a report and provide the report to the inquiry subcommittee (if an inquiry has been initiated); to any subcommittee impaneled to review the audit findings; to the IRB CoRe team; to the Director of the Office of Research Compliance, as well as to the Office of the General Counsel, in the event of an review/audit being conducted under the auspices of that office. Any corrective action recommendations shall be included in the report. The report shall also specifically detail any instances of Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance.

If the CoRe team determines the matter(s) to constitute possible Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance, the case will be routed to the IRB Board with any recommended corrective actions, which will including the input of the PI when necessary. The IRB Committee will vote on whether to accept the review/audit findings and corrective actions recommended, or alternatively, on other actions or measures that should be taken. If an inquiry is recommended and the recommendation is accepted by the IRB, then an inquiry will proceed in accordance with the provision below entitled Conduct of IRB Inquiry. If Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance is documented in the findings, then an inquiry shall be required.

If the IRB determines that no inquiry is to be conducted, then the CoRe team will write to the PI and inform him/her of the audit findings and corrective actions/sanctions recommended. The IO and other appropriate University officials may also be notified of the findings and recommended actions.

The PI shall provide a corrective action plan detailing how recommended corrective measures will be accomplished and the timetable for their completion. The PI shall provide the IRB with regular status reports at intervals established by the IRB documenting that corrective actions have been completed.

Conduct of IRB Inquiry: An inquiry may be performed at the request of the IRB Chair, Vice Chair, Director, CoRe team or Full Committee after an initial review of an Allegation/Report of
**Non-Compliance** or at the recommendation of the IRB after review of the results of a standalone for-cause audit. The following procedures shall be used in performing an IRB inquiry:

If a determination has been made that a for-cause review/audit should be conducted in connection with the inquiry, such a review/audit will be conducted in accordance with the procedure set forth in provision above entitled *For-Cause Reviews/Audits Procedure*; provided, however, that the findings of the review/audit shall be provided to the CoRe team for its review and recommendations prior to going to Full Committee Review.

The IRB Staff shall formulate a plan for the inquiry including persons to be interviewed and documents to be reviewed. The IRB Staff may consult with the Office of Research Compliance in formulating the inquiry plan. In addition, upon the CoRe team’s request, personnel from the Office of Research Compliance may provide the IRB Staff with administrative support for its inquiry by performing tasks including, but not limited to, scheduling interviews; obtaining and copying requested records; and taking notes or minutes at inquiry-related meetings.

The IRB Staff may consider any testimony or other evidence that comes to its attention from persons inside or outside the university. The IRB Staff may examine all relevant documentation and materials including: protocols; all documentation submitted to the IRB; any audit or inspection reports of governmental or Sponsor auditors or monitors; consent documents; case report forms; and medical records. In addition, review/audit personnel may interview appropriate personnel. Consultants with particular expertise may be retained to assist with the inquiry.

During the conduct of the inquiry, the IRB Staff shall take all reasonable steps to protect the confidentiality of the proceedings and of all persons who brought forward allegations and all persons against whom allegations were made. In this respect, the IRB Staff shall ask all persons to whom it speaks regarding the matter to refrain from discussing the matter with anyone outside of the committee or appropriate university or governmental compliance or regulatory officials.

After the IRB Staff has considered all of the evidence (including any evidence produced by any review/audit) it shall draft a report setting forth its findings of fact, conclusions and recommendations. The report shall specifically detail evidence suggesting **Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance**. The IRB Staff will send the report for the CoRe team for consideration. If the matter is considered potentially serious or continuing, the report will be sent to a IRB full Committee for further review. A CoRe team member shall present the report and its recommendations to a full IRB Committee, if it is a case of **Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance**. The full IRB Committee shall then vote on whether to accept the report and recommendations, or alternative steps that should be taken. These actions may include one or more of the following actions, as well as any other action recommended by the IRB Committee:

- Determination of **Non-Compliance**, **Serious Non-Compliance**, **Continuing Non-Compliance**, or not **Non-Compliance**.
No action.

Modification of the Research protocol.

Modification of the information disclosed during the consent process.

Additional information provided to past participants.

Notification of current participants (required when such information may relate to participants’ willingness to continue to take part in the Research).

Requirement that current participants re-consent to participation.

Modification of the Continuing Review schedule.

Monitoring of the Research.

Monitoring of the informed consent process.

Suspension of accrual to or of Approval of the Research.

Termination of accrual to or of Approval of the Research.

Obtaining more information pending a final decision.

Referral to another organization or entity.

Required fulfillment of a CAPA plan.

Other actions as appropriate, including, but not limited to: (a) requiring Investigator education; (b) requiring additional reviews/audits; (c) imposing compliance monitoring; (d) requiring increased reporting by the Investigator; (e) restricting use of the Research data for publication; and/or (f) restricting or terminating the Investigator’s Research privileges.

A member of the IRB Staff will communicate the outcome of the IRB deliberations, as well as the proposed action plan, to the Investigator, the IO and other appropriate University officials. The IRB will notify the relevant governmental and funding agencies as appropriate pursuant to the P&P entitled Reporting to Governmental Regulatory Authorities.

Suspension and Termination of IRB Approval: In accordance with the P&P entitled Suspension and Terminations of Previously Approved Research, the Emory IRB may, at any time, Suspend or Terminate approval of Human Subjects Research that is not being conducted in accordance with the IRB’s requirements or that has been associated with harm to Human Subjects. Any Suspension or Termination of Approval shall include a statement of the reasons for the IRB’s action and shall be reported promptly to governmental regulatory officials as required; the Investigator, and his/her department and division chair; the Office of Research Compliance; the
Office of Grants and Contracts and Office of Sponsored Programs (in the case of sponsored research. **Research Sponsors** should be notified according to the applicable contractual provisions. The IRB or the PI shall notify the **Sponsors**.

**Non-Exclusivity of IRB Proceedings and Referrals:** At any time before, during or after the conduct of a compliance review/audit or inquiry by or on behalf of the IRB, the **IRB Chair, Vice Chair, Director**, or qualified IRB staff may refer some or all allegations or findings to any other unit or committee for which another unit of the University may have responsibility or jurisdiction under other University policies or procedures. Inquiries, investigations, and/or compliance audits/reviews by these other units may occur simultaneously with the IRB’s actions, and the various University units involved may share their findings. The IRB shall request a copy of any findings issued by any other committee or unit to whom the IRB has referred a matter for consideration.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR § 46.103(a); .103(b)(5); & .113.
21 CFR § 56.108(a); .108(b); & .113.
VHA Handbook 1058.01
62  SUSPENSIONS AND TERMINATIONS OF PREVIOUSLY APPROVED RESEARCH

POLICY:

The Emory IRB has the authority to either Suspend or Terminate its approval of Research when it determines that the Research is not being conducted in accordance with the IRB requirements; may be in serious or continuing non-compliance with federal or other applicable governmental regulations or institutional policies; or when it determines that the Research is reasonably likely to cause serious harm to Human Subjects or others.

Suspensions and terminations do not include interruptions in research resulting solely from the expiration of a protocol approval period.

DEFINED TERMS:

Terminate/Termination: An action taken by the IRB for any reason to permanently withdraw approval for all Research activities (except for those follow up procedures which are necessary to protect the health or welfare of the subjects). Terminated protocols are considered closed and do not require Continuing Review.

Suspend/Suspension: An action taken by the IRB for any reason to temporarily withdraw approval for some or all Research activities short of permanently withdrawing approval for all Research activities. Suspended protocols are considered open (though not for enrollment or other Research activities), and the IRB will advise on a case-by-case basis if continuing review applications are required during a period of Suspension.

PROCEDURES:

Suspension: If there is reason to believe that Research is not being conducted in accordance with IRB requirements or if there is concern that Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others, but there is not yet enough evidence to arrive at a final conclusion, the convened IRB may Suspend approval of any or all Research activities in order to protect participants.

Immediate Suspension: When circumstances require an immediate Suspension of Research to protect the rights or welfare of Human Subjects, the IRB Chair (or a designated Vice Chair in the IRB Chair’s absence) may immediately Suspend IRB approval of the Research pending an inquiry. Such Suspensions of IRB approval will be reported to and evaluated by the convened IRB at the next meeting when the inquiry report is available and at that time the IRB will decide on the next appropriate action (such as Suspension, Termination, or Renewal of approval of the Research).

Termination: The convened IRB may Terminate its approval of previously approved Research when the Research is not being conducted in accordance with IRB requirements; when the Research is associated with Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others; or Termination of approval is otherwise required to protect the rights and welfare of Human Subjects. In general, Terminations of approval should be done by the convened IRB, but in some cases the IRB Chair may take this action in his or her discretion, reporting it to the next
convened IRB meeting.

**IRB Report:** Any report of IRB action of **Suspension** or **Termination** of approval of the **Research** shall include a statement of the reasons for the IRB’s actions. The report must be sent to the IO, the PI and his or her department or division chair, the Office of Research Compliance, the Office of Grants and Contracts, and the Office of Sponsored Programs (in the case of sponsored research). The IRB **Chair** (or the IRB **Director or IO** in the IRB **Chair’s** absence) shall report all **Suspensions** and **Terminations** to the appropriate funding agencies, regulatory agencies (e.g. OHRP for DHHS funded studies, FDA when research is FDA regulated, AVAMC when VA research is involved, other federal agencies when the research is overseen by those agencies and they require reporting separate from that to OHRP), any IRBs relying on the Emory IRB for review of the **Research**, and other **Sponsors**. A copy of the report is provided to the IRB in the agenda packet. See P&P entitled **Reporting to Governmental Regulatory Authorities** for further information.

For specific **VA** reporting requirements, please see the P&P entitled **Reporting to Governmental Regulatory Authorities or Human Subjects Research at the Atlanta Veterans Affairs Medical Center (AVAMC)/Atlanta Research and Education foundation (AREF)**. The IRB **Chair** (or the IRB **Director or IO** in the IRB **Chair’s** absence) shall also report all suspensions and terminations of approval to the **IRB Committee** at the next convened meeting, with reflection in the minutes.

**Current Research Subjects:** If the IRB **Chair** (or designated **Vice Chair** in the **Chair’s** absence) or the convened IRB decides to **Terminate** or **Suspend** approval of **Research**, the IRB **Chair** (or designated **Vice Chair**) or convened **IRB Committee** will take the following steps:

- Ensure that the PI stops all **Research** activities.

- Ensure that all **Human Subjects** currently participating in the **Research** are notified that IRB approval for the study has been **Suspended** or **Terminated**.

In addition the IRB shall consider taking the following steps to protect the rights and welfare of current participants:

- Transfer subjects to another **Investigator**.

- Make arrangements for care or follow-up outside the **Research**.

- Allow continuation of some **Research** activities under the supervision of an independent monitor or other designated **Investigator**. The data cannot be used for **Research** purposes, however.

- Require or permit follow-up of subjects for safety reasons; provided, however, that if follow-up for safety reasons is permitted/required by the IRB, then the IRB will require that the subjects be so informed and that any adverse events/outcomes be reported to the IRB and the **Sponsor**. The IRB should be informed of the individual patient ID numbers and receive a statement from the Investigator or medical monitor that it is in the best interests of each individual subject to continue to receive study interventions or follow up.
Notification of former subjects.

Communicate to the PI the actions required to protect the rights and welfare of currently enrolled subjects. (NOTE: This communication will be carried out by the IRB Chair (or a designated Vice Chair, in the IRB Chair’s absence, or the IRB Director in the absence of both Chair and Vice Chair).

Further investigation, if indicated, will proceed as described in accordance with these P&Ps or other relevant University policies and procedures.

**PI’s Responsibilities:** The PI shall
- Promptly report to the IRB any failure to follow the approved protocol or IRB requirements.
- Cooperate with any inquiry or investigation by the IRB.
- Cease enrollment and Research procedures as required by the IRB Chair or convened IRB.
- Notify enrolled subjects of the Suspension or Termination, if so required by the IRB Chair or convened IRB.
- Ensure that the rights and welfare of subjects withdrawn from Suspended or Terminated Research are protected.
- Establish appropriate procedures for follow-up for enrolled subjects as required by the IRB Chair or convened IRB.
- Report to the IRB and the Sponsor any Adverse Events or Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others encountered during subject withdrawal and follow-up in accordance with the P&P entitled Investigator Reporting Obligations to the IRB.

**AVAMC Research:**

The terms “suspension” and “termination” apply to interruptions related to concerns regarding the safety, rights, or welfare of human participants, Researchers, Research Staff, or others. Suspensions and terminations do not include interruptions in research resulting solely from the expiration of a protocol approval period, or from Administrative Holds or other actions initiated voluntarily by a VA facility official, Researcher, or Sponsor for reasons other than concerns regarding the safety, rights, or welfare of human participants, Researchers, Research Staff, or others.

“Administrative Holds:” the VA “administrative hold” is a voluntary interruption of research enrollments and ongoing research activities by an appropriate VA facility official, Researcher, or Sponsor (including the ORD when ORD is the sponsor). This policy
must be applied as appropriate. This term does not apply to interruptions of VA research related to concerns regarding the safety, rights, or welfare of human research subjects, research investigators, research staff, or others (i.e. suspensions or terminations). An administrative hold must not be used to avoid reporting deficiencies or circumstances otherwise covered by the VHA Handbooks or other federal requirements governing research.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §§ 46.103(b)(5)(ii) & .113.
VHA Handbook
63 REPORTING TO GOVERNMENTAL REGULATORY AUTHORITIES, SPONSORS, AND INSTITUTIONAL PERSONNEL

POLICY:

The Emory IRB will fulfill all reporting obligations to governmental regulatory agencies specified in any applicable laws and regulations.

PROCEDURES:

Regulatory Reporting Requirements: The Emory IRB shall report to OHRP and to the FDA any changes in IRB Committee membership in accordance with the P&P set forth above in the P&P entitled IRB Membership. In addition, per the requirements of Emory’s FWA, for all Human Subjects Research conducted at Emory and subject to Emory’s FWA, the Emory IRB shall report the events set forth below to OHRP and, in the case of FDA-regulated products, to FDA as well. Simultaneously with the reporting of these events to OHRP/FDA, reports also shall be made to appropriate institutional officials and affected Research Sponsors and other federal or other governmental agencies when the Research is subject to those agencies and separate reporting is required.

In the case of Research subject to a DOD Addendum, reporting obligations specific to DOD units are summarized below.

Events to be reported are as follows, with reports to be made as soon as possible after the action is taken by the IRB:

- Determination by the IRB that an event that occurred at an Emory-affiliated site should be considered an Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others (also referred to herein as an Unanticipated Problem);

- Determination by the IRB that there has been Serious Non-Compliance or Continuing Non-Compliance with IRB policies, requirements or determinations;

- Any IRB Suspension or Termination of Emory IRB approval of a Research protocol.

The Emory IRB need not report to federal agencies already made aware of the event through other mechanisms, such as reporting by the investigator, sponsor, or another organization.

Contact Persons for Reporting and Report Content:

Reports to HHS via OHRP:

Unless otherwise specified by federal regulations, all reports that the Emory IRB is required to make to HHS shall be made to the Office of Human Research Protections (OHRP), Compliance Division, at the following address:
Office of Human Research Protections, 1101 Wootton Parkway, Suite 200, Rockville, MD
20852, Attention: Office of the Director. Toll Free Phone No. -- (866) 447-4777; Phone -- (240) 453-6900; FAX -- (240) 453-6909; Email - ohrp@osophs.dhhs.gov

Report Content: Reports shall contain the following information:

For Unanticipated Problems: (a) Name of the institution conducting the Research; (b) title of the Research project and/or grant proposal in which the problem occurred; (c) name of the PI on the protocol; (d) identification number for the Research project assigned by the Emory IRB and the identification number of any applicable federal awards (e.g., grant, contract, etc.); (e) detailed description of the problem; (f) the IRB’s Findings; (g) corrective and preventive actions the institution is taking or plans to address the problem and the reasons for them (e.g., revise protocol, suspend subject enrollment, revise informed consent, etc.); (h) any further investigation or action recommended to be taken (if applicable); and (i) plans, if any, to send a follow-up or final report by the earlier of a specific date or when the inquiry has been completed or corrective action has been implemented. Consultations between the IRB Director and the IO or ORC Director are encouraged. The IRB Chair, or designee (IRB Director, Vice-Chair, or other designated IRB member), shall sign the report and send it out with a copy to the IO and/or ORC Director and to the IRB files. The report is also provided to the IRB as part of the agenda packet at its next meeting.

For Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance: (a) Name of the institution conducting the Research; (b) title of the Research project and/or grant proposal in which the noncompliance occurred; (c) name of the PI on the protocol; (d) identification number for the Research project assigned by the Emory IRB and the identification number of any applicable federal award (e.g., grant, contract, etc.); (e) detailed description of the noncompliance; and (f) corrective and preventive actions the institution is taking or plans to take to address the noncompliance and the reasons for them (e.g., educate the Investigator, educate Research staff, Suspend the protocol, suspend the Investigator, conduct random audits, etc.); and (g) plans for continued investigation or action.

For Suspension or Termination: (a) Name of the institution conducting the Research; (b) title of the Research project and/or grant proposal for which Emory IRB approval was Suspended or Terminated; (c) name of the PI on the protocol; (d) identification number of the Research project assigned by the Emory IRB that was Suspended or Terminated and the identification number of any applicable federal awards (e.g., grant, contract, etc.); (e) detailed description of the reason for the Suspension or Termination; and (f) corrective and preventive actions the institution is taking or plans to take to address the Suspension or Termination and the reasons for them (e.g., investigate alleged noncompliance, educate the Investigator; educate all Research staff, require monitoring of the Investigator, etc.); and (g) plans for continued investigation or action.

Report Timing: All reports to OHRP must be made promptly. For a reportable event, reports should be made within 30 calendar days of when the IRB makes a determination that an event is a reportable event. The Emory IRB may determine that it is appropriate to provide an initial report and indicate that a follow-up or final report will follow by the earlier of a specific date or at the completion of an investigation or inquiry or upon implementation of a corrective action plan.
**Report Review:** All reports will be reviewed by the IRB Chair, the IO, and the Director before they are sent out.

**OHRP Response:** OHRP guidance states that it will respond in writing to reports received and state whether the report was adequate or request additional information. Questions regarding reporting requirements should be address to the Director of the Division of Compliance Oversight at (301) 496-7005 or (866) 447-4777.

**Reports to FDA:**

For Research protocols involving FDA-regulated products, reports of Unanticipated Problems, Serious or Continuing Non-Compliance and/or Suspension or Termination of a Study shall be made to FDA. Reports to FDA shall contain the information to be included in reports to OHRP plus the following additional facts: (a) name of drug, device or biologic involved; (b) any IND or IDE number; (c) name of drug, device or biologic Sponsor. Unless otherwise specified by federal regulations, all reports from the Emory IRB to the FDA shall be made to the following addresses:

**Re. General IRB Matters:** FDA, Division of Scientific Investigations, Office of Medical Policy, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER), MPN1, 7520 Standish Place, Room IO3, Rockville, MD 20955.

**Re. Drug Studies:** FDA, Division of Scientific Investigations, Office of Medical Policy, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER), MPN1, 7520 Standish Place, Room IO3, Rockville, MD 20955. Phone: (301) 594-0020; FAX: (301) 594-1204.

**Re. Device Studies:** FDA, Division of Bioresearch Monitoring, Office of Compliance, Center for Device and Radiological Health (CDRH), 2094 Gaither Rd., Rockville, MD 20850. Phone: (240) 276-0125; FAX: (240) 276-0128; email: matthew.tarosky@fda.hhs.gov.

**Re. Biological Studies:** FDA, Bioresearch Monitoring Branch, Office of Compliance and Biologics Quality, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER), 1401 Rockville Pike, Rockville, MD 20852. Phone: (301) 827-6221; FAX: (301) 827-6748.

**Report Timing:** All reports to FDA must be made promptly. For a reportable event, reports should be made within 30 calendar days of when the IRB makes a determination that an event is a reportable event. The Emory IRB may determine that it is appropriate to provide an initial report and indicate that a follow-up or final report will follow by the earlier of a specific date or at the completion of an investigation or inquiry or upon implementation of a corrective action plan.

**Report Review:** All reports will be reviewed by the IRB Chair, the IO, and the IRB Director before they are sent out.

**Reports to Sponsors:**
If a study is conducted or funded by a federal agency other than HHS that is subject to the Common Rule, then a report should be sent to OHRP or to the head of the agency, as required by the agency. Reports to Research Sponsors shall be made by the Principal Investigator or the IRB. The report to the Sponsor will become part of the IRB file. If the PI notifies the Sponsor instead of the IRB, the PI should send a copy of the Sponsor notification to the IRB.

Reports of suspensions or terminations of IRB approval shall be forwarded to the Emory Office of Sponsored Programs or Office of Grants and Contracts. The IRB shall consult the Emory Office of Sponsored Programs for any additional contractual reporting obligations. Circulation of copies of all reports and notices must be completed within 15 business days of the initiating action.

**AVAMC Research:**

If the convened IRB or the IRB reviewer determines that a problem or event was serious, unanticipated, and related to the research, OR if an incident constitutes serious or continuing non-compliance, the IRB chair or designee must report in writing the event or incident along with its determination within five business days to:

- Medical center director
- Associate chief of staff for research
- The Research and Development Committee
- Other relevant research review committee(s)

The Emory IRB will then rely on the AVAMC to make any necessary reports to governmental regulatory authorities. These reports will be made by the AVAMC Institutional Official (the AVAMC Director), through the AVAMC Research Compliance Office. The AVAMC Institutional Official (the AVAMC Director), through the AVAMC Research Compliance Office, must report the problem or event to the appropriate Office of Research Oversight research officer within five business days after receiving such notification. The AVAMC Research Compliance Office will prepare reports documenting any determinations regarding AVAMC Research to all necessary regulatory authorities, (such as OHRP, FDA, or other governmental agencies) with copies being sent to the AVAMC Research Office, the Chair of the RDC, the VA Office of Research and Development, and to the Regional VA Office of Research Oversight.

The report of UPs will be sent to (via the AVAMC) the VA Privacy Office, when the report involves unauthorized use, loss, or disclosure of individually identifiable patient information and the VHA Information Security Officer when the report involves violations of VA information security requirements. IRBs of academic affiliates and the IRB of record for VA facilities must follow these requirements.

**Research Subject to DOD Requirements:**

For DOD supported research, the following must be promptly (no longer than within 30 days) reported to the DoD human research protection officer:

- When significant changes to the research protocol are approved by the IRB
• The results of the IRB continuing review.
• Change of reviewing IRB.
• When the organization is notified by any federal department, agency or national organization that any part of an HRPP is under investigation for cause involving a DoD-supported research protocol.
• all UPIRTSOs, suspensions, terminations, and findings of serious or continuing noncompliance regarding DoD-supported research involving human subjects.

In addition, findings of serious or continuing non-compliance must be reported to the Director, Defense Research and Engineering. Reporting requirements specific to the DOD unit providing funding support also must be followed. For example, in the case of studies supported by the Department of the Navy, the following matters must be reported to the Department of the Navy Human Research Protections Program Office: (a) all suspensions or terminations of previously approved DON-supported research protocols; (b) the initiation and results of investigations of alleged non-compliance with human subject protections; (c) unanticipated problems involving risks to subjects or others, or serious adverse events in DON-supported research protocols; (d) all audits, investigations, or inspections of DON-supported research; (e) all audits, investigations, or inspections of the institution’s Human Research Protections Program conducted by outside entities; (f) significant communication between institutions conducting research and other federal departments and agencies regarding compliance and oversight; and (g) all restrictions, suspensions or terminations of the institution’s assurances.

Notification of Institutional Personnel: Copies of any reports and notices sent to FDA and/or OHRP, any other governmental regulatory agency, and Research Sponsors shall be sent to the IO and to his/her designees for oversight of IRB matters. Copies also shall be sent to the Director of the Office of Research Compliance; to the Emory University Privacy Officer if the event involved unauthorized use, loss, or disclosure of PHI from the Covered Entity, to the Information Security Officer if the event involves unauthorized, use, loss or disclosure of electronic PHI from the Covered Entity, and to any other persons within the University deemed appropriate by the IO. Further, if the Emory IRB determines that the notice pertains to a particular PI or study, as opposed to more general Emory IRB matters, the Emory IRB also shall provide a copy of the notice to the PI in question or PI for the study in question and to the PI’s divisional and departmental supervisor(s).

IRB Personnel Tasked with Making Reports: Unless otherwise instructed by the Institutional Official, the IRB Chair shall sign any letters of report that are made according to this P&P, or in his/her absence, the IRB Director or Institutional Official shall assume this duty.

Applicable Regulations:
45 CFR §~ 46.103(b)(5) and 113.
21 CFR §~ 56. 108(b) and 113.
38 CFR §§16.103(b)(5); & 113.
VHA Handbook 1058.01
OHRP Guidance Document on Reporting Incidents to OHRP (May 27, 2005).
32 CFR Part 219; DOD Addendum; DOD Directive 3216.1; SECNAVINST 3900.39D Par. 8(d).
64 USING FDA-REGULATED PRODUCTS

POLICY:

In reviewing any clinical Research, including but not limited to Research involving clinical investigations of drugs, biological products for human use, Medical Devices for human use, human food additives, color additives or electronic products, the Emory IRB shall determine the applicability of FDA Regulations. If such FDA Regulations apply, the Emory IRB shall ensure that the Research meets all applicable FDA requirements of the FDA Regulations, in addition to any applicable requirements of HHS Regulations. In cases in which both the FDA and HHS Regulations apply and there are differences between the two sets of regulations differ irreconcilably, the IRB shall follow the stricter rules.

PROCEDURES:

Prior IRB Approval Required: With a few limited exceptions (described below), Emory IRB Approval is required prior to using a non-FDA approved drug or Medical Device on a Human Subject in order to generate Research data that will be used to support an application for the marketing of a non-FDA approved FDA drug or Medical Device; or in order to generate Research data that will be used to support an application for the marketing of an FDA-approved drug or Medical Device for a use other than that for which the drug or device was initially approved.

Exemption Categories Under HHS Regulations do not Apply to Research Governed by FDA Regulations: The exempt categories of Research specified under the HHS Regulations do not apply to Research protocols involving items that are regulated by the FDA.

FDA Exemption Categories: The only types of Research protocols involving FDA-regulated items that do not require prior IRB review are listed below:

Emergency Use of a Test Article, as described below, provided that the Emergency Use is reported to the Emory IRB within five working days of the use and any subsequent use of the item is subject to IRB review.

Taste and food quality evaluations and consumer acceptance studies, if wholesome foods without additives are consumed or if a food is consumed that contains a food ingredient at or below the level and for a use found to be safe, or agricultural, chemical or environmental contaminant at or below the level found to be safe, by the FDA or approved by the EPA of the Food Safety and inspection Service of the USDA.

FDA Waiver: The FDA, on the application of a Sponsor (including an investigator who is a Sponsor) can waive the requirement for IRB review for specific Research activities or classes of Research activities.

FDA Required Documentation: Investigators and Sponsor-Investigators are responsible for the accurate and appropriate completion of documentation required to be obtained by/provided to the Sponsor and/or the FDA pursuant to FDA regulations governing the initiation and conduct of clinical investigations of drugs, biological products for human use, Medical Devices for human
use, human food additives, color additives or electronic products. Such documentation may include, but is not limited to, FDA Form 1572 – Statement of Investigator, investigator agreement, financial disclosure documentation, safety reports, and annual report. Investigators and Sponsor-Investigators shall consult FDA regulations and appropriate FDA Guidance documents for assistance in the appropriate completion of such documentation.

**Applicable Regulations:**

21 CFR 56.103 - .105
21 CFR Parts 312 and 812
65 INVESTIGATIONAL MEDICAL DEVICES

POLICY:

The Emory IRB shall review and evaluate clinical Research that involves Medical Devices in accordance with applicable FDA Regulations. In reviewing Research regarding Medical Devices, the Emory IRB shall make a determination as to whether the Medical Device is a Significant Risk or Non-Significant Risk Device. The Emory IRB shall have oversight over any Emergency Research Use; Compassionate Use; Planned Emergency Research Use; or Humanitarian Use of a Medical Device. In addition, the Emory IRB shall require PIs to provide a plan for the control and handling of test articles to ensure that test articles are used only in conformance with protocol requirements, as well as proper dispensing and disposition of test articles.

REGULATORY BACKGROUND:

Device Classes: The FDA primarily regulates Medical Devices based on the level of risk that they pose to users. The FDA divides Medical Devices into the following classes based on this risk analysis:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Types of Products</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class I</td>
<td>devices present minimal potential for harm to user and are usually simpler in design.</td>
<td>General Controls – least regulatory control. Include establishment registration, Medical Device listing, labeling, using GMP in manufacture, and submitting Premarket Notification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class II</td>
<td>devices for which Class I controls are not enough to ensure safety and effectiveness.</td>
<td>Special Controls -- General Controls plus Special Controls; may include special labeling requirements, mandatory performance standards and post-market surveillance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class III</td>
<td>usually devices that support or sustain human life, are of substantial importance in preventing impairment of health, or present a potential unreasonable risk of illness or injury.</td>
<td>Premarket Approval - most stringent regulatory category. Requires scientific review to ensure safety and effectiveness. Applies to devices for which insufficient information exists to assure safety and effectiveness solely through General or Special Controls.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Marketing of New Medical Devices: Except for certain very low risk devices, a person or
company who wants to introduce a new **Medical Device** on the market must submit a **Premarket Notification** to the FDA. The FDA reviews the notification to determine if the **Medical Device** is similar to a **Medical Device** that was marketed prior to the passage of the **Medical Device** Amendments of 1976 to the Food and Drug Act. If the FDA determines that the new **Medical Device** is “substantially equivalent” to a **Medical Device** approved before the amendments, it can be marketed immediately and is regulated under the same **Medical Device** class that applied to the previous **Medical Device**. If the **Medical Device** is not substantially equivalent, then it has to be clinically tested and receive **Premarket Approval** from the FDA for safety and effectiveness before it can go on the market. IRB review is required for any clinical investigations of such **Medical Devices** before their initiation.

**Off-Label Use of Medical Devices:** Medical Devices may be marketed only for the uses approved by the FDA. A physician may use an FDA APPROVED Medical Device “off-label” - for a use other than the FDA approved use - in the physician’s practice of medicine. The physician may not do **Research** regarding the off-label use of the device to develop information regarding the safety or effectiveness or to support marketing of the **Medical Device** UNLESS the physician is using the device under an FDA approved **Investigational Device Exemption** (see below).

**Importing Medical Devices:** Medical Devices that are not approved by the FDA for use may not be used in the United States; the FDA does not recognize foreign regulatory approvals. Any person who brings into the United States from another country a non-FDA approved Medical Device for use on Human Subjects is considered to be the agent for the foreign manufacturer of the device, and must either act as the Sponsor for the device under the FDA Regulations and hold an **Investigational Device Exemption** (IDE) pursuant to which the Medical Device may be used in clinical investigations, or ensure that another person in the United States assumes the Sponsor’s responsibilities. Medical Devices brought into the United States must meet FDA and U.S. Customs requirements. The FDA requires that the Sponsor that holds an IDE for a Medical Device that is to be used in a clinical investigation MUST BE LOCATED in the United States. If a non-FDA approved **Investigational Medical Device** is brought into the United States without an appropriate FDA IDE, it may be detained by Customs Officials.

**Investigational Device Exemption Requirement:**

**Obtaining an Investigational Device Exemptions (IDEs):** Aside from studies which fall under one of the IDE exemptions listed below, in order for a PI to conduct clinical studies for the purpose of collecting safety and effectiveness data necessary to support the marketing of a new non-FDA approved Medical Device (or a new use for a currently marketed FDA-approved device), the IRB requires that the PI ensure and provide documentation to the IRB establishing that the Sponsor of the device has obtained from the FDA, and is conducting the Research protocol under auspices of, an **Investigational Device Exemption** (IDE). In cases in which the PI is also the Sponsor for a Medical Device study, the PI should hold the IDE.

The approved IDE permits the manufacturer of the device to lawfully ship the device for use in the clinical trial. When submitting to the IRB a protocol involving a **Medical Device** that requires an IDE, the PI must provide the IRB with evidence of the IDE, i.e., a copy of the industry sponsored protocol with the IDE number; or a letter from the FDA or industry Sponsor setting forth the IDE number. If the study involves a **Medical Device** and no IDE number is provided to the IRB, the PI will be required to provide an explanation as to why an IDE is not required and
how the study qualifies for one of the exempt categories set forth below.

The IRB may verify the IDE number by requesting that the PI: provide the date on which the IDE application was submitted; certify that 30 days have passed since the date of the IDE submission; and certify that no correspondence was received from the FDA during that period that indicated that the IDE may not be granted or that additional information was required regarding the IDE application. IRB analysts or Team Leads or Director and/or IRB members shall confirm that the IDE number is valid by comparing it to the protocol with pre-printed IDE number (i.e., from sponsor) or to correspondence from the FDA.

**Studies Exempt from IDE Requirement:**

_Sponsors_ (including PIs who are acting as both PIs and _Sponsors_) are not required to hold an IDE to conduct _Research_ protocols involving the types of clinical investigations listed below. If a PI believes that a _Research_ involving a _Medical Device_ does not require an IDE, he/she should provide the Emory IRB with documentation establishing that the clinical investigation of the _Medical Device_ at issue falls within one of the following categories:

- A clinical investigation of a FDA-approved, legally marketed device that is being used in accordance with its labeling.

- A clinical investigation of a device, other than a transitional device, in commercial distribution immediately before May 28, 1976, when used or investigated in accordance with the indications in labeling in effect at that time.

- A clinical investigation of a device, other than a transitional device, introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, that the FDA has determined to be substantially equivalent to a device in commercial distribution immediately before May 28, 1976 and that is used or investigated in accordance with the labeling FDA reviewed under Subpart E of 21 CFR Part 807 in determining substantial equivalence.

- A clinical investigation involving a _Diagnostic Medical Device_ if it complies with FDA labeling requirements in 21 CFR 809.10(c) and if the testing: (a) is noninvasive; (b) does not require an invasive sampling procedure that presents significant risk; (c) does not by design or intention introduce energy into a subject; and (d) is not used as a diagnostic procedure without confirmation by another medically established diagnostic product or procedure.

- Consumer preference testing, testing of a modification or testing of a combination of devices if the devices(s) are legally marketed devices and if the testing is not for the purpose of determining safety or effectiveness and does not put subjects at risk.

- Clinical investigation of a device intended solely for veterinary use.

- Clinical investigation of a device solely intended for _Research_ with laboratory animals that contains the labeling “Caution — Device for investigational use in
laboratory animals or other tests that do not involve human subjects.”

A custom device as defined in 21 CFR 812.3(b), unless the device is being used to determine safety or effectiveness for commercial distribution.

**Studies Exempt from IDE Require IRB Approval:** In all but rare instances, studies involving *Medical Devices* that are exempt from requiring an IDE will still require IRB **Approval** and informed consent of the subjects who are participating. No device risk determination (**Significant Risk** vs. **Non-Significant Risk**) is required in these cases, however.

**PROCEDURES:**

**Control and Inventory of Investigational Medical Devices at Sites under Emory IRB Jurisdiction:**

The PI is responsible for controlling the use, dispensing and disposition of **Investigational Medical Devices** and ensuring that proper controls and documentation are in place for **Investigational Medical Device** inventories.

- For protocols that involve **Investigational Medical Devices**, the PI shall include as a part of the application for IRB review a description of the PI’s plan for controlling the dispensation, use and disposal of the Investigational Medical Device and maintaining appropriate documentation regarding such dispensation, use and disposal.

**Device Risk Determination for non-IDE-exempt Medical Device Research Protocols:** The FDA employs different criteria for granting an IDE depending on whether the device in question is a “**Significant Risk Device**” or a “**Non-Significant Risk Device**.”

**Emory IRB Process for Making Device Risk Determination:** The Emory IRB will follow the process set forth below in making the determination as to whether a device is a **Significant Risk** or **Non-Significant Risk Device**:

**Initial Sponsor Determination:** Generally, the **Sponsor** of a **Medical Device** will make an initial determination as to whether the device is a **Significant Risk Device** (in which case the Sponsor must apply for and obtain an IDE), or a **Non-Significant Risk Device**. This determination should be provided to the Emory IRB. If a **Sponsor** has determined that a device is a **Significant Risk Device**, the Emory IRB will not disagree with this determination and will require documentation of an approved IDE application before fully approving the **Research**.

If the Sponsor or Emory PI asserts that the non-IDE-exempt **Medical Device** as used in the proposed Research meets the definition of Non-Significant Risk, then the Research is brought to **Full Committee Review**, and the Committee shall vote on whether the device should be categorized as a **Significant Risk** or **Non-Significant Risk Device**.

**Considerations:** The Emory IRB will make its risk determination based on the proposed use of the device in the **Research** protocol and not on the device alone. If the subject must undergo a procedure as a part of the study in order to use the **Medical Device**, then the Emory IRB will consider the potential harm that could be caused by the
procedure in addition to the potential harm caused by the *Medical Device*.

The Emory IRB will consider the nature of the harm that may result from use of the *Medical Device*. The Emory IRB does not need to make a device risk determination if the FDA has already officially made the determination that the device is either a *Significant Risk Device* or *Non-significant Risk Device* or if the FDA has already approved an *IDE* for the use of the device for the study.

The Emory IRB will consider the *Medical Device* to be a *Significant Risk Device* if its use in the study could result in potential harm to subjects that:

- Could be life threatening;
- Could result in permanent physical impairment of a body function or part; or
- Could necessitate medical or surgical intervention to preclude permanent impairment of a body function or part.

**Information the IRB Requires for Risk Determination:** The PI on a *Research* protocol involving a non-IDE-exempt *Medical Device* should provide the Emory IRB with the following information:

- Documentation as to whether *Medical Device* to be used has a third-party *Sponsor* holding an IDE, and if so the *Sponsor’s* name, or documentation establishing that the PI is the *Sponsor*.
- Documentation of Sponsor’s risk assessment of the device.
- Description of the device.
- Proposed investigational plan.
- Description of subject selection criteria.
- Description of monitoring procedures.
- Information on whether any other IRBs have reviewed the study and made a risk determination regarding the device, and if so, the determination that was made.
- Information regarding any assessment of the device’s risk made by the FDA.
- Informed consent and HIPAA Authorization forms.

The rationale behind the Emory IRB’s determination shall be set forth within the minutes for the meeting at which the decision is made. In addition, any approval notice from the IRB to the PI shall state whether the *Medical Device* is classified as a *Significant Risk* or *Non-Significant Risk Device*.

**Possible Determinations & Consequences:**

**Concurrence with Sponsor’s Assessment that Device is Non-Significant Risk Device:** If the Emory IRB concurs with the *Sponsor’s* determination that the *Medical Device is a Non-Significant Risk Device*, then, provided the Emory IRB approves the *Research* protocol, the PI may begin the *Research* protocol without submitting an IDE application to the FDA. The sponsor and Investigator must still comply with the “abbreviated IDE
requirements” in 21 CFR 812.2(b).

**Disagreement with Sponsor’s Assessment that the Device is Non-Significant Risk Device:** If the Emory IRB disagrees with the Sponsor’s assessment that a Medical Device is a Non-Significant Risk Device, then the Emory IRB will send written notice of its determination to the PI and to the Sponsor. The Sponsor must, in turn, notify the FDA and the Research protocol may not be initiated until the FDA approves the IDE application and assigns a risk determination. The Sponsor (generally through the PI) must provide the Emory IRB with notice and documentation that the FDA has granted the IDE and the IDE number must appear on the Investigator’s IRB application that is submitted for Final Full IRB Committee review.

**FDA Requirements for Significant Risk Devices:** The FDA and the Emory IRB BOTH must approve a Research protocol employing a Significant Risk Device BEFORE the study begins.

The following steps must be taken with regard to obtaining and carrying out a Significant Risk Device study at Emory under an IDE:

- **Sponsor** submits an IDE application to the FDA for review and approval.

- **Sponsor** selects qualified PI(s) at Emory, obtains signed Investigator agreements, and provides PI(s) with the investigational plan and reports of prior investigations.

- PI submits the Research protocol and report of prior investigations to the Emory IRB (and to the IRB at any other site at which the study is to be conducted) for review and approval. Informed consent materials must also be submitted to the Emory IRB for review and approval.

- The FDA will notify the Sponsor in writing of the date on which the IDE is received. The IDE application is considered approved by the FDA 30 days after it is received by the FDA, unless the FDA informs the Sponsor otherwise. If the IDE application is not approved by the FDA, the Sponsor must inform the PI and the Emory IRB.

- Prior to initiating the study at an Emory site, Approval from the Emory IRB also must be obtained.

- Certification of Emory IRB Approval may be included in the original IDE application sent by the Sponsor to the FDA. If Certification of IRB approval is not included in the original application, then the Sponsor submits it to the FDA as a supplement to the IDE, and the FDA must approve the supplement. If the IRB Certification is from a site that was listed in the original approved IDE application, then the FDA will not usually provide a written response regarding the Certification. If, however, the site was not identified in the original IDE application, the Sponsor should not proceed with the study at the site until it receives written acknowledgement of the addition and IRB Certification for that site from the FDA.
After the FDA has approved the IDE application and the Emory IRB has approved the study plan, then appropriate labeling shall be placed on the devices, and they may be distributed only to qualified PIs at the Emory site who have signed Investigator agreements.

Study participants must sign approved Research informed consents. The Sponsor is required to monitor the conduct of the study for safety and compliance. Both the Sponsor and Investigator are required to make certain reports and maintain certain records. (See the FDA’s listing of Sponsor and PI responsibilities at http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/DeviceRegulationandGuidance/HowtoMarketYourDevice/InvestigationalDeviceExemptionIDE/ucm046702.htm for more details.)

**FDA Requirements for Non-Significant Risk Devices & Abbreviated IDEs:**
Clinical investigations at Emory sites involving Non-Significant Risk Devices that are not banned devices require Emory IRB Approval but not FDA approval (If the study is conducted at other sites, their IRBs also must approve). Once the IRB approves the study, the FDA considers this type of investigation to have an approved “abbreviated” application for an IDE (that is, approved by the IRB) unless the FDA has otherwise notified the sponsor that an application is necessary.

Once the IRB has concurred with the Sponsor’s determination of non-significant risk and approves the study, the following steps must be taken:

The device should be labeled in accordance with 21 CFR 812.5 as an Investigational Medical Device and provided only to qualified PIs at the Emory site who are on the study.

Written documentation of informed consent must be obtained from Research participants, pursuant to a Research informed consent form approved by the Emory IRB unless the IRB waives the requirement to obtain written documentation of informed consent in accordance with applicable FDA regulations (see 21 CFR 56.109);

The Sponsor must monitor the conduct of the study in accordance with 21 CFR 812.46;

Both the PI and the Sponsor must submit required reports and keep required records. (See 21 CFR 812.140(b) (4) & (5); 21 CFR 812.140(a)(3)(i); 812.150(b) (1) –(3) and (5) to (10); and 21 CFR 812.150(a)(1), (2), (5) and (7); and

The Sponsor complies with prohibition against promotion and other requirements under 21 CFR 812.7.

**Review of Study when Risk Determination is Made:** All Research protocols involving clinical investigations of non-IDE-exempt Medical Devices shall be reviewed by Full Committee Review...
after or concurrently with the **Full Committee’s** determination as to whether the **Medical Device** is a **Significant Risk** or **Non-Significant Risk Device**. Generally, these actions take place at the same convened meeting.

**Marketing or Promoting Investigational Medical Devices is Prohibited**: The FDA prohibits the promotion, commercialization and misrepresentation of an **Investigational Medical Device**. This Emory IRB shall be aware of this prohibition in reviewing any advertising or recruitment materials for studies involving **Investigational Medical Devices**.

**Applicable Regulations**:

- 21 CFR Part 812 (investigational devices)
- 21 CFR Part 814 (premarket approval of medical devices)
- 21 CFR Part 860 (device classifications procedures)
- 21 CFR Parts 862 — 892 (device type classifications)

FDA Device Advice Publication at


66 EMERGENCY USE OF INVESTIGATIONAL MEDICAL DEVICES

POLICY:

Any Emergency Use of investigational Medical Devices or Humanitarian Use Devices by physicians at Emory University shall be carried out per FDA Regulations and these P&Ps. (See further P&Ps about Treatment INDs, “Compassionate Use,” and Humanitarian Use Devices.)

Under DHHS Regulations, patients receiving a test article in an emergency use as defined by FDA regulations may not be considered to be research participants. DHHS Regulations do not permit data obtained from such patients to be classified as human participants’ research, nor permit the outcome of such care to be included in any report of a research activity subject to DHHS regulations.

PROCEDURES:

Emergency Use of an Investigational Medical Device: The FDA recognizes that there are situations in which a patient may require the use of an Investigational Medical Device in order to save his or her life even though there is no current IDE for the device, or the patient does not meet the protocol criteria for the IDE, or the physician or institution is not an approved user/site under the IDE.

In these situations, in order for a physician at Emory to make an Emergency Use of the Investigational Medical Device, the physician must determine that the following conditions must exist:

- The patient has a life-threatening or serious disease or condition; and
- There is no generally acceptable alternative treatment; and
- There is no time to obtain FDA approval for the use because the Investigational Medical Device needs to be used in the patient immediately.
- There is a substantial reason to believe that a potential benefit will occur

Actions Physicians at Emory Must Take: If the foregoing conditions exist, then the physician who wants to make an Emergency Use of an Investigational Medical Device must take the following actions:

BEFORE using the Investigational Medical Device, the physician must take as many of the following patient protection measures as possible:

- Obtain a written independent assessment of the use of the device by an uninvolved physician.
- Obtain documented informed consent from the patient or his/her Authorized Legal Representative;
Obtain documented authorization from the holder of the IDE for the *Investigational Medical Device*, if an IDE exists.

Notify the Emory IRB by contacting the IRB Chair or his/her designee, and provide the Emory IRB with a written description of the circumstances necessitating the use of the device, along with copies of any uninvolved physician’s assessment, informed consent and the IDE’s holder’s authorization. In order to use a medical device in a life-threatening situation without prior IRB review, there must not be sufficient time to obtain IRB approval.

Notify any other institutional officials who require notice under institutional policies.

**AFTER** using the device the physician must take the following steps:

Report the use to the Emory IRB in writing within **five business days** and, if not previously provided to the Emory IRB, provide a written description of the circumstances necessitating the use of the device and copies of any uninvolved physician’s assessment, informed consent and IDE’s holder’s authorization, **OR** provide a written explanation as to why any of these items were not obtained, including any required certification from an uninvolved physician as to why informed consent could not be obtained. Any reports provided shall be reviewed by the IRB Chair or his/her designee for compliance with FDA criteria.

Evaluate the likelihood of a similar use of the device occurring again at Emory, and if such a future use is likely, begin steps to obtain a new IDE or amend an existing IDE to cover the device’s future use and to obtain Emory IRB approval. FDA regulations require that any subsequent use of the investigational product at the institution have prospective IRB review and approval. FDA acknowledges, however, that it would be inappropriate to deny emergency treatment to a second individual if the only obstacle is that the IRB has not had sufficient time to convene a meeting to review the issue. If an IDE application for subsequent use is filed and disapproved by the FDA, then the device may not be used, even if emergency circumstances exist.

The physician must notify the IDE Sponsor of the *Emergency Use*, or if there is no IDE, he/she should notify the FDA of the *Emergency Use* by calling the FDA’s IDE Staff at 301-796-5640.

After the use occurs, the physician must provide the FDA with a written summary of the conditions constituting the emergency, patient protection measures taken and patient results.

**Inability to Obtain Informed Consent in an Emergency Use Situation:** The physician must obtain informed consent from the patient or the patient’s *Legally Authorized Representative* for the use of the *Investigational Medical Device* in an emergency situation **UNLESS** the physician meets the conditions set forth in the entitled *Waiver of Alteration of Informed Consent for Research* and the procedure specified therein is followed.
Inability to Obtain Certification from Uninvolved Physician Regarding Inability to Obtain Informed Consent: If a physician determines that all of the conditions set forth in the P&P entitle: Waiver of Alteration of Informed Consent for Research for not obtaining informed consent are met, but there is not enough time to get the certification of an uninvolved physician because of the immediate need to use the investigational Medical Device to save the patient’s life, then the physician may use the device. HOWEVER, the physician must take the following steps WITHIN FIVE BUSINESS DAYS AFTER the use occurs:

Have his/her determination reviewed and evaluated in writing by an uninvolved physician.

Notify the IRB of the use of the device and provide a copy of the review by the uninvolved physician.

Planned Emergency Use vs. Planned Emergency Research: Emergency Use of a device is the unplanned use of a non-FDA approved Medical Device due to a patient’s severe clinical condition. Planned Emergency Research is the planned conduct of Research in life-threatening, emergency situation in which the IRB has approved the waiver of informed consent. Such Research must be approved by the FDA and must be conducted under a separate IDE. In addition, it must be approved by the IRB and meet the EFIC requirements of 21 CFR § 50.24, including consultation with representatives from the community in which the investigation will be conducted and public disclosure to the community of plans for the investigation and its risks and benefits. See the P&P entitled Exception from Informed Consent for Planned Emergency Research.

Responsibility Summary for Emergency Use of an Investigational Medical Device

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsible Person</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physician</td>
<td>Determine that there is life-threatening or serious disease or condition; no acceptable alternative treatment; and no time to get approval from FDA because Investigational Medical Device must be used immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BEFORE using device: (a) obtain independent assessment from uninvolved physician; (b) obtain informed consent from patient or Legally Authorized Representative; (c) obtain authorization for use of device from holder of IDE; (d) notify and provide documentation to IRB; and (e) notify any other university officials, as required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AFTER using Investigational Medical Device: (a) within 5 business days of use, notify IRB of use and provide any information required to be provided, as described above, or explanation as to why such information could not be provided; (b) evaluate possibility of another emergency use and obtain IDE, as necessary; (c) notify IDE holder of use; and (d) notify FDA of use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emory IRB</td>
<td>Receive and review documentation from physician regarding the emergency use of Investigational Medical Device and the exception to the requirement to obtain consent (if applicable), to determine whether the circumstances met FDA regulations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Receive and review follow-up report on use.

**Applicable Regulations:**

21 CFR Part 812 (investigational devices)
21 CFR Part 814 (premarket approval of medical devices)
21 CFR Part 860 (device classification procedures)
21 CFR Parts 862 – 892 (device type classifications)

**Additional Resources:**

FDA Device Classes (summary of general and special controls and premarket approval) at http://www.fda.gov/cdrh/devadvice/3132.html


FDA IRB Information Sheet – Medical Devices, updated 9/98 (includes list of significant and non-significant risk devices) at http://www.fda.gov/oc/ohrt/irbs/devices.html


*FDA Humanitarian Use Devices at* http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfHDE/HDEInformation.cfm
67 TREATMENT USE ("COMPASSIONATE USE") OF INVESTIGATIONAL DEVICES

POLICY:

Any Treatment Use of an Investigational Medical Device by physicians at Emory University shall be carried out per FDA Regulations and these P&Ps.

PROCEDURES:

Compassionate Use of an Investigational Medical Device: The FDA permits an Investigational Medical Device to be used for a single or small group of patients who would benefit from the device but who do not meet the requirements for being included in the IDE clinical investigation under a Treatment Use exemption, which is commonly called a “Compassionate Use” exemption.

Criteria for Compassionate Use: In these situations, the physician may make a Compassionate Use of the Investigational Medical Device if the following conditions exist BEFORE the device is used:

- The single patient or small group of patients has a serious disease or condition for which there is no alternative treatment.
- There is a current clinical trial being conducted under an IDE for the use at issue.
- The FDA approves of the Compassionate Use as a supplement to the existing IDE.
- The IRB Chair concurs in the use.
- An uninvolved physician reviews and provides an independent assessment supporting the use.
- Authorization is obtained from the IDE holder.

Information that Sponsor Must Provide to the FDA for Approval: The Sponsor must submit an IDE supplement to the FDA seeking approval for a protocol deviation to treat the patient or small group of patients. The supplement should include the following information:

- Description of the number of patients to be treated.
- Description of the patient’s condition and circumstances requiring treatment.
- Description of why alternative treatments are unsatisfactory.
- Description of why probable risk from device is no greater than probable risk from disease or condition.
- Description of deviations from the protocol that are needed to treat the patient.
Description of all Patient Protection Measures taken, which should include:

Informed consent from patient or patient’s legal representative.

Concurrence of IRB Chair.

Assessment of use by uninvolved physician.

Authorization for use from IDE holder.

Information that Sponsor Must Provide to the Emory for Approval: The following information should be submitted to the Emory IRB BEFORE the Compassionate Use occurs:

- A description of the circumstances necessitating the use.
- IDE protocol with description of device and name of IDE holder.
- Copy of uninvolved physician’s assessment of use.
- Copy of authorization from IDE holder.

Full Committee Review: For Compassionate Use for a small group of patients, as opposed to a single individual, a complete IRB submission and review by Full Committee Review is required.

No Use of Device Until FDA and IRB Concurrence/Approval are Obtained: The physician should not use the device unless and until FDA approval of the Compassionate Use and IRB concurrence (or Approval, in the case of a Compassionate Use for a group of patients) have been obtained. If the FDA approves the Compassionate Use and the IRB concurs, then the use may occur.

Steps AFTER the Compassionate Use Takes Places Approved: AFTER the use takes place, the following steps must be taken:

- The physician should develop a monitoring schedule for the patient and follow it in an effort to detect any possible problems arising from the use of the device.

- The physician should prepare a follow-up report on the use of the device, including a summary of patient outcome and a description of any problems encountered using the device. This report should be provided to the IRB within 5 business days of the use, as well as to the sponsor.

- The Sponsor should provide the FDA with a copy of the follow-up report as an IDE supplement.

Responsibility Summary: Compassionate Use of an Investigational Device
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsible Person</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physician</td>
<td>Establish that criteria for compassionate use of <em>Investigational Medical Device</em> exist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BEFORE USE: Submit IDE supplement to FDA permitting <em>Compassionate Use</em>, along with all supporting documentation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BEFORE USE: Submit to Emory IRB all documentation supporting compassionate use and obtain Emory IRB concurrence in <em>Compassionate Use</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do not initiate use of device until Emory IRB and FDA approval are obtained.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emory IRB</td>
<td>AFTER USE: Monitor patient and provide follow-up report to Emory IRB and sponsor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Provide <em>Full Committee Review</em> or <em>Expedited Review</em> for a single patient use, and provide <em>Full Committee Review</em> for a small group use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Approve any <em>Compassionate Use</em> before it occurs and obtain documentation of FDA approval as well.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Applicable Regulations:**

21 CFR Part 812 (investigational devices)  
21 CFR Part 814 (premarket approval of medical devices)  
21 CFR Part 860 (device classification procedures)  
21 CFR Parts 862 – 892 (device type classifications)

**Additional Resources:**

FDA Device Classes (summary of general and special controls and premarket approval) at [http://www.fda.gov/cdrh/devadvice/3132.html](http://www.fda.gov/cdrh/devadvice/3132.html)


FDA IRB Information Sheet – Medical Devices, updated 9/98 (includes list of significant and non-significant risk devices) at [http://www.fda.gov/oc/ohrt/irbs/devices.html](http://www.fda.gov/oc/ohrt/irbs/devices.html)


68 HUMANITARIAN USE DEVICES: EXEMPTIONS & USES

POLICY:

Any Humanitarian Use Device (HUD) used for Treatment (commonly known as “Compassionate”) Use or Emergency Use by physicians at Emory shall be done in accordance with FDA Regulations and these P&Ps.

Humanitarian Use Device Exemptions: Humanitarian Use Device Exemptions (HDEs) are exemptions provided by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to allow the use and marketing of an Investigational Medical Device that is “intended to benefit patients in the treatment and diagnosis of diseases or conditions that affect or are manifested in fewer than 4,000 individuals per year in the United States.”

FDA Criteria for an HDE: The applicant for the HDE must establish to the FDA’s satisfaction that (a) the disease or condition that the device is intended to treat affects or is manifested in fewer than 4,000 individuals per year in the United States; and (b) no comparable device, other than a Humanitarian Use Device (HUD) approved under the HDE regulations or a device being studied under an Investigational Device Exemption (IDE), is available to treat the disease or condition.

The HDE applicant does not need to establish the effectiveness of the HUD, but does need to establish that the device does not pose any unreasonable risk of significant illness or injury and the probable benefits to the subject outweigh the risk. It should be noted that if a comparable device is approved under the Pre-Market Approval or pre-market notification process, then the FDA may rescind the HDE for the HUD. Similarly, the FDA also may rescind a HDE if, after granting it, the FDA determines that the disease or condition that the HDE treats affects more than 4,000 people per year in the U.S. Once an HDE is granted, the HUD can be marketed for the FDA approved indication, BUT, it can only be used at a site after the IRB governing that site has reviewed and approved of the use.

Research HUD: If the health care provider plans to collect data on the safety and effectiveness of the HUD for the FDA-approved indication to support a Premarket Approval application for the HUD, then the health care provider may do so under the HDE (as opposed to obtaining an Investigational Device Exemption) BUT, such use of the HUD is considered to be Research. In these circumstances the health care provider must have a Research protocol and Research informed consent and HIPAA Authorization reviewed and approved by the IRB, and all regular IRB P&Ps should apply.

Listing of Current HDEs: The FDA lists all devices that have been granted an HDE at its Centers for Devices and Radiological Health website at http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfHDE/HDEInformation.cfm.
Required IRB Approval of HUD Use: The physician who is using the HUD is responsible for obtaining IRB Approval BEFORE the device is used.

Non-Research HUDs -- Initial IRB Review:

Initial Review of the use of an HUD requires Full Committee Review. The physician who plans to use the HUD should submit to the IRB a basic written plan describing the use of the HUD. Specifically, the physician should submit:

- A copy of the HDE approval order;
- A description of the device;
- The product labeling;
- The patient information packet that may accompany the HUD. [NOTE: HDE patient information packets can be found at http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfHDE/HDEInformation.cfm#2 and clicking on the appropriate HDE number.);
- A summary of how the physician proposes to use the device, including a description of any screening procedures, the HUD procedure, and any patient follow-up visits, test, or procedures.

The IRB also may request that the physician submit documentation that he/she is qualified through training and expertise to use the HUD.

The IRB will evaluate requests for approval for use of an HUD in accordance with the review requirements under 21 CFR Part 56, including review of risks to patients set forth in the product labeling; ensuring that those risks are minimized; and evaluating whether risks are reasonable in relation to the proposed use of the HUD.

Informed consent: A Research informed consent form is not required to use an HUD for an FDA-approved use because the FDA does not consider such use to be Research and has already approved the HUD for marketing for this use. As no Research informed consent will be used in this case, the IRB requires that the physician give patients an information sheet describing a general definition of the FDA’s HDE program, a brief description of the device and related procedures, risk/benefit ratio, and physician contact information if the patient experiences a device-related adverse event. If the HDE holder has developed a patient information packet, this packet always should be distributed to patients prior to receiving their HUDs. Labeling for the HUD may also be made available to the patient to provide further information regarding the device’s HUD status and possible risks/benefits.

Scope of Use: The use of the HUD must be within the indication approved by the FDA. The IRB may, in its discretion, place additional restrictions on the use of the HUD at the Site, e.g., limitations on use of the HUD based on one or more measures of disease progression; prior use and failure of alternative treatments; IRB reporting requirements; or appropriate
follow-up precautions and evaluations. The HUD should not be used UNLESS AND UNTIL IRB approval has been obtained, except in the case of an Emergency Use of an HUD, as described below. The physician should keep a record of patients who have received the device, their contact information, and any pertinent follow-up.

Non-Research HUDS -- IRB Continuing Review:

The IRB also is responsible for Continuing Review of the HUD protocol. Continuing Review of the HUD may be by Expedited Review, unless the IRB determines otherwise. As a part of Continuing Review, the IRB may request the HDE holder to provide safety information on the HUD provided to the FDA in periodic reports required under 21 CFR Section 814.126(b)(1). When applicable, review of the use of an HUD and reviewing of the investigational use of an HUD in a clinical investigation may be done simultaneously.

Modifications to HDE Protocol: Any changes to the HDE protocol also must be submitted to and approved by the IRB before they are implemented, except for changes necessary to eliminate immediate hazard or risk of harm to the patient.

Required HUD Reports: The HUD user should make the following reports to the IRB and/or other entities, as listed below:

Submit a report of any Emergency Use of HUD outside of an approved protocol to the IRB by no later than 5 business days after the use occurs.

Submit a report to the FDA, Emory IRB, and manufacturer of the HUD whenever a HUD may have caused or contributed to a death. [Note: Reports to the FDA should be made using the Medical Device Reporting forms available at the following FDA website: http://www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/HowToReport/DownloadForms/ucm149238.htm#GENERAL.]

Submit a report to the manufacturer (or to the FDA and IRB if the manufacturer is unknown) whenever the HUD may have caused or contributed to a serious injury. “Serious injury” means an injury or illness that 1) is life threatening, 2) results in permanent impairment of a body function or permanent damage to a body structure, or 3) necessitates medical or surgical intervention to preclude permanent impairment of a body function or permanent damage to a body structure.

Submit a summary report to the IRB at the time of continuing review that describes each use of the HUD within the previous approval period. Summaries should include a brief description of the patient’s condition, how the device was used, and the patient’s outcome.
Responsibility Summary: Non-Research Use of *Humanitarian Use Devices*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsible Person</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physician</td>
<td>Ensure that HDE exists for use of HUD and that use in questions meets HDE requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Submit a basic written plan for use of HDE and obtain Emory IRB approval for use under HDE before use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Submit documentation to IRB for continuing review of HDE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Submit all required reports to Emory IRB (and/or FDA or Manufacturer) regarding HUD use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emory IRB</td>
<td>Provide initial <em>Full Committee Review</em> of HDE protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Provide <em>Full Committee</em> or <em>Expedited Continuing Review</em> of HDE protocol.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Emergency Use of an HUD:** A physician may make an **Emergency HUD Use** for an indication other than that approved by the FDA (i.e., off-label use) in an emergency situation **ONLY IF:** (a) the **Emergency Use** of the HUD is necessary to prevent serious harm or death to a patient; (b) there is no generally acceptable alternative device for treating the patient; and (c) because of the immediate need to use the device, there is no time to use existing procedures to get IRB approval of the use.

**PROCEDURE TO BE FOLLOWED FOR EMERGENCY USE OF HUD:**

**BEFORE** using the HUD, the physician should take as many of the following Patient Protection Measures as possible:

- If possible, contact the IRB Chair and obtain his/her concurrence for the use of the HUD.

- Obtain treatment informed consent from the patient or his/her Legally Authorized Representative, and explain to patient that HUD is being used for an indication that is not within its approved labeling.

- Provide the patient with any HUD patient information packet before or immediately following the use of the device.
Provide the patient with an information sheet describing a general definition of the FDA’s HDE program, a brief description of the device and related procedures, risk/benefit ratio, and physician contact information if the patient experiences a device-related adverse event.

Develop a schedule to monitor the patient, taking into consideration the patient’s needs and limited information available about the HUD’s risks and benefits. **AFTER the Emergency Use of the HUD, the physician should take the following steps:**

As soon as possible, and in all events by no later than five business days after the **Emergency Use**, send a report to the IRB describing the **Emergency Use** and reason for the use, identifying the patient and date of the use, and describing the patient’s condition and the Patient Protection measures that were followed.

Send a report to the HDE holder describing the use and the patient’s condition.

The physician also should monitor the patient according to the monitoring schedule in order to detect any possible problems arising from the use of the device. Any problems encountered in the **Emergency Use** of the device should be reported to the HDE holder and the IRB in accordance with the section above entitled “Required HUD Reports” and/or in accordance with IRB requirements for reporting **Unanticipated Problems Involving Risk to Participants or Others**.

**Responsibility Summary: Emergency Use of HUD**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsible Person</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physician</td>
<td>Ensure that criteria for <strong>Emergency HUD Use</strong> are met.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BEFORE USE, if possible: (a) obtain concurrence of Emory IRB Chair; (b) obtain informed consent from patient; (c) provide patient with HUD information packet and other required information; and (d) develop monitoring schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AFTER USE: report to Emory IRB and holder of HDE on use and monitor patient. Provide any information not provided prior to use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Compassionate Use HUD**: A physician may make **Compassionate Use** of a HUD for a use other than the FDA-approved indication in a non-emergency situation, if (a) there is no generally acceptable alternative device for treating the patient; and (b) the physician notifies the IRB of the use **BEFORE** it occurs and obtains IRB approval for the use.

**Procedure to be Followed for Compassionate Use of a HUD:**
BEFORE using the HUD, the physician using the HUD should:

Provide the IRB with notification of the planned use, identify of patient in whom HUD will be used, reasons necessitating use, and plan for monitoring the patient, and obtain IRB approval.

Obtain treatment informed consent from the patient or his/her Legally Authorized Representative, and explain to patient that HUD is being used for an indication that is not within its approved labeling.

Provide the patient with any HUD patient information packet before the use of the device.

Provide the patient with an information sheet describing a general definition of the FDA’s HDE program, a brief description of the device and related procedures, risk/benefit ratio, and physician contact information if the patient experiences a device-related adverse event.

Develop a schedule to monitor the patient, taking into consideration the patient’s needs and limited information available about the HUD’s risks and benefits.

AFTER the Compassionate Use has occurred, the physician should provide a follow-up report to the IRB within 5 business days of the use. The report should include a description of patient outcome. This report also should be provided to the HDE holder.

The physician also should monitor the patient according to the monitoring schedule in order to detect any possible problems arising from the use of the device. Any problems encountered in the Compassionate Use of the device should be reported to the HDE holder and the IRB in accordance with the section above entitled “Required HUD Reports” and/or in accordance with IRB requirements for reporting Unanticipated Problems Involving Risk to Participants or Others.
Responsibility Summary: Compassionate Use of HUD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsible Person</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physician</td>
<td>Ensure that criteria for Compassionate Use of HUD are met.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BEFORE Compassionate Use: (a) obtain IRB approval; (b) obtain informed consent; (c) provide patient with HUD information packet and other required information; and (d) develop monitoring schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emory IRB</td>
<td>Review and grant approval prior to initiation of Compassionate Use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AFTER USE: report to Emory IRB and holder of HDE on use and monitor patient.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Research Regarding Use of HUD for a Use Other than that Approved by the FDA: If a PI wants to do clinical Research on the safety and effectiveness of the HUD for an indication other than the FDA-approved indication and the new indication is not itself eligible for a HDE (e.g., new indication involves a condition that affects more than 4,000 persons per year in the U.S.), then the PI must conduct the clinical Research under an Investigational Device Exemption. The Research protocol and Research informed consent will have to be reviewed and approved by the IRB.

Use of HUD for Another Indication that may Meet HDE Requirements: If a HUD is to be used for another indication that also may meet the requirements of a HDE, then a new HUD designation must be sought for the indication for which the device will be used and a new original HDE for the new indication must be submitted and approved by the FDA. If the HDE is granted, then data regarding the safety and effectiveness of the HUD for the use contemplated by the new HDE may be collected, provided that the IRB reviews and approves the protocol for the HUD’s use, including a Research informed consent.

Applicable Regulations:
21 CFR Part 812 (investigational devices); 21 CFR Part 814 (premarket approval of medical devices); 21 CFR Part 860 (device classification procedures); 21 CFR Parts 862 – 892 (device type classifications)

Additional Resources:
FDA Device Classes (summary of general and special controls and premarket approval) at http://www.fda.gov/cdrh/devadvice/3132.html
Listing of FDA Humanitarian Use Devices at
http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfHDE/HDEInformation.cfm
Draft Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff: Humanitarian Use Device (HUD) Designations, December 2011 at
http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DevelopingProductsforRareDiseasesConditions/DesignatingHumanitarianUseDevicesHUDS/LegislationRelatingtoHUDsHDEs/ucm283517.htm
69 INVESTIGATIONAL NEW DRUGS (OTHER THAN EXPANDED ACCESS)

POLICY:

The Emory IRB shall review and evaluate clinical Research that involves Investigational New Drugs in accordance with applicable FDA Regulations. In reviewing Research regarding Investigational New Drugs, the Emory IRB shall make a determination as to whether an Investigational New Drug Application is required. The Emory IRB also shall have oversight over any Treatment Use, “Compassionate” Use or Emergency Use of an Investigational New Drug.

Any use of Investigational New Drugs by physicians at Emory shall be done in accordance with FDA Regulations and these P&Ps.

All Investigational Drugs used in studies that take place at Emory University shall be kept by and dispensed through the University’s Investigational Drug Service (IDS). For studies that take place at other sites, the PI shall be responsible for putting in place a plan to ensure the proper handling, dispensing and disposition of Investigational Drugs.

PROCEDURE:

Marketing of Drugs and Investigational New Drug Applications (IND): Before a drug can be marketed within the United States or transported or distributed across state lines, it must have Pre-marketing Approval from the FDA. This approval is granted after the drug’s manufacturer (the “Sponsor”) has demonstrated the safety and effectiveness of the drug to the FDA through data gathered in clinical investigations.

In order for a non-FDA approved Investigational Drug to be distributed for use in such clinical trials, it must be subject to an Investigational New Drug Application (IND) that has been approved by the FDA. A Sponsor cannot begin a clinical investigation of an Investigational Drug until the Sponsor has received an approved IND from the FDA, and the IRB at the site at which the study is to be conducted has approved the study. This includes recruiting, obtaining consent, and screening participants for a specific study that is subject to the IND. Accordingly, the Research involving the use of a drug other than the use of a marketed drug in the course of medical practice, must have an IND unless the Research qualifies for an IND exemption as set forth below in the subsection entitled Studies Exempt from the Requirement for an IND.

The Emory IRB requires PIs to provide the IRB with an IND number assigned by the FDA for the drug being used in the Research protocol or documentation that establishes that the drug is exempt from IND requirements in accordance with the aforesaid subsection. IRB analysts or Team Leads or Director and/or IRB members shall confirm that the IND number is valid by comparing it to the protocol with pre-printed IND number (i.e., from Sponsor), to other correspondence from the Sponsor (if not Emory Sponsor-Investigator), or to correspondence from the FDA (for Emory Sponsor-Investigator).

INDs for Phases of Clinical Investigations: An IND may be submitted to the FDA for one or more phases of the clinical investigation of an Investigational Drug.
A description of each of the phases is set forth in the chart below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Phase I</th>
<th>Phase II</th>
<th>Phase III</th>
<th>Phase IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Initial introduction of an Investigational Drug into humans</td>
<td>Evaluation of effectiveness of Investigational Drug for a particular indication</td>
<td>Gathering and evaluation of additional evidence re. effectiveness of Investigational Drug</td>
<td>Study conducted after FDA has approved a drug for marketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose</td>
<td>Determining metabolism and pharmacological actions of the drug in humans; toxicity/side effects associated with increasing doses; and gain evidence on effectiveness</td>
<td>Determining treatment effectiveness; short-term side effects; and risks</td>
<td>Determining safety and effectiveness of drug to evaluate risk-benefit and to determine how drug should be labeled</td>
<td>Gathering additional data regarding a drug’s safety, effectiveness of optimal use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring</td>
<td>Closely monitored</td>
<td>Well controlled and closely monitored</td>
<td>Expanded controlled and uncontrolled trials</td>
<td>Conducted per agreement between Sponsor and FDA; may be required as a condition of approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjects</td>
<td>May involve patients or normal volunteers, Very small in size - generally 20 to 80 subjects</td>
<td>Patients who have the condition that the drug is being used to treat. Relatively small in size - no more than several hundred subjects</td>
<td>Patients who have the condition that the drug is being used to treat. Relatively large in size - several hundred to several thousand subjects</td>
<td>Persons who have been prescribed the drug as a part of their treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Off-Label Use of Drugs:** A drug may be marketed only for the uses approved by the FDA. A physician may use an FDA approved “off-label” — for a use other than the FDA approved use — in the physician’s practice of medicine. The physician may not do Research regarding the off-label use of the drug to develop information regarding the safety or effectiveness or to support marketing of the drug UNLESS the physician is using the drug under an FDA approved IND.

**Control and Inventory of Investigational Drugs:** The PI is responsible for controlling the use,
dispensing and disposition of **Investigational Drugs** and ensuring that proper controls and documentation are in place for **Investigational Drugs** inventories. For studies that take place at Emory University sites, all **Investigational Drugs** shall be stored at and dispensed through the University’s Investigational Drug Service (IDS), and the IDS shall be responsible for all documentation relating to the dispensing and disposition of the **Investigational Drugs**. If IDS will not be used for these studies, an exception letter from the IDS is required to be submitted to the IRB. For protocols that involve **Investigational Drugs** to be used at non-Emory University sites, the PI shall include as a part of the application for IRB review a description of the PI’s plan for controlling the dispensation, use and disposal of the **Investigational Drugs** and maintaining appropriate documentation regarding such dispensation, use and disposal.

For Research taking place at the AVAMC, the PI must follow the AVAMC “Management of Investigational Drugs Procedure,” which includes:

- Ensure the local Pharmacy Service or Research Service Investigational Pharmacy receives:
  - Documentation of IRB and any other relevant approvals.
  - A copy of VA Form 10-9012 (if applicable).
  - A copy of the current approval protocol.
  - A copy of the consent document for each participating participant with all appropriate signatures.
  - Documentation of IRB continuing review approval.
  - Copies of sponsor-related correspondence specific to the drugs as appropriate.
  - Copies of all correspondence addressed to the Researcher from the FDA specific to the investigational drugs as appropriate.

- Inform the chief, pharmacy service, the research pharmacy when applicable, and the IRB in writing with a study involving investigational drugs has been suspended, terminated, or closed.

- Comply with all dispensing requirements.

- Comply with all documentation requirements and make relevant records accessible to the investigational drug pharmacist when requested.

**Criteria for IND Exemption & Emory IRB Determinations:** If the FDA-regulated drug proposed for use in a Research protocol does not already have an IND number for that proposed use, and the PI believes that the use is exempt from an IND, the PI justify to the IRB in the Protocol Application the request for exemption. The Emory IRB will determine whether an IND is necessary, using the following criteria established by the **FDA Regulations**:

For an investigation of a drug that is lawfully marketed in the United States:

The results from the study are not intended to be reported to the FDA in support of a new use of the drug or of a change in the drug’s labeling; and

The drug being study is a prescription drug and the investigation is not intended to support a significant change in advertising for the product; and

The investigation does not involve a route of administration or dosage level or use in a patient population or other factor that significantly increases the risks (or decreases the acceptability of the risks) associated with the use of the drug; and
The investigation is approved by an IRB and the subjects participating in the investigation provide informed consent in accordance with 21 CFR Parts 50 and 56.

The Research is conducted in compliance with the requirements concerning the promotion of and charges for Investigational New Drugs set forth in 21 CFR Section 312.7.

The Research does involve an exception from informed consent requirements per 21 CFR Section 50.24 for Emergency Research.

For a Clinical Investigation involving use of a placebo: if the investigation does not otherwise require submission of an IND.

For a Clinical Investigation involving an in vitro diagnostic blood grouping serum, reagent red blood cells, or anti-human globulin product: if the product is intended to be used in a diagnostic procedure that confirms the diagnosis made by another medically established diagnostic procedure and is shipped in accordance with FDA requirements set forth in 21 CFR Section 312.160.

For a Clinical Investigation of a drug that is used solely for in vitro tests or for tests in laboratory research animals: if the drug is shipped in accordance with the requirements set forth in 21 CFR Section 312.160.

If the Emory IRB determines that an IND is necessary, the PI and Sponsor must submit an IND application to the FDA for a determination as to whether an IND is required. The PI should provide documentation of the FDA’s determination to the Emory IRB, as well as any IND number that is assigned.

IND-Exempt Studies Must Have IRB Approval: Even if a study is exempt from having an IND, it must still have IRB Approval and the subjects generally must provide informed consent.

Studies on Dietary Supplements and Related Items May Require an IND: Clinical investigations of dietary supplements, herbs, botanicals, spices, and/or foods may require an IND, if the investigation is examining whether the item can be used for the prevention, cure, diagnosis, treatment, or mitigation of a condition or disease. In such cases, the item may be considered to be an unapproved drug for purposes of FDA regulations.

EFIC Studies Must Have IND: Further, if a study seeks an EFIC (Exception From Informed Consent) for planned emergency research under 21 CFR Section 50.24, then a separate IND MUST be sought for that study, even if the product being studied would otherwise qualify for an exemption from IND requirements.

International Studies: For FDA-regulated Research involving an investigational drug, conducted outside of the U.S., an IND may not be not required provided the study is conducted in accordance with the Good Clinical Practice guidelines and FDA is able to validate the data from the study through an onsite inspection if FDA deems it necessary. However, IND equivalent in
the country in which the study is being conducted may be required. Emory PI’s of investigator-initiated studies involving drugs or devices must provide the IRB with a statement of the applicable in-country regulations governing their study, and they may be required, at their cost, to engage a Contract Research Organization working in the study country, or to consult with legal counsel regarding compliance with the country’s clinical research regulations.

**IND Applications:** The Sponsor (or the PI, in the case of studies in which the PI is also the Sponsor) must submit the application for the IND to the FDA for approval and assignment of an IND number. Documentation of the IND number assigned must be provided to the Emory IRB.

The IRB shall verify when study activities (including recruitment, obtaining consent, and screening participants) may commence under a new IND application by requiring that the PI provide, prior to final IRB approval: the date on which the IND application was submitted; certify that 30 days have passed since the date of the IND submission; and certify that no correspondence was received from the FDA during that period that indicated that the IND may not be granted or that additional information was required regarding the IND application.

**IND Modifications and Amendments:** Once an IND is in effect, the Sponsor and PI must conduct the Research protocol in accordance with the specifications of the IND. If the Sponsor or PI desire to (a) add a new Research protocol to the study that is not covered under the IND; or (b) make changes to the Research protocol (including, but not limited to the addition of a new investigator), then the Sponsor must submit both an IND amendment to the FDA for review and approval and a Research protocol modification to the Emory IRB for review and approval before the new protocol or change in the protocol can be put in place.

**EXCEPTION:** The only exception to this requirement of prior FDA and IRB approval is if an immediate modification to the Research protocol is required to eliminate an apparent immediate hazard to subjects. In such a case, the FDA and IRB must be notified as soon as possible after the change is put in place and the PI/Sponsor must file appropriate amendments/modifications to the Research protocol and the IND.

**Responsibility Summary for INDs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsible Person</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emory IRB</td>
<td>Determines whether an IND is required for study involving an Investigational Drug if no IND number is submitted with IRB application. If IRB determines that an IND is required then the Sponsor and PI must submit an IND application and get a determination from the FDA as to whether an IND is required before the protocol is approved. Validates the IND number provided by the investigator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI</td>
<td>Supplies IND number to IRB or if PI/Sponsor does not believe that an IND is necessary supplies supporting information to IRB. Supplies IND application date to IRB and supplies certification that within 30 day period after submission no information was received from the FDA denying the IND and/or requesting additional information regarding the application. Additional requirements for VA research, above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conducts Research in compliance with Research protocol and IND and works with Sponsor to obtain a modification or amendment to the protocol or an IND before implementing change/amendment or adding a protocol.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carries out all duties of Sponsor if serving in role of Sponsor and PI.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sponsor</td>
<td>Submit IND application to the FDA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submit modification or amendment to IND application for change in protocol or new protocol.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Applicable Regulations:**

21 CFR Parts 50, including 21 CFR § 50.24  
21 CFR Part 56  
21 CFR Part 312 (investigational new drug application) including 21 CFR §§ 312.7; & 312.160.  
21 CFR Part 312, Subpart I  
VA Handbook 1108.04, ‘Investigational Drugs and Supplies’

*See FDA Draft Guidance – Investigational New Drug Applications (INDs) – Determining Whether Human Research Studies Can be Conducted Without an IND, October 2010.*
70 INVESTIGATIONAL NEW DRUGS - EXPANDED ACCESS

POLICY:

The Emory IRB shall have oversight over any Treatment Use, “Compassionate” Use or Emergency Use of an Investigational New Drug at an Emory facility, or where an Emory faculty member holds the Expanded Access IND.

Any use of Investigational New Drugs by physicians at Emory shall be in accordance with FDA Regulations and these P&Ps.

All Investigational Drugs used in studies that take place at Emory University shall be kept by and dispensed through the University's Investigational Drug Service (IDS). For studies that take place at other sites, the PI shall be responsible for putting in place a plan to ensure the proper handling, dispensing and disposition of Investigational Drugs.

Under FDA Regulations, the emergency use of a test article, other than a medical device, is a clinical investigation, the patient is a participant, and the FDA may require data from an emergency use to be reported in a marketing application.

Under DHHS Regulations, patients receiving a test article in an emergency use as defined by FDA regulations may not be considered to be research participants. DHHS Regulations do not permit data obtained from such patients to be classified as human participants’ research, nor permit the outcome of such care to be included in any report of a research activity subject to DHHS regulations.

REGULATORY BACKGROUND:

Expanded Access to Investigational Drugs for Treatment Use: In certain cases, the FDA Regulations concerning Expanded Access to Investigational Drugs for treatment use permit Investigational Drugs to be used for the treatment of patients who are not enrolled as subjects in studies under the IND that covers the drug being studied. In general, the FDA may permit a licensed physician to have Expanded Access to Investigational Drugs to treat persons with an “immediately life-threatening disease or condition” or a “serious disease or condition” for which there is no comparable or satisfactory alternative therapy for diagnosis, treatment or monitoring. The FDA also may approve of Expanded Access to approved drugs when supply is limited by a FDA-required risk evaluation and mitigation strategy (REMS).

Types of Expanded Access for Treatment Use:

The FDA recognizes three different types of Expanded Access for treatment use based on the number of people for whom Expanded Access is sought. Each type of Expanded Access is described below:
(1) **Expanded Access for Individual Patients, Including Emergency Use**: Under this type of Expanded Access, the FDA permits the Investigational Drug to be used for the treatment of an individual patient. This type of Expanded Access includes the Emergency Use of an Investigational Drug.

(2) **Expanded Access for Intermediate-size Patient Populations**: Under this type of Expanded Access, the FDA permits the Investigational Drug to be used to treat a patient population that is smaller than the patient population typically treated under a treatment IND or treatment protocol. Situations in which this type of Expanded Access may be required include:
   a. The drug is not being developed because the disease or condition it treats is so rare that the sponsor cannot recruit patients for a clinical trial.
   b. The drug is being studied in a clinical trial, but the patients for whom Expanded Access is requested cannot participate in the trial because they do not meet enrollment criteria or the trial site is not geographically accessible.
   c. The drug is an approved drug but it is not being marketed because of safety concerns, failure to meet conditions of the approved application, or a drug shortage.

(3) **Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol**: Under this type of Expanded Access, the FDA permits the widespread use of the Investigational Drug for treatment use under a Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol. Under a Treatment Use Protocol the Sponsor holds the IND for the drug, while under the Treatment Use IND, the treating physician holds the IND for the drug and serves as both Investigator and Sponsor.

**PROCEDURE:**

**Authorizations Required for Expanded Access Use:**

**FDA** -- The FDA must authorize any type of Expanded Access use in advance, even Emergency Use for individuals. Typically, the FDA provides authorization after it receives a written submission requesting Expanded Access from a sponsor or an investigator. In Emergency Use situations for treatment of an individual patient, however, the FDA can provide authorization verbally in response to a phone, email or telefax request. When verbal FDA authorization is obtained for Emergency Use for an individual patient, the physician making the use must provide the FDA with a written Expanded Access submission for Individual Treatment Use within 15 working days after the Emergency Use occurs.

**IRB** -- Except for Emergency Use situations in which there is not sufficient time to obtain prospective IRB review, the Emory IRB also must approve in advance any Expanded Access use. In Emergency Use situations in which prospective IRB approval cannot be obtained, the Investigator must notify the Emory IRB of the Emergency Use within 5 business days of its occurrence and obtain retrospective review.

**General Criteria that Must be Met for All Types of Expanded Access for Treatment Use:**
In order to permit any type of Expanded Access to Investigational New Drugs for treatment, the FDA must determine that the following criteria are met:

- The patient(s) to be treated has (have) a serious or immediately life-threatening disease or condition;
- There is no comparable or satisfactory alternative therapy to diagnose, monitor or treat the disease or condition;
- The potential patient benefit justifies the potential risks of the treatment use;
- The potential risks of the treatment use are not unreasonable in the context of the disease or condition to be treated; and
- Providing the Investigational New Drug for the treatment use will not interfere with the initiation, conduct or completion of clinical investigations that could support marketing approval of the Expanded Access use, or otherwise compromise the development of the Expanded Access use.

Requirements for All Expanded Access Request Submissions to FDA (other than Emergency Use):

Format for Submission to FDA: The physician who wants to make use of the Investigational Drug or the sponsor who holds the IND for the Investigational Drug may make the Expanded Access request to the FDA. The request may be submitted as a new IND or as a protocol amendment to existing IND. For protocol amendments to existing INDs, the amendment may reference information contained in the existing IND if the sponsor of that IND provides a letter granting a right of reference.

Components of FDA Submission: The physician or sponsor submitting a proposed Expanded Access request to the FDA, must include the following materials/information in his her request. All materials submitted must be plainly marked: “EXPANDED ACCESS SUBMISSION.” [See “Sample Submission Form for Individual Patient Expanded Access Use” at the end of this P&P]

- A completed FDA Form 1571 and all applicable attachments, including a treatment protocol that describes how drug will be used for treatment, monitoring and treatment data collected.
- Reason for intended treatment use of the Investigational New Drug
- List of available therapeutic options that would usually be tried before using the Investigational New Drug OR an explanation of why the Investigational New Drug is preferable to available therapies.
- Criteria for patient selection for Expanded Access if the use is for more than one individual OR a description of patient’s disease/condition, medical history and previous treatment for Expanded Access for an individual patient.
Dose and method of administration for the Investigational New Drug and duration of therapy.

Description of facility where Investigational New Drug is manufactured.

Chemistry, manufacturing and controls information about the Investigational New Drug that ensure proper identification, quality, purity and strength.

Pharmacology and toxicology information that adequately establishes that the Investigational New Drug is reasonably safe at the dose and duration proposed for the Expanded Access Use.

Description of the clinical procedures, laboratory test or other monitoring necessary to evaluate the effects for the drug and minimize its risks.

**Components of IRB Submission:**

The Emory IRB will review by Full Board Review all materials submitted in support of an Expanded Access request and determine if the submission satisfies the requirements for the type of Expanded Access requested, as well as any other pertinent provisions of 21 CFR Part 56 and 21 CFR Part 50.

The physician planning to undertake the Expanded Access use should submit the following documents to the Emory IRB for review:

- A copy of all information submitted to the FDA in connection with the Expanded Access use request.

- Informed consent form to be used or information demonstrating qualification for **Emergency Use** exception from informed consent. See the P&P entitled: *Waiver or Alteration of Informed consent for Research*, subsection entitled *Emergency Medical Care Exception – Exception to the Requirement to Obtain Informed Consent for the Use of a FDA-Regulated Item in Emergency Medical Care Situations*.

- Documentation of FDA approval for the Expanded Access Use request.

Once the Expanded Access takes place, then Adverse **Event** reports must be submitted to the **Sponsor** as usual, as well as to the Emory IRB, in accordance with standard Investigator reporting obligations. In addition, a report on the outcome of each patient’s treatment should be provided to the Emory IRB, FDA and drug **Sponsor**.

**Sponsor, Investigator and IRB General Responsibilities Pertaining to All Types of Expanded Access for Treatment Use:**

**Sponsor Responsibilities:**
**Who is the Sponsor?:** The licensed physician or entity that submits the Expanded Access Use IND or the Expanded Access protocol amendment to an existing IND is considered the “Sponsor.”

**Sponsor Responsibilities:** The Sponsor must perform all FDA Sponsor responsibilities listed under 21 CFR Part 312, Subpart D that apply to Expanded Access Use. These responsibilities include:

- Ensuring that licensed physicians who administer the Investigational New Drug are qualified to do so.
- Providing the physicians administering the Investigational New Drug with the information that they need to minimize the risk and maximize the potential benefits of the Investigational New Drug.
- Providing the Investigator with the Investigator’s Brochure for the Investigational New Drug, if a brochure exists.
- Maintaining an effective IND for the Expanded Access use.
- Submitting IND safety reports and annual reports to the FDA.
- Maintaining adequate records regarding the disposition of the Investigational New Drug.
- Retaining records in accordance with 21 CFR Section 312.57.

**Investigator Responsibilities:**

**Who is the Investigator?:** The licensed physician under whose immediate direction an Investigational New Drug is administered or dispensed for Expanded Access use is considered the “Investigator.”

**Investigator Responsibilities:** The Investigator must perform all FDA Investigator responsibilities under 21 CFR Part 312, Subpart D that are applicable to Expanded Access use. These responsibilities include:

- Obtaining IRB review and approval of informed consent documents and processes to be used in conjunction with the Expanded Access use in accordance with 21 CFR Part 50.
- Obtaining IRB review and approval of the Expanded Access request in accordance with the requirements of the type of Expanded Access use requested and 21 CFR Part 56.
- Seeking informed consent from each prospective participant or the participant’s legally authorized representative, in accordance with and to the extent required
by 21 CFR 50, and appropriately documenting informed consent, in accordance with and to the extent required by 21 CFR 50.27.

Maintaining accurate case histories and drug disposition records.

Retaining records as required under 21 CFR Section 312.62.

**IRB Responsibilities:** For each type of Expanded Access Use, the Emory IRB must perform the following responsibilities:

Provide Full Board Review to determine if the use meets the criteria for approval under 21 CFR Part 56 and satisfies the criteria for the type of Expanded Access use requested. Generally, this review will be provided before the Expanded Access use; provided, however, that in the case of Emergency Use of a test article, this review can take place retroactively if patient care considerations make it impossible for the IRB to review the Emergency Use before it takes place.

Review the informed consent process to determine if it meets the requirements of 21 CFR Part 50, subject to the exception from general requirements for informed consent for the Emergency Use of a test article under 21 CFR Section 50.23.

**Specific Criteria, Submission Requirements and Responsibilities that Must be Met for Each Particular Type of Expanded Access for Treatment Use:**

In addition to meeting the above-specified general criteria, submission requirements and responsibilities for all types of Expanded Access, each type of Expanded Access has specific criteria that must be met. The specific criteria, submission requirements and responsibilities particular to each type of Expanded Access are described below.

**INDIVIDUAL PATIENTS -- Specific Criteria and Submission Requirements for Expanded Access for Treatment Use for Individual Patients:**

**Specific Criteria for Individual Use:**
The licensed physician who will make the use must provide the FDA with his/her determination that probable risk to the patient from the Investigational New Drug is not greater than the probable risk from the disease or condition.

The FDA must determine that the patient cannot obtain the drug under another IND or protocol.

**Specific FDA Submission Requirements for Individual Use:**
If the Investigational New Drug is covered by an existing IND, then the sponsor of that IND may request Expanded Access by amending the IND protocol to call for individual patient access.

Alternatively, a licensed physician may request Expanded Access as the sponsor/investigator for the Expanded Access use and obtain the original IND sponsor’s permission for the FDA to refer to any information in the original IND needed to support the Expanded Access request. In this case, the licensed physician should obtain a letter of permission from the sponsor of the original IND allowing this right of reference.
Specific Investigator and Sponsor Responsibilities for Individual Use:

**Investigator:**
The Investigator must limit treatment to a single course of therapy for a specified duration unless the FDA expressly permits multiple courses of therapy or chronic therapy.

The licensed physician must provide the Sponsor with a written summary of the results of the Expanded Access use, including any adverse effects. Either the licensed physician or the Sponsor must provide a copy of this summary to the FDA.

**Sponsor:**
Upon FDA request, the Sponsor may be required to monitor a patient’s Expanded Access Use.

Upon FDA request, the Sponsor may be required to submit an Expanded Access request for an intermediate-size patient population in cases in which a significant number of individual requests have been received.

**Time When Treatment Can Begin Under a Request for Expanded Access for Individual Treatment:** Unless the FDA provides earlier notice of acceptance, an Expanded Access IND goes into effect 30 days after the FDA receives the IND. Treatment can begin after FDA acceptance and IRB approval. An Expanded Access protocol under an existing IND becomes effective at the time that it is submitted to the FDA for review and approved by the IRB.

**EMERGENCY USE -- Specific Criteria and Submission Requirements for Expanded Access for Emergency Use for Individual Patients:**

**Specific Criteria for Emergency Use:**

In order to use a test article in a life-threatening situation without prior IRB reviews:
- The participant is in a life-threatening or severely debilitating situation.
- No standard acceptable treatment is available.
- There is not sufficient time to obtain IRB approval.
- The use is reported to the IRB within five working days.
- Any subsequent use of the test article is subject to IRB review.

There must be an emergency situation in which the patient requires treatment before a complete written submission for Expanded Access can be made to the FDA. In such cases, the FDA may immediately authorize the Emergency Use by telephone or email.

**FDA authorization** must occur before the Emergency Use can take place. To achieve this, the licensed physician requesting Emergency Use must request such use by telephone, facsimile or email. FDA contact information is as follows:

**Biological Drug Products --** For investigational biological drug products evaluated by the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, during normal business hours, the request...
should be made to the Office of Communication, Outreach and Development, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research at phone numbers (301) 827-1800 or 1-800-835-4709 or at email address ocod@fda.hhs.gov.

Other Investigational Drugs -- For all other investigational drugs during normal business hours, the request should be directed to the Division of Drug Information, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research at phone number 301-796-3400 or email address druginfo@fda.hhs.gov. Please also refer to this FDA guidance for more specific information.

All Drugs After Normal Business Hours -- After normal business hours, any request should be directed to the FDA Office of Crisis Management & Emergency Operations Center – After-Hours at phone number 301-796-8240, 866-300-4374, or email address emergency.operations@fda.hhs.gov.

Specific FDA Submission Requirements for Emergency Use:
The licensed physician who will perform the use or the sponsor requesting the Emergency Use must explain how the Emergency Use will meet the criteria specified above for individual treatment use and why there is insufficient time to provide the FDA with a written request for Expanded Access.

If the FDA grants its immediate authorization to proceed with the Expanded Access Emergency Use, then the physician performing the use must provide the FDA with a written Expanded Access submission within 15 working days of the date on which the FDA gave its’ authorization for the use. This written Expanded Access submission must meet all of the requirements for Expanded Access for treatment use for an individual patient, as described above.

Specific IRB Submission Requirements for Emergency Use:
If possible, the physician who will be making the use at an Emory site should notify the Emory IRB that the Emergency Use will be made and obtain IRB approval in advance of the use. The PI should provide the Emory IRB with any information that the PI has provided to the FDA. In addition, the PI should advise the Emory IRB when FDA authorization is obtained.

The information provided by the physician shall be evaluated by IRB Full Board Review prospectively if possible, or retrospectively, if time does not permit evaluation before the Emergency Use must be made. The IRB shall determine whether applicable Emergency Use requirements were met and, if necessary, whether the requirements for the Exception to Requirement to Obtain Informed Consent for the Use of an FDA-Regulated Item in Emergency Medical Care Situations have been met. This informed consent exception is described below and in the P&P chapter, Informed Consent.

Situations in Which There is no Time to Obtain IRB Prospective Review of an Emergency Use: If there is no time to obtain IRB prospective review of an Emergency Use and the physician undertakes the use after receiving immediate authorization from the FDA, then within five working days of the use, the physician must provide the IRB with notice of the use including:

Any information provided to the FDA to obtain verbal authorization.
Protocol that describes how drug was administered; dosage; frequency; mode of administration; monitoring measures; and data collected on response to be treatment.

Informed consent form used or information establishing that situation qualified for Emergency Use exception from informed consent. See section below entitled “Emergency Medical Care Exception – Exception to Requirement to Obtain Informed Consent for the Use of an FDA-Regulated Item in Emergency Medical Care Situations”

A copy of the written Expanded Access submission that the physician provides to the FDA within 15 working days after the FDA’s immediate authorization of the Emergency Use.

Specific Investigator and Sponsor Responsibilities for Emergency Use:

Sponsor Responsibilities:
Within 15 business days of the FDA’s authorization of the Emergency Use, the licensed physician or sponsor making the Emergency Use request must submit a written Expanded Access submission that meets the criteria for Individual Treatment Use.

The licensed physician or sponsor making the request must fulfill any other responsibilities specified for an Individual Treatment Use.

Investigator Responsibilities:
The Investigator should evaluate the likelihood of a similar use of the drug occurring again at Emory, and if such a future use is likely, the Investigator should begin steps to obtain a new IND or amend an existing IND to cover use of the drug in the future. FDA regulations require that any subsequent use of the investigational product at the institution have prospective IRB review and approval. FDA acknowledges, however, that it would be inappropriate to deny emergency treatment to a second individual if the only obstacle is that the IRB has not had sufficient time to convene a meeting to review the issue.

Time When Treatment Can Begin Under a Request for Expanded Access for Emergency Use:
Treatment can begin for an Emergency Use at the time that the FDA reviewing official grants authorization to proceed.

Emergency Medical Care Exception – Exception to Requirement to Obtain Informed Consent for the Use of an FDA-Regulated Item in Emergency Medical Care Situations (See also the P&P chapter, Informed Consent, from which this Subsection is taken):

In certain emergency medical care situations, informed consent for the use of an item regulated by the FDA in a Human Subject does not need to be obtained by the Investigator who needs to use the FDA-regulated item, nor must the exception from the general requirement for informed consent be approved in advance by the Emory IRB, if the following criteria are met:

Certification: The Investigator and a licensed physician who is not participating in the
medical care protocol must certify in writing that:

The **Human Subject** in which the FDA-regulated item is to be used is confronted by a life-threatening situation that necessitates the use of the item.

Informed consent cannot be obtained from the **Human Subject** because of an inability to communicate with or obtain legally effective informed consent from the **Human Subject**.

There is not sufficient time to obtain informed consent from the **Human Subject’s Legally Authorized Representative**.

There is no available alternative method of FDA-approved or generally recognized therapy that provides an equal or greater likelihood of saving the **Human Subject’s** life.

If the **Investigator** determines that the immediate use of the FDA-regulated item is necessary to preserve the **Human Subject’s** life, and there is not enough time to obtain the written certification of the non-participating physician before the item must be used, then the **Investigator** may make his/her written certification and provide it to a non-participating physician for the completion of that physician’s written review and evaluation within five (5) working days after the item is used.

**Documentation Provided to Emory IRB:** The written certification and/or review/evaluation by the **Investigator** and the non-participating physician must be provided to the Emory IRB before the use, if possible, and if not possible, then within five (5) working days after the use of the item/process. The Emory IRB shall review the documentation provided for compliance with applicable regulatory requirements at the same time that it reviews the Emergency Use. If the Emory IRB determines that the criteria for the exception are/were not met, then the Emory IRB shall notify the Investigator that the exception may not be used, or if use has already occurred, that the use of the exception constitutes non-compliance with regulatory requirements, and the normal procedures for non-compliance shall be followed.

**NOTE:** **HHS Regulations** do not permit the initiation of **Research** activities involving **Human Subjects** without prior IRB review and approval, even in emergency situations. The IRB shall review all instances in which an Emergency Use occurs, to determine if the contemplated activity would fall within the definition of Human Subjects Research. The Emory IRB will not permit an Emergency Use that is initiated without prior IRB review and approval, to be considered to be Research; will prohibit the patient from being considered to be a **Human Subject**; and will prohibit data regarding the care from being included in any report of a prospective **Research** study.

**Specific Criteria and Submission Requirements for Expanded Access for Treatment Use for Intermediate-size Patient Populations:**

**Specific Criteria for Expanded Access Use in Intermediate-Size Patient Populations:**
The FDA must determine that:

   The drug is being investigated in a controlled clinical trial under an IND designed to support a marketing application for the Expanded Access use OR all clinical trials of the drug have been completed; and

   The sponsor is actively pursuing marketing approval of the drug for the Expanded Access use with due diligence; and

   When the Expanded Access use is for a serious disease or condition, there is sufficient clinical evidence of safety and effectiveness to support the expanded access use. (This evidence will usually consist of data from Phase 3 trials, but could consist of compelling data from completed phase 2 trials.); or

   When the Expanded Access use is for an immediately life-threatening disease or condition, the available scientific evidence, taken as a whole provides a reasonable basis to conclude that the Investigational New Drug may be effective for the Expanded Access use and would not expose patients to an unreasonable and significant risk of illness or injury. (This evidence would usually consist of data from Phase 3 or Phase 2 trials, but could be based on more preliminary clinical evidence).

Specific FDA Submission Requirements for Expanded Access Use in Intermediate-Size Patient Populations:

The sponsor or the investigator making the Expanded Access request submission to the FDA, should provide the FDA with information and documentation to establish that both the General Criteria for all Expanded Access submissions and the Specific Criteria for use in Intermediate-Size Populations have been met.

Specific IRB Submission Requirements for Expanded Access Use in Intermediate-Size Patient Populations:

The investigator who will be performing the use should provide the IRB with:

   Copies of all information and materials submitted to the FDA.

   The informed consent form and HIPAA Authorization to be used.

   Documentation of FDA approval.

Specific Sponsor and Investigator Responsibilities for Intermediate-Size Patient Populations:

Sponsor Responsibilities:
Submit IND Safety Reports and an Annual IND report to the FDA. The FDA will review each Annual Report and determine whether it is appropriate to permit the Expanded Access Use to continue taking into consideration whether or not the drug is being actively developed and if so, whether the Expanded Access is interfering with that development, or if not, whether a clinical study of the Expanded Access use should be developed.
Monitoring the Expanded Access protocol to ensure that licensed physicians performing the use comply with the protocol and the applicable FDA regulations.

**Investigator Responsibilities:**

*Adverse Event* reports must be submitted to Sponsor and to the Emory IRB as usual.

**Time When Treatment Can Begin Under a Request for Expanded Access for an Intermediate-Size Patient Population:** Unless the FDA provides earlier notice of acceptance, an Expanded Access IND goes into effect 30 days after the FDA receives the IND. Treatment can begin after FDA acceptance and IRB approval. An Expanded Access protocol under an existing IND becomes effective at the time that it is submitted to the FDA for review and approved by the IRB

**WIDESPREAD TREATMENT USE -- Specific Criteria and Submission Requirements for Expanded Access under a Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol:**

**Specific Criteria for Widespread Treatment Use Under a Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol:**
The FDA may permit an Investigational Drug to be used for widespread treatment use if it determines that:

- The drug is being investigated in a controlled clinical trial under an IND designed to support a marketing application for the Expanded Access use; OR
- All clinical trials of the drug have been completed; AND
- The sponsor is activity pursuing marketing approval of the drug for the Expanded Access Use with due diligence; AND
- When the Expanded Access use is for a serious disease or condition, there is sufficient clinical evidence of safety and effectiveness to support the Expanded Access use (i.e., clinical data from phase 3 trials or compelling data from completed phase 2 trials); OR
- When the Expanded Access use is for an immediately life-threatening disease or condition, the available scientific evidence, taken as a whole provides a reasonable basis to conclude that the Investigational Drug may be effective for the Expanded Access use and would not expose patient to unreasonable and significant risk of illness or injury (i.e., clinical data from phase 3 or phase 2 trials, or in some cases, more preliminary clinical evidence).

**Specific FDA Submission Requirements for Widespread Treatment Use under a Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol:**
The sponsor or the investigator making the Expanded Access request submission to the FDA, should provide the FDA with information and documentation to establish that both the General Criteria for all Expanded Access submissions and the Specific Criteria for widespread treatment use under a Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol have been met.
Specific IRB Submission Requirements for Widespread Treatment Use Under a Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol:

The investigator who will be performing the use should provide the IRB with:

- Copies of all information and materials submitted to the FDA.
- The informed consent form and HIPAA Authorization to be used.
- Documentation of FDA approval.

Specific Sponsor and Investigator Responsibilities for Widespread Treatment Use Under a Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol:

**Sponsor:**
Submit IND Safety Reports and an Annual IND report to the FDA.

The sponsor must monitor the implement of the treatment protocol to ensure that the physicians implementing the use comply with the protocol and the applicable FDA regulations.

**Investigator:**

*Adverse Event* reports must be submitted to Sponsor and to the Emory IRB as usual.

Time When Treatment Can Begin Under a Request for Expanded Access for Widespread Treatment Use Under a Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol:

Treatment can begin 30 days after FDA receipt of the Treatment IND or Treatment Protocol or upon earlier notice from the FDA and receipt of IRB approval.

Applicable Regulations:

21 CFR Parts 50, including 21 CFR § 50.24
21 CFR Part 56
21 CFR Part 312 (investigational new drug application) including 21 CFR §§ 312.7; & 312.160.
21 CFR Part 312, Subpart I
VHA Handbook 1108.04, ‘Investigational Drugs and Supplies”
Sample Submission Form for Individual Patient Expanded Access IND – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency]

[Letterhead for Dr. _____]

[Date]

Food & Drug Administration
Center for Drug Evaluation and Research
Central Documentation Room
5901-B Ammendale Rd.
Beltsville, MD 20705-1266

RE: Submission for Individual Patient Expanded Access IND Submission – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency]

Ladies & Gentlemen:

I am writing to submit an application for an Individual Expanded Access IND – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency] for an individual patient pursuant to 21 CFR Section 312.310. Transmitted herewith are the following documents in support of this application:

(1) this cover letter;
(2) FDA Form 1571 Investigational New Drug Application and attachments; and
(3) letter of permission from SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND granting a right of reference to its IND #: ____.

Included as an attachment to the above-reference Form 1571 is a document entitled “Individual Patient Expanded Access IND – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency] Request” (ATTACHMENT II). This document sets forth the information required for this application per 21 CFR Sections 312.305 and 312.310.

If this application is approved, I am committed to obtaining the patient’s informed consent and institutional review board (IRB) review and approval.

We appreciate your consideration of this application. Please feel free to contact me should you have any questions concerning this transmittal.

Sincerely,

Attachments

cc:
TABLE OF CONTENTS

(1) Attachment I to Form 1571 – Individual Patient Expanded Access IND – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency] Submission; Items Require Per Form 1571

(2) Attachment II to Form 1571 – Protocol for Treatment

(3) Attachment III to Form 1571 – Curriculum Vitae for INVESTIGATOR


(5) Attachment V – Letter of Permission from [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND]
ATTACHMENT I


Items Required Per Form 1571, Paragraph 13

Section 1.0 -- Introductory Statement [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 3]

This Individual Patient Expanded Access IND – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency] Submission is being submitted pursuant to 21 CFR Sections 312.305 and 312.310 to request Expanded Access to ______________________________ for the following patient ____________________.

Expanded Access is requested for this patient for the following reasons: [DESCRIPTION OF NEED FOR EXPANDED ACCESS]

The [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF THE ORIGINAL IND] is willing to provide permission to reference IND# __________ in this Individual Patient Expanded Access IND – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency] application and to provide our site with the [INSERT NAME OF DRUG] should this expanded access IND be approved by the FDA.

Section 2.0 -- General Investigational Plan [Form 1572, Paragraph 13, Item 4]

The general plan that will be followed with respect to treatment of this patient is as follows: [INSERT GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE TREATMENT PLAN].

Section 3.0 -- Investigator’s Brochure [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 5]

Refer to [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND], IND #______, Section ____.

Section 4.0 -- Protocol [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 6]

Subsection 4.1 -- Individual Patient Expanded Access IND – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency] [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 6.a.]

See attached protocol for treatment of patient (ATTACHMENT II).

Section 4.2 – Investigator Data [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Items 6.b]

[INSERT INVESTIGATOR NAME AND ADDRESS]

See attached Curriculum Vitae FOR INVESTIGATOR [ATTACHMENT III].

Section 4.3 – Facilities Data [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 6.c.]

[INSERT NAME AND ADDRESS OF FACILITY WHERE TREATMENT USE WILL TAKE PLACE]

Section 4.4 – Institutional Review Board Data [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 6.d.]

Emory University IRB
5th Floor, 1599 Clifton Rd., N.E.
Atlanta, GA 30322
**Section 5.0 -- Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control Data [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 7]**
Refer to [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND], IND #______, Section ___.

**Section 6.0 -- Environmental Assessment or Claim for Exclusion [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 7]**
I claim categorical exclusion (under 21 CFR Section 25.31(e)) for the treatment to take place under this expanded access IND. To my knowledge, no extraordinary circumstances exist.

**Section 7.0 -- Pharmacology and toxicology data [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 8]**
Refer to [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND], IND #______, Section ___.

**Section 9.0 -- Previous Human Experience  [Form 1571, Paragraph 13, Item 9]**
Refer to [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND], IND #___, Section ___.

Page 292 of 416
ATTACHMENT II
PROTOCOL FOR TREATMENT

[INSERT PROTOCOL FOR TREATMENT]
ATTACHMENT III
CURRICULUM VITAE FOR INVESTIGATOR

[INSERT C.V. FOR INVESTIGATOR]
ATTACHMENT IV
INDIVIDUAL PATIENT EXPANDED ACCESS IND – [EMERGENCY] [NON-EMERGENCY] SUBMISSION
SUPPORT FOR SUBMISSION

APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS PER [21 CFR SECTION 312.305]

1.1 Rationale for Intended Use of Investigational Drug [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(2)(ii)].

This Individual Patient Expanded Access IND – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency] Submission is being submitted pursuant to 21 CFR Sections 312.305 and 312.310 to request Expanded Access to [INSERT NAME OF DRUG] FOR THE FOLLOWING PATIENT: __________

This Individual Patient Expanded Access IND – [Emergency] [Non-Emergency] Submission is being submitted for the following reasons: [DESCRIBE RATIONALE FOR TREATMENT USE OF INVESTIGATIONAL DRUG.]

1.1.1 Explanation of Why Use of Investigational Drug is Preferable to Use of Available Therapeutic Options [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(2)(ii)].

1.2 Description of Patient’s Disease/Condition [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(2)(iii)].

1.2.1 Recent Medical History [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(2)(iii)].

1.2.2 Previous Treatments of Disease/Condition [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(2)(iii)].

1.2.3 Description of How Patient Meets Criteria in 21 CFR Section 312.305(a) [21 CFR Sections 312.305(a) & 312.310(a)].

1.2.4 Description of Patient’s Serious or Immediately Life-Threatening Disease or Condition [21 CFR Sections 312.305(a)(1) and 312.310(a)].

1.2.5 Description of How There is No Satisfactory Alternative Therapy to Treat Patient’s Disease or Condition [21 CFR Sections 312.305(a)(1) and 312.310(a)].

1.2.6 Description of How Potential Patient Benefit Justifies the Potential Risk of Treatment Use [21 CFR Sections 312.305(a)(2) and 312.310(a)].

1.2.7 Description of How Potential Risks of Treatment Use are not Unreasonable in Context of Disease/Condition Being Treated [21 CFR Sections 312.305(a)(2) and 312.310(a)].

1.2.8 Statement of Physician’s Determination that Probable Risk to Person from Investigational Drug is not Greater than Probable Risk from Disease or Condition [21 CFR Section 312.310(a)(1)].

1.2.9 Information as to Why Patient Can’t Obtain Drug Under another IND or Protocol [21 CFR 312.305(a)(2)].
1.2.10 Description of How Providing Investigational Drug Will Not Interfere with the Initiation, Conduct or Completion of Clinical Investigations that Support Marketing Approval or Otherwise Compromise Potential Development of the Expanded Access Use [21 CFR Sections 312.305(a)(3) and 312.310(a)].

1.3 Method of Administration of Drug [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(iv)].

1.3.1 Dose [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(iv)]

1.3.2 Duration of Therapy [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(iv)]

1.4 Description of Facility Where Drug is Manufactured [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(v)]. Refer to [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND], IND # _____, Section ___.

1.5 Chemistry, Manufacturing and Controls Information Adequate to Ensure Proper Identification, Quality, Purity and Strength of Investigational Drug [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(vi)]. Refer to [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND], IND # ________, Section ___.

1.6 Pharmacology and Toxicology Adequate to Conclude that Drug is Reasonably Safe at Dose and Duration Proposed [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(vii)]. Refer to [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND], IND#_____, Section ___.

1.7 Description of Clinical Procedures, Laboratory Tests or Other Monitoring that Will be Used to Evaluate Drug Effects and Minimize Risks [21 CFR Section 312.305(b)(viii)].

1.8 Letter of Permission from [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND], IND #_____

Letter of permission is attached as ATTACHMENT V.
ATTACHMENT V
LETTER OF PERMISSION TO CROSS REFERENCE FROM [INSERT NAME OF SPONSOR OF ORIGINAL IND]
71 SPONSOR-INVESTIGATOR DRUG SAFETY REPORTING OBLIGATIONS

POLICY:

A PI who is serving as a Sponsor-Investigator for a Clinical Investigation being conducted under an FDA Investigational New Drug Application (IND), or for a bioavailability or bioequivalence study (“BA/BE Study”) that is IND-exempt, must develop and implement appropriate processes for collecting, reviewing, analyzing and reporting to the FDA and other investigators any potential serious risks that qualify for reporting under the FDA’s IND Safety Reporting regulations at 21 CFR §312.32, .64 and 21 CFR § 320.31. In addition, the Sponsor-Investigator must copy the Emory IRB on any such reports and include an analysis of whether the Sponsor-Investigator believes the event constitutes an Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others.

DEFINITIONS APPLICABLE TO CLINICAL INVESTIGATIONS CONDUCTED BY A SPONSOR-INVESTIGATOR OR AN INVESTIGATOR UNDER A FDA IND, OR AN IND-EXEMPT BIOAVAILABILITY OR BIOEQUIVALENCE STUDY:

Adverse Event: any untoward medical occurrence associated with the use of a drug in humans, whether or not considered drug related.

Life-threatening Adverse Event or Life-threatening Suspected Adverse Reaction: an Adverse Event or Suspected Adverse Reaction is Life-threatening if in the view of the Sponsor, Investigator or Sponsor-Investigator, its occurrence places the subject at immediate risk of death. It does not include an Adverse Event or Suspected Adverse Reaction that had it occurred in a more severe form, might have caused death.

Reasonable Possibility: existence of evidence to suggest a causal relationship between the drug being investigated and the Adverse Event or Adverse Reaction. In the case of a Suspected Adverse Reaction, there is a lesser degree of certainty about causality.

Serious Adverse Event or Serious Suspected Adverse Reaction: an Adverse Event or Suspected Adverse Reaction is Serious if it results in death, inpatient hospitalization or prolongation of existing hospitalization, a persistent or significant incapacity or substantial disruption of the ability to conduct normal life functions, or a congenital anomaly/birth defect. Important medical events that may not result in death, be life-threatening or require hospitalization may be considered Serious when, based upon appropriate medical judgment, they may jeopardize the patient or subject and may require medical or surgical intervention to prevent one of the outcomes listed in this definition. Examples of such medical events include allergic bronchospasm requiring intensive treatment in an emergency room or at home, blood dyscrasias or convulsions that do not result in inpatient hospitalization or the development of drug dependency or drug abuse.

Suspected Adverse Reaction: any Adverse Event for which there is a Reasonable Possibility that the drug caused the Adverse Event.
Unexpected Adverse Event or Unexpected Suspected Adverse Reaction: an Adverse Event or Suspected Adverse Reaction is Unexpected if it is not listed in the investigator brochure or is not listed at the specificity or severity that has been observed; or if an investigator brochure is not required or available, is not consistent with the risk information described in the general investigational plan or elsewhere in the current FDA application (including any amendments). Unexpected also refers to Adverse Events or Suspected Adverse Reactions that are mentioned in the investigator brochure as occurring with a class of drugs or as anticipated from the pharmacological properties of the drug, but are not specifically mentioned as occurring with the particular drug under investigation.

PROCEDURES:

Information that a Sponsor-Investigator Must Regularly Collect and Promptly Review. The Sponsor-Investigator must develop and implement procedures to regularly collect and promptly review the following information about the drug being investigated:

- All reports of Serious Adverse Events that the Sponsor-Investigator generates or receives from other Investigators on the Clinical Investigation or BA/BE Study.

- All reports of non-Serious Adverse Events that the Sponsor-Investigator generates or receives from other Investigators on the Clinical Investigation or BA/BE Study.

- Information relative to the safety of the drug being investigated that is obtained or received from sources located both inside and outside of the United States, including, information from clinical or epidemiological investigations; animal studies; in vitro studies; published scientific literature; unpublished scientific papers; reports from non-United States regulatory authorities; and reports of non-United States foreign commercial marketing experience for drugs not marketed in the United States.

Sponsor-Investigator’s Recording of Safety Information and Receipt of Safety Reports from Other Investigators on the Clinical Investigation:

- **Serious Adverse Events**: The Sponsor-Investigator must have a method and appropriate forms for the immediate recording of any Serious Adverse Event, whether or not considered drug related, including those listed in the protocol or investigator brochure. This report must include an assessment of whether there is a reasonable possibility that the drug caused the event. If there are other Investigators besides the Sponsor-Investigator, the Sponsor-Investigator must provide the Investigators with the appropriate reporting forms and train them on a process for immediately reporting any Serious Adverse Event to the Sponsor-Investigator.

- **Study Endpoints that are Serious Adverse Events**: In the case of a study endpoint that also meets the definition of a Serious Adverse Event, the endpoint should be reported in accordance with protocol’s endpoint reporting guidance UNLESS there is evidence suggesting a causal relationship between the drug and the endpoint, in which case, the event should be recorded by the Sponsor-Investigator or reported to the Sponsor-Investigator as a Serious Adverse Event.
- **Non-Serious Adverse Events**: The Sponsor-Investigator must have a method and appropriate forms for recording non-
**Serious Adverse Events**. If there are other Investigators besides the Sponsor-Investigator, the Sponsor-Investigator must provide the Investigators with appropriate reporting forms, include in the protocol a timetable for reporting non-
**Serious Adverse Events**, and train the Investigators on appropriate reporting.

**Sponsor-Investigator Required Safety Reports to the FDA and to Other Investigators**: The Sponsor-Investigator must report potential serious risks of the drug being investigated that are identified in clinical trials, *or in any other source*, to the FDA and to all Investigators who are receiving the drug being studied under the Sponsor-Investigator’s IND *or under any other IND, within 15 calendar* days after the Sponsor-Investigator determines that the potential serious risk qualifies for reporting as one of the following events or findings:

- **Serious and Unexpected Adverse Reaction** for which there is evidence to suggest a causal relationship between the drug and **Adverse Event**. Reporting may include the following:
  - A single occurrence of an event that is uncommon and known to be strongly associated with drug exposure.
  - One or more occurrences of an event that is uncommon and is known to be strongly associated with exposure to the drug and is uncommon in the population being exposed to the drug.
  - An aggregate analysis of specific events seen in clinical trials that indicates the events are occurring more frequently in the drug treated group than in a control group.

- Findings from other epidemiological studies, pooled analysis of multiple studies or clinical studies that suggest a significant risk in humans exposed to the drug. Studies may or may not be conducted under an IND, and they may be conducted by the Sponsor-Investigator or by another person or entity.

- Findings from animal or in vitro testing that suggest a significant risk in humans exposed to the drug (e.g., mutagenicity, teratogenicity, carcinogenicity, significant organ toxicity at or near expected human exposure. Studies may be conducted by Sponsor-Investigator or by another person or entity.

- Increased rate of occurrence of **Serious Suspected Adverse** reactions that show a clinically important increase in the rate of a **Serious Suspected Adverse Reaction** over that listed in the protocol or investigator brochure.

- Study endpoints that constitute a **Serious and Unexpected Adverse Event** for which there is evidence suggesting a causal relationship between the drug being investigated. Study endpoints that fall within this category should be reported as a **Serious and Unexpected Suspected Adverse Reaction**. Study endpoints not falling into this category should be reported as required in the protocol.
In reviewing of the abovementioned events or findings, the Sponsor-Investigator should determine whether safety related changes are required in the protocol, informed consent, investigator brochure or other aspects of the clinical investigation’s or BA/BE Study’s conduct. Any necessary modifications should promptly be submitted to the IRB for review.

**Special FDA Reporting Rule for Unexpected Fatal or Life-Threatening Suspected Adverse Reaction Reports:** The Sponsor-Investigator must notify the FDA of any Unexpected Fatal or Life-threatening Suspected Adverse Reaction as soon as possible, but in no event later than 7 calendar days after the Sponsor initially receives information on the event.

**Reporting Format:** The Sponsor-Investigator should use FDA Form 3500A or a narrative format that contains the information set forth in that form for all aforementioned Sponsor-Investigator Required Safety Reports to the FDA and to Other Investigators; provided, however, that reports of overall findings or pooled analyses from other studies must be in a narrative format. If approved by FDA in advance, the Sponsor-Investigator may use an electronic reporting format. All reports must be labeled as “IND Safety Report” and must be sent to the review division in the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER) or the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research (CBER) that has responsibility for the IND or study. If the FDA requests additional information after receiving a report, then the Sponsor-Investigator must provide that additional information within 15 calendar days after receiving the request. Form 3500A can be found at this web link: http://www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/HowToReport/DownloadForms/default.htm

**Reporting to Emory IRB:** The Sponsor-Investigator should concurrently provide a copy of any Sponsor-Investigator Required Safety Report sent to the FDA and to Other Investigators to the Emory IRB and also provide the Emory IRB with a written analysis of whether Sponsor-Investigator believes the reported event constitutes an Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others. For FDA-regulated trials, the Sponsor-Investigator should only classify events that meet the following criteria as constituting Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Subjects or Others:

- A single occurrence of a Serious, Unexpected Adverse Event that is uncommon and strongly associated with drug exposure.

- A single occurrence, or a small number of occurrences, of a Serious, Unexpected Adverse Event that is not commonly associated with drug exposure, but is otherwise uncommon in the study population.

- Multiple occurrences of an Adverse Event that, based on aggregate analysis, is determined to be an unanticipated problem. Analysis should include a determination that the series of Adverse Events represents a signal that the Adverse Events were not just isolated occurrences and involve risk to human subjects.

- An Adverse Event that is described or addressed in the Investigator’s Brochure, protocol, or informed consent documents, but occurs at a specificity or severity that is inconsistent with prior observations.
- A **Serious Adverse Event** that is described or addressed in the Investigator’s Brochure, protocol or informed consent documents, but for which the rate of occurrence in the study represents a clinically significant increase in the expected rate of occurrence.

- Any other **Adverse Event** or safety finding (e.g., based on animal or epidemiologic data) that would cause the sponsor to modify the Investigator’s Brochure, study protocol, or informed consent documents, or would prompt other action by the IRB to ensure the protection of human subjects.

The Emory IRB will review all reports received from **Sponsor-Investigators** and make the final decision as to whether an event constitutes an **Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others (UP)**. The Emory IRB will report those events it classifies as **UPs** to appropriate government agencies and institutional officials in accordance with the process set forth in Emory IRB Policy and Procedure: Investigator Safety Information Reporting Obligations to IRB.

**Follow-Up to Safety Reports and Other Safety Information Received by Sponsor-Investigator:**

The Sponsor-Investigator must promptly follow up and investigate on all safety reports and other safety information that the Sponsor-Investigator receives. If a Sponsor-Investigator’s initially determined that that an Adverse Event was not reportable to the FDA and other investigators, but later investigation reveals that the Adverse Event should have been reported, then the Sponsor Investigator must make the report as soon as possible, but in no event later than 15 calendar days after determining the report should be made. In addition, the Sponsor-Investigator should provide the FDA and other investigators with a report labeled “Follow-up IND Safety Report” that sets forth any other relevant information received via investigation and follow-up. This Follow-up IND Safety Report should be provided as soon as the additional information is available.

**Record-Keeping:** The Sponsor-Investigator is responsible for keeping copies of all records and reports required under this Policy and Procedure as a part of study records.

References:

- 21 CFR §§312.32, .64 & 320.31
72 INVESTIGATOR SAFETY INFORMATION REPORTING OBLIGATIONS TO IRB

POLICY:
In order to appropriately evaluate on-going Research, the Emory IRB must receive from PIs and/or Sponsors information that may impact the risk/benefit analysis of Research. Such information may include Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Subjects or Others, Serious Adverse Events, Serious Suspected Adverse Reactions and Unanticipated Adverse Device Effects and is collectively referred to in this Policy and Procedure as “Safety Information.” The PI is responsible for making any Safety Information reports to the Emory IRB and/or forwarding to the Emory IRB any Safety Information reports received from a study Sponsor as required by the HHS, FDA and VA Regulations and Emory IRB Policies and Procedures. The Emory IRB will report Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Subjects or Others and to the FDA, OHRP and/or other regulatory agencies as required by applicable regulations and in accordance with the procedures and timetable set forth below. In addition, the Emory IRB will report Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Subjects or Others to appropriate institutional officials as described below.

DEFINITIONS: The following definitions apply to all subsections of this Policy and Procedure:

Adverse Event: Any untoward medical occurrence associated with the use of a test article in humans, including any abnormal sign, symptom or disease that is temporally associated with the subject’s participation in the Research, whether or not considered related to the drug or device being studied in the Research (the “Test Article”) or the subject’s participation in the Research. For purposes of Research regulated by the FDA, this term encompasses the term “Adverse Reaction” as used in 21 CFR Section 312.32 and the term “Unanticipated Adverse Device Effect” as used in 21 CFR Section 812.3(s).

External Adverse Event or Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others—An Adverse Event or an Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others experienced by subjects enrolled by investigators at sites other than Emory University sites.

Internal Adverse Event Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others—An Adverse Event or an Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others experienced by subjects enrolled by investigators at Emory University sites.

Possibly Related: There is a Reasonable Possibility that an incident, experience or outcome may have been caused by the Test Article or a procedure involved in the Research. Adverse Events that are determined to be at least partially caused by the Test Article or a procedure involved in the Research are considered to be related, or at least Possibly Related, to the Test Article or participation in the Research. Adverse Events are considered unrelated to the Test Article or participation in the Research if they are solely caused by the underlying disease, disorder or condition of the subject, or
by other circumstances unrelated to the Test Article, Research, or the underlying disease, disorder or condition.

**Reasonable Possibility:** Evidence exists to suggest a causal relationship between the Test Article being investigated and/or the Research procedures and an Adverse Event or Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others.

**Serious:** An event that is life-threatening (i.e., places the participant at immediate risk of death from the event as it occurred) or results in death, inpatient hospitalization, prolongation of inpatient hospitalization, persistent or significant disability/incapacity or substantial disruption of the ability to conduct normal life functions, congenital anomaly/birth defect, or if based on appropriate medical judgment, the event may jeopardize the subject’s health and may require medical or surgical intervention to prevent one of the foregoing outcomes.

**Suspected Adverse Reaction:** For FDA-regulated clinical investigations involving drugs or biologics, any Adverse Event for which there is a Reasonable Possibility that the drug caused the Adverse Event.

**Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Subjects or Others (UPs):** Any incident, experience or outcome that meets all of the following criteria:

(a) It is Unexpected (in terms of nature, severity or frequency) given (i) the Test Article or Research procedures that are described in the protocol related documents, such as the IRB approved research protocol, informed consent documents and/or investigator’s brochure; and (b) the characteristics of the subject population being studied; and

(b) It is related or Possibly Related to participating in the Research; and

(c) It places subjects or others at a greater risk of harm (including physical, psychological, economic or social harm) than was previously known or recognized.

**Unanticipated Adverse Device Effect:** Any serious adverse effect on health or safety, or any life-threatening problem, or death caused by, or associated with, a device, if that effect, problem, or death was not previously identified in nature, severity, or degree of incidence in the investigational plan or FDA application (including a supplementary plan or application), or any other Unexpected Serious problem associated with a device that relates to the rights, safety, or welfare of subjects.

**Unexpected:**

For Research Exclusively Regulated by the FDA: An event or reaction that is not listed in the investigator brochure or not listed at the specificity or severity that has been observed; or if an investigator brochure is not required or available, is not consistent with the risk information described in the general investigational plan or elsewhere in the current FDA application (including any amendments). Unexpected also refers to Adverse Events or Suspected Adverse Reactions that are mentioned in the investigator brochure as occurring with a class of drugs or as anticipated from the pharmacological properties of the drug, but are not specifically mentioned as occurring with the particular drug under investigation.
For Research Not Exclusively Regulated by the FDA: An event for which the nature, severity or frequency of the event is not consistent with either (a) the known or foreseeable risks associated with the Test Article or procedures involved in the Research that are described in the protocol-related documents; or (b) other relevant sources of information (e.g., product labeling); or (c) the expected natural progression of any underlying disease, disorder, or condition of the subject suffering the event and the subject’s predisposing risk factor profile for the event.

For VA Research: The terms “unanticipated” and “unexpected” refer to an event or problem in VA research that is new or greater than previously known in terms of nature, severity, or frequency, given the procedures described in protocol-related documents and the characteristics of the study population.

PROCEDURES

WHAT SAFETY INFORMATION NEEDS TO BE REPORTED?:

The following types of Safety Information need to be reported to the Emory IRB, either promptly or at continuing review (see later in this section for guidance):

- **Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Subjects or Others (UPS)**
- Some **Serious Adverse Events** or **Serious Suspected Adverse Reactions** that are not UPS
- Some **Unanticipated Adverse Device Effects**

Each category of Safety information and related reporting requirements, including time for reporting is described below. The requirements apply regardless of whether the events occur during the study, after study completion, or after participant withdrawal or completion.

Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Participants or Others (UPS)

PIs must promptly report to the IRB, through direct reporting or forwarding of a Sponsor’s report, all potential UPS including Adverse Events that constitute UPS. [Note: Not all Adverse Events constitute UPS, and there are UPS that may not be Adverse Events.] Reports must be made using the forms and in accordance with the timetable set forth at the end of this subsection. The Emory IRB, in turn, shall review the submission and promptly report UPS to Emory and other entities per the P&P entitled Reporting To Governmental Regulatory Authorities, Sponsors, And Institutional Personnel

Types of UPS:

**Adverse Events that Constitute UPS:** Adverse Events that are considered to be UPS must be reported to the Emory IRB. In general, an Adverse Event observed during the conduct of a Research protocol should be considered to be a UP only if it meets all of the following criteria: (i) the Adverse Event is Unexpected; (ii) the Adverse Event is Serious; and (iii) the Adverse Event is related or possibly related to participating in the...
Research. **Serious** and **Unexpected Adverse Events** have implications for the conduct of the study such as requiring modifications to the protocol or protocol-related documents and/or that place subjects at greater risk of harm than previously known, thus requiring re-evaluation of the risk/benefit ratio should always be considered to be related or possibly related to participating in the Research. Other adverse events that are unexpected and related or possibly related to participation in the research, but not serious, would also be unanticipated problems if they suggest that the research places subjects or others at a greater risk of physical or psychological harm than was previously known or recognized. Again, such events routinely warrant consideration of substantive changes in the research protocol or informed consent process/document or other corrective actions in order to protect the safety, welfare, or rights of subjects or others.

Special Requirement for Research Regulated Exclusively by the FDA: In the case of **Research** regulated exclusively by the FDA, per FDA guidance, only the following **Adverse Events** should be considered to be **UPs** that should be reported to the Emory IRB:

- **A single occurrence of a Serious, Unexpected Adverse Event** that is uncommon and strongly associated with an exposure to the Test Article (such as angioedema, agranulocytosis, hepatic injury, or Stevens-Johnson Syndrome)
- **A single or small number of occurrences, of a Serious, Unexpected Adverse Event** that is not commonly associated with Test Article exposure, but is uncommon in the study population (e.g. tendon rupture, progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy).
- **Multiple occurrences of an Adverse Event** that based on aggregate analysis is determined to be a UP based on determination that the series of **Adverse Events** were not just isolated occurrences, and they involve risk to participants (e.g. comparison of rates across treatment groups reveals higher rate in the drug treatment arm versus a control). Analysis supporting the determination should accompany the report.
- **An Adverse Event** that is described or addressed in the investigator’s brochure, protocol or informed consent, but for which the rate of occurrence, specificity, or severity represents a clinically significant difference (e.g. investigator’s brochure and consent list transaminase elevation, but hepatic necrosis is observed in study subjects). A discussion of the divergence from expected frequency or severity should accompany the report.
- **Any other Adverse Event or safety finding**, including a finding based on animal or epidemiologic data that would cause the Sponsor to modify the investigator’s brochure, study protocol, or informed consent documents, or would prompt other action by the IRB to ensure the protection of human participants.

**UPs that are Not Adverse Events:** Some **UPs** may not constitute **Adverse Events**. A **UP** that is not an **Adverse Event** should be reported to the Emory IRB if it is (a) **Unexpected**; (b) **Related** or **Possibly Related** to the **Research**; and (b) exposes **Research** participants, or individuals other than the **Research** participants (e.g., **Investigators**, **Research**
assistants, students, the public, etc.), to potential risk of harm (including physical, psychological, economic or social harm) greater than previously known or recognized. For example:

- Information that indicates a change to the risks or potential benefits of the Research such as an interim analysis or safety monitoring report, or publication in the literature that indicates that frequency or magnitude of harms or benefits may be different than initially presented to the IRB.
- A publication from another study that shows that the risks or potential benefits of Research at issue may be different than initially presented to the Emory IRB.
- A breach of confidentiality.
- Complaint of a participant when the complaint indicates unexpected risks or cannot be resolved by the Research team.
- Sponsor-imposed Suspension.

WHO HAS THE RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANALYZING POTENTIAL UPS AND REPORTING TO THE EMORY IRB?

**UPS Occurring at Emory Sites and Emory Affiliated Sites:** PIs and Sponsor-Investigators at Emory should promptly report to the Emory IRB all Internal Adverse Events that constitute UPS. The report should include the PI’s/Sponsor-Investigator’s analysis as to why he/she believes that the event being reported constitutes a UP. The Emory IRB will make the final determination as to whether a reported event constitutes a UP, and if so, the Emory IRB will report the UP to the Institutional Official and Director of the Office of Research Compliance, as well as to the FDA, OHRP and/or other regulatory authorities, as appropriate. In addition, the Emory IRB will review any proposed protocol modifications and/or make any determinations as to changes required to the Research.

**UPS Occurring at Sites External to Emory in multisite Research for which an Emory PI Serves as Sponsor-Investigator and coordinating PI:** The Emory Sponsor-Investigator is responsible for collecting and analyzing External Adverse Event reports and reports of other potential UPS from all study sites and promptly reporting any UPS to the Emory IRB. The Emory Sponsor-Investigator shall provide a report to the Emory IRB that designates any External Adverse Events that the Sponsor-Investigator believes constitute UPS, as well as any other potential UPS that are not Adverse Events. The Emory IRB will review the report and make a final determination as to whether a reported event constitutes a UP, and if so, the Emory IRB will report the UP to the Institutional Official and the Director of the Office of Research Compliance, as well as to the FDA, OHRP and/or other regulatory authorities, as appropriate. The Emory Sponsor-Investigator will include in the report a description of any suggested changes to the protocol and submit any necessary modifications for the Emory IRB’s review. In addition to reporting to the IRB, the Emory Sponsor-Investigator also shall be responsible for providing its report to all sites and investigators participating in the Research.
**UPS Occurring at Sites External to Emory in Research for which a Non-Emory Affiliated Person/Entity is Serving as Sponsor:** The Emory IRB will rely on the **Sponsor** to process and analyze information regarding **External Adverse Events** and other potential **UPS** that occur at non-Emory sites at which the **Research** is being conducted. The **Sponsor** is expected to promptly provide to the PI a report analyzing **External Adverse Events** and other potential **UPS** from non-Emory sites. The report should designate **UPS**, explain why an event constitutes a **UP**, and set forth any protocol changes or other action to be taken in response to the **UP**. **Sponsor** IND and IDE-related safety reports should include such a **UP** analysis. On receipt, the PI will submit any **UP** reports to the Emory IRB with a copy of any Safety Information report from the **Sponsor**. The Emory IRB will rely on the **Sponsor’s** report and determinations as to whether particular events do/do not constitute **UPS** without the need for further analysis.

If the **Sponsor’s** report does not contain an explicit **UP** determination, the PI will review the Sponsor’s report on the external events and provide the Emory IRB with a report designating which, if any, reported external events constitute a **UP**, explaining the designation, and setting forth any protocol changes or other action to be taken in response to the **UP**. The Emory IRB will consider the analysis provided by the PI and either request a **UP** determination from the **Sponsor** as to a particular event, or make its own determination.

If the **Sponsor’s** report includes recommendations as to changes in the **Research** protocol, then, at a minimum, the Emory IRB shall ensure that such recommendations are implemented through appropriate processes; provided, however, that the IRB also may require changes to the **Research** protocol in addition to those recommended by the **Sponsor**.

The Emory IRB shall rely upon the **Sponsor** and/or the IRB at the non-Emory site at which the **UP** occurred to carry out reporting of the **UP** to the FDA, OHRP and other appropriate regulatory agencies, as well as to investigators at non-Emory sites. The Emory IRB shall provide the Director of the Office of Research Compliance with periodic reports of external events that constitute **UPS**.

**Data Safety Monitoring Board (DSMB) Reports:** DSMB reports are often used as the primary means of collecting and tracking information on **UPS** obtained from other sites participating in multi-site studies, particularly as they relate to changes in risks that may require changes to the protocol or informed consent form. If **UPS** are reported in a DSMB report, the PI should provide the report promptly to the Emory IRB, along with a cover memo. This cover memo should indicate that the PI has reviewed the DSMB report and further state whether the information set forth in the DSMB report requires revision to the protocol or to the informed consent form. If revision is suggested, then the appropriate protocol modification also should be submitted.

In addition to reporting individual **UPS** at the time of their occurrence, the total number of **UPS**, along with the types of events that occurred and their
relationship to the study shall be provided to the Emory IRB in a summary report at the time of continuing renewal. See P&P entitled Continuing Review.

Special UP Reporting Requirements for AVAMC Research: For VA studies, prompt reporting of UPs is defined as reporting within 5 business days of becoming aware of the event.

If a DSMB or committee is being used for the Research, then all Serious Adverse Events and Unexpected Adverse Events must be reported to the DSMB or committee, which, in turn, must report a summary of its findings to the IRB. In addition, any other Adverse Events as defined by any safety monitoring plan for the protocol must be reported to the IRB as required per the plan.

SERIOUS ADVERSE EVENTS OR SERIOUS SUSPECTED ADVERSE REACTIONS THAT ARE NOT UPS

At the time of renewal for the study, the PI should report to the Emory IRB a summary of any Serious Adverse Events or Serious Suspected Adverse Reactions (for studies involving drugs or biologics) occurring in the previous approval period at Emory or external sites for Emory Sponsor-Investigator studies that do not constitute UPs and for which there is a Reasonable Possibility that the Test Article or Research procedures caused the event or reaction; provided, however, that any life-threatening or fatal Serious Adverse Event or Serious Suspected Adverse Reaction should be reported to the IRB immediately.

UNANTICIPATED ADVERSE DEVICE EFFECTS

For FDA-regulated clinical investigations of devices, the Emory PI shall provide the Emory IRB and Sponsor with a report of an Unanticipated Adverse Device Effect occurring at an Emory site. An Emory Sponsor-Investigator shall provide the Emory IRB with a report of any Unanticipated Adverse Device Effect occurring at an Emory site or at an external site for which the Emory Sponsor-Investigator is serving as Sponsor. Using the process described above for determining whether an Adverse Event constitutes a UP, the Emory PI/Emory Sponsor-Investigator shall analyze the Unanticipated Adverse Device Effect to determine if it constitutes a potential UP and include such analysis in his/her report, along with any recommended changes to the protocol. The Emory IRB shall perform a UP analysis and make any required reports as described above in the subsections entitled UPs Occurring at Emory Sites and UPs Occurring at Sites External to Emory in Research for which a Non-Emory Affiliated Third Party is Serving as Sponsor. The Emory IRB shall handle reports of Unanticipated Adverse Device Effects at non-Emory sites that are received from non-Emory affiliated Sponsors in accordance with the process set forth above in UPs Occurring at Sites External to Emory in Research for which a Non-Emory Affiliated Third Party is Serving as Sponsor.

Timetable for Safety Information Reporting to IRB: The PI should consult the table below to determine when particular types of Safety Information should be reported and the type of form that should be used for reporting. In the event that a contract or protocol specifies reporting criteria or timetables, the most stringent criteria/timetables should be followed.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EVENT</th>
<th>REPORTER</th>
<th>TIME FOR REPORT</th>
<th>FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UPS of All Types</td>
<td>PI (including PI’s transmittal to Emory IRB of report received from Sponsor)</td>
<td>Within 10 business days after occurrence or receipt of report from Sponsor, unless life-threatening or fatal, in which case immediate reporting is required.</td>
<td>Reportable Event Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Serious Adverse Events or Serious Suspected Adverse Reactions</strong> that are not UPS and for which there is a <strong>Reasonable Possibility</strong> that the Test Article and/or Research procedures caused the event or reaction. Applies to events that occurred at Emory and/or external site(s) of an Emory S-I study.</td>
<td>PI (including PI’s transmittal to Emory IRB of report received from Sponsor)</td>
<td>At study renewal, unless life-threatening or fatal, in which case immediate reporting required.</td>
<td>Continuing Review Form for reports at study renewal. Reportable Event Form for life-threatening or fatal events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unanticipated Adverse Device Effects</td>
<td>PI (including PI’s transmittal to Emory IRB of report received from Sponsor)</td>
<td>Report to Emory IRB within 10 business days after becoming aware of the event, unless life-threatening or fatal, in which case immediate reporting required.</td>
<td>Reportable Event Form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Any events that were initially determined not to be associated with the Test Article or Research procedures for which a **Reasonable Possibility** of association is subsequently determined, must be reported according to the criteria listed above. If the relationship of the event to the*
Test Article or Research procedure is unknown, the PI should report the event.

**Reporting Forms:** PIs should use the forms specified in the table above for reporting events in accordance with this P&P. All events that should be reported at the renewal of the study should be included in a summary attached to the application that is filed with the Emory IRB for continuing review/renewal of a Research protocol. Failure to include this information in the application may result in the protocol being **Deferred.**

**Reporting to Sponsors:** PIs are responsible for reporting to Research Sponsors all events reported to the Emory IRB, as well as any other reports required per contractual agreement with the Sponsor or per FDA or HHS Regulations. The PI should follow the Sponsor’s reporting procedures for making such reports. In the case of Sponsor-Investigators, the PI assumes the responsibilities of both Sponsor and Investigator.

**Emory IRB Review of Reported Events**

Appropriately trained IRB staff will initially assess each reported event, including any information and assessment provided by the sponsor. As appropriate, the information will be forwarded to the CoRe Team for further review and handling in accordance with the CoRE Team’s standard operating procedures.

If the initial staff reviewer is unable to appropriately categorize the event, he/she will consult with the IRB Director, **IRB Chair or Vice-Chair.**

The CoRe Team shall review all reports of Internal UPs and all potential External UPs for which the Sponsor has not made an explicit UP determination and make recommendations/determinations as to any IRB Committee review/actions that should take place in light of such reports in adherence with CoRe Team SOPs.

**Special Requirement for IRB Review of Reported Events on AVAMC Research:** Within five business days after a report of a serious unanticipated problem involving risks to participants or others, or of a local unanticipated serious adverse event, the convened IRB or a qualified IRB member-reviewer must determine and document whether the reported incident was serious and unanticipated and related to the research.

**REFERENCES:**
- 21 CFR Sections 56.108, 312.32, 312.64, 812.15045 CFR Section 46.103
- OHRP Guidance: Reviewing and Reporting Unanticipated Problems Involving Risks to Subjects or Others and Adverse Events, Jan. 2007.
- VHA Handbook 1200.05
- VHA Handbook 1058.01
73 REPORTING TO EMBOR IRB OF PROTOCOL DEVIATIONS/PROTOCOL NON-COMPLIANCE; NON-COMPLIANCE WITH APPLICABLE LAWS, REGULATIONS, OR IRB POLICIES AND PROCEDURES; AND REPORTS REQUIRED BY PROTOCOL OR CONTRACT

POLICY
PIs should report to the Emory IRB protocol deviations and/or protocol non-compliance, with the exception of **Minor Protocol Deviations/Protocol Non-Compliance**.

A **Minor Protocol Deviation/Protocol Non-Compliance** does not require reporting to the Emory IRB for review unless:

- Reporting is required by the **Research** protocol
- Reporting is required by the **Research Sponsor** or by the protocol or agreement governing the conduct of the **Research**

PIs also should report to the Emory IRB any failure to follow applicable laws, regulations or Emory IRB Policies and Procedures, as well as making any reports to the Emory IRB required by applicable protocols or contracts.

Report timeline and reporting forms are described in the table at the conclusion of this Policy and Procedure.

DEFINITIONS
**Minor Protocol Deviation/Protocol Non-Compliance**: A deviation from a Research protocol that was approved by the Emory IRB or non-compliance with a Research protocol that does not (a) adversely affect the rights, welfare or safety of subjects; (b) adversely affect the integrity of Research data; (c) adversely affect the subjects’ willingness to continue participation in the Research; or (d) was not undertaken to prevent immediate hazard to a human subject.

PROCEDURES
**Protocol Deviations/Protocol Non-Compliance** -- The PI shall review any instance of a deviation from a Research protocol that has not been approved in advance by the Emory IRB or non-compliance with a Research protocol to determine if the protocol deviation/protocol non-compliance meets any of the following criteria:

(a) Adversely affects the rights, welfare or safety of subjects.
(b) Adversely affects the integrity of the Research data.
(c) Adversely affects the subject’s willingness to continue participation in the Research.
(d) Concerns study documentation associated with an FDA-regulated study.
(e) Was a protocol deviation undertaken to prevent immediate hazard to a human subject.
If the PI determines that any of the aforementioned criteria listed under (a) – (e) are met, then the PI shall report the protocol deviation/protocol non-compliance to the Emory IRB.

If the PI determines that none of the aforementioned criteria listed under (a) – (e) are met, then the PI may consider the protocol deviation/protocol non-compliance to be a Minor Protocol Deviation/Protocol Non-Compliance and reporting of the matter to the Emory IRB is not required, unless mandated by Research Sponsor, protocol or contract. The PI should document in the Research record his/her review of the protocol deviation/protocol non-compliance and reasons for determining that it constitutes a Minor Protocol Deviation/Protocol Non-Compliance.

Minor Protocol Deviations/Protocol Non-Compliance noted during a Human Research Protections Program (HRPP) record review or audit will be recorded in an appropriate review/audit database, and this information may be accessed by units responsible for oversight of the HRPP for appropriate tracking/trending and referral to the Emory IRB or other HRPP oversight unit for any appropriate action.

Non-Compliance with Applicable Laws, Regulations and/or Emory IRB Policies and Procedures: The PI shall notify the Emory IRB of any instance of failure to follow applicable laws, regulations or Emory IRB Policies and Procedures of which the PI becomes aware. The Emory IRB will work with the PI to develop a reasonable corrective and preventative action plan to address the non-compliance.

Reports Required by Protocol or Contract: The PI should carefully review the terms of the Research protocol and any contract governing the Research (e.g., contract with Sponsor for the conduct of a clinical trial) to determine what matters those documents require be reported to the IRB and/or to the Sponsor. The PI should adhere to these reporting requirements, including any specified reporting timelines or forms.

**Timetable for Reporting and Applicable Reporting Forms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EVENT</th>
<th>REPORTABLE TO EMORY IRB</th>
<th>TIME TO REPORT TO EMORY IRB</th>
<th>REPORTING TO SPONSOR</th>
<th>EMORY IRB REPORTING FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Protocol Deviation/Protocol Non-Compliance</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Within 10 business days of the date of occurrence</td>
<td>Follow protocol, contract or sponsor directions</td>
<td>Protocol Deviation Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor Protocol Deviation/Protocol Non-Compliance</td>
<td>No, unless required by Sponsor, protocol or contract</td>
<td>Follow timeline prescribed by Sponsor, protocol or contract</td>
<td>Follow protocol, contract or sponsor directions</td>
<td>Protocol Deviation Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Compliance with Applicable Laws, Regulations and/or Emory IRB Policies and Procedures</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Within 10 business days after becoming aware of noncompliance</td>
<td>Follow protocol, contract or sponsor directions</td>
<td>Protocol Deviation Form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Reports Required by Protocol or Contract

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reports Required by Protocol or Contract</th>
<th>Yes, as required by protocol/contract</th>
<th>Follow timetable in protocol/contract</th>
<th>Follow protocol, contract or sponsor directions</th>
<th>Protocol Deviation Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### REFERENCES

21 CFR Section 56.108(a)
45 CFR Section 46.103(b)(4) & (5)
74 HIPAA AND OTHER APPLICABLE PRIVACY LAWS

POLICY:

The Emory IRB shall serve as the Emory University’s Institutional Privacy Board for purposes of compliance with all applicable requirements of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA). HIPAA requirements shall apply to all Protected Health Information (PHI). In general, HIPAA requirements will apply to Research and Research-related activities that involve Identifiable Health Information being created by, received from, or shared with a health care provider, clinical researcher, or another employee or agent of a unit of an Emory University Covered Component that is performing Covered Functions for or on behalf of the Emory University Covered Component.

Under HIPAA, PHI has one or more of the following identifiers associated with it: 1. Names; 2. All geographical subdivisions smaller than a State, including street address, city, county, precinct, zip code, and their equivalent geocodes, except for the initial three digits of a zip code, if according to the current publicly available data from the Bureau of the Census: (1) The geographic unit formed by combining all zip codes with the same three initial digits contains more than 20,000 people; and (2) The initial three digits of a zip code for all such geographic units containing 20,000 or fewer people is changed to 000. 3. All elements of dates (except year) for dates directly related to an individual, including birth date, admission date, discharge date, date of death; and all ages over 89 and all elements of dates (including year) indicative of such age, except that such ages and elements may be aggregated into a single category of age 90 or older; 4. Phone numbers; 5. Fax numbers; 6. Electronic mail addresses; 7. Social Security numbers; 8. Medical record numbers; 9. Health plan beneficiary numbers; 10. Account numbers; 11. Certificate/license numbers; 12. Vehicle identifiers and serial numbers, including license plate numbers; 13. Device identifiers and serial numbers; 14. Web Universal Resource Locators (URLs); 15. Internet Protocol (IP) address numbers; 16. Biometric identifiers, including finger and voice prints; 17. Full face photographic images and any comparable images; and 18. Any other unique identifying number, characteristic, or code (note this does not mean the unique code assigned by the investigator to code the data)

Other Applicable Privacy Laws: In some cases privacy laws other than HIPAA may apply to data used for Human Subjects Research (e.g., the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act may apply to research using educational records). In such cases, the IRB shall follow the requirements of applicable laws regarding acquisition, use and disclosure of data.
PROCEDURES:

Research to be Reviewed for Compliance with HIPAA Regulations: Any Research that is subject to the jurisdiction of the Emory IRB shall be reviewed to determine if the HIPAA Regulations apply, and, if applicable, to ensure compliance with the HIPAA Regulations. In addition, the Emory IRB shall review any request for the use or disclosure of PHI for Research purposes, and any and all requests involving the use of Emory University’s non-public information to identify or contact Human Subjects or prospective Human Subjects.

Standard of Review: In reviewing any Research matters involving the use or disclosure PHI, the IRB will make a determination as to whether the use or disclosure requires (a) Authorization by the Research participant or his/her Legally Authorized Representative; or (b) the grant of a partial or complete alteration or Waiver of HIPAA Authorization requirement.

Documentation to be Submitted to IRB for HIPAA Review: In general, if a Researcher who works for a unit that is a part of an Emory University Covered Component, or who wants to receive PHI from a unit that is an Emory University Covered Component, he/she must have a HIPAA Authorization document signed by the subject whose information is to be used/disclosed; or, the IRB may grant a Waiver of HIPAA Authorization if the study meets certain criteria; or, the Researcher may provide information to the IRB to establish another means under the HIPAA regulations for gaining access to the PHI (e.g., Research regarding decedents’ information, Research involving a Limited Data Set and Data Use Agreement, etc.). Accordingly, such Researchers must either submit a HIPAA Authorization form to the IRB for review, or submit an application for a Waiver of HIPAA Authorization for IRB consideration, or provide information that substantiates why another provision of the HIPAA regulations will permit use or disclosure of the PHI.

The Emory IRB has the authority to determine whether a HIPAA Authorization is required; to determine to what extent the Researcher may have access to, use or disclose health information regarding subjects; and/or to determine whether to grant a Waiver of HIPAA Authorization. The IRB will not grant a Waiver of HIPAA Authorization or permit access to PHI for review until adequate information to assess whether the access and/or use meets the criteria for waiver is obtained.

HIPAA Authorizations for Research: The Emory IRB will post on its website for use by Researchers template language to be used for HIPAA Authorization. Researchers are advised to use this template language. In evaluating any HIPAA Authorization language that is submitted for review, the IRB will review the HIPAA Authorization to make sure that it meets each of the following criteria:

The form is written in plain language and states that the person who signs the form will be provided with a copy of the signed document and that the Researcher and the Emory University Covered Component that provides any PHI to the Researcher also will retain a copy of the document as required by HIPAA.

A description of the PHI to be used or disclosed that identifies the information in a specific and meaningful fashion.
The name or other specific identification of the person(s) or class of persons, authorized to make the requested use or disclosure.

The name or other specific identification of the person(s), or class of persons, to whom the PHI will be disclosed or by whom it will be used.

A description of each purpose of the requested use or disclosure; provided, however, that as of January 25, 2013, the description of purpose no longer needs to be study specific. The Authorization must include a description of each purpose of the requested use or disclosure of PHI, including a description of any use or disclosure for future Research purposes. The description of the future Research purposes must provide reasonable notice to the individual that would cause him/her to expect that his/her PHI will be used or disclosed for the described future Research purposes.

An expiration date or expiration event that relates to the person whose PHI is requested, or the purpose of the use or disclosure of the PHI. Note: The statement “end of the research study,” “none,” or similar language is sufficient if the authorization is for a use or disclosure of PHI for Research, including for the creation and maintenance of a Research database or Research repository.

The signature of the individual study subject and date, or if the HIPAA Authorization is to be signed by a legally authorized representative of the individual, the representative’s signature along with a statement of the representative’s authority to act for such individual (e.g., parent, legal guardian, etc.).

A statement of the study subject’s right to revoke the HIPAA Authorization in writing along with a description of how the study subject may revoke the Authorization and the IRB-approved and/or HIPAA permitted exceptions to the right to revoke.

A statement that the provision of Research-related treatment may be conditioned on the provision of an HIPAA Authorization for the use or disclosure of PHI for such Research, along with a statement of the consequences to an individual for refusing to sign an Authorization in such circumstances.

A statement of the potential for information disclosed pursuant to the HIPAA Authorization to be re-disclosed by the person(s) who receive the information and who are not covered by HIPAA, thus rendering the information unprotected by HIPAA requirements.

**Compound Authorizations:** As of January 25, 2013, some compound Authorizations that combine certain conditioned and unconditioned Authorizations for Research are permitted. A “conditioned Authorization” is an Authorization that conditions the provision of treatment, payment, enrollment in a health plan or eligibility for benefits (e.g., obtaining a Research only treatment in the context of a clinical trial) upon signing the Authorization to permit certain uses and disclosures of PHI (e.g., disclosure of the PHI to the Sponsor of the clinical trial). A “compound Authorization” is one that combines Authorization of the use or disclosure of PHI for the conditioned purpose (e.g., receiving Research only treatment in the context of a clinical
trial) with use or disclosure of PHI for a separate purpose (e.g., optional biospecimen banking) that is not required to obtained the conditioned treatment, payment, enrollment or eligibility. The Authorization for the use or disclosure of PHI for a Research study may be combined with any other type of written permission for the same or another Research study provided that the following requirements are met:

(a) the Authorization must clearly differentiate between the conditioned and unconditioned components;
(b) the Authorization must provide the individual with an opportunity to affirmatively opt-in to the Research activities that are described in the unconditioned component;
and
(c) an Authorization for the use or disclosure of Psychotherapy Notes can only be combined with another Authorization for the use and disclosure of Psychotherapy Notes.

Prohibition on Sale of PHI: As of January 25, 2013, the sale of PHI (including PHI contained in a Limited Data Set) by a Covered Entity of a Covered Component for research or public health purposes is prohibited; provided, however, that a Covered Entity or Covered Component may receive a reasonable cost-based fee that covers that cost of preparing and transmitting PHI for research or public health purposes. Limited Data Set and Data Use Agreements entered into prior to January 24, 2013 that provided for disclosure of a Limited Data Set in exchange for remuneration in excess of a fee that covers the cost of preparing and transmitting the PHI may remain in effect until the earlier of the date of renewal, modification or September 22, 2014.

Criteria for Waiver of HIPAA Authorization: In certain circumstances, the Emory IRB may grant a complete or partial Waiver of HIPAA Authorization requirement and permit a Researcher working in or receiving information from a unit that is a part of an Emory University Covered Component to access PHI without a subject’s written HIPAA Authorization. The IRB will not grant an alteration or Waiver of HIPAA Authorization, in whole or in part, unless the Researcher has submitted an application for the Waiver of HIPAA Authorization requirement that establishes that the following waiver/alteration criteria are met. Explanations as to how each of these elements is met MUST be included in the application:

The use or disclosure of PHI involves no more than minimal risk to the subject based on the presence of at least the following elements:

An adequate plan to protect the identifiers from improper use and disclosure;

An adequate plan to destroy the identifiers at the earliest opportunity consistent with conduct of the Research, unless there is a health or Research justification for retaining the identifiers, or such retention is otherwise required by law;

Adequate written assurances that the PHI will not be re-used or disclosed to any other person or entity, except as required by law for authorized oversight of the Research, or for other Research for which the use or disclosure of PHI is permitted under the HIPAA Regulations.
The alteration or waiver will not adversely affect the privacy rights and the welfare of the individuals;

The Research could not practicably be conducted without the alteration or waiver;

The Research could not practicably be conducted without access to and use of the PHI; and

The privacy risks to persons whose PHI is to be used or disclosed are reasonable in relation to the anticipated benefits if any to the these persons, and the importance of the knowledge that may reasonably be expected to result from the Research.

Documentation of the Grant of an Alteration or Waiver of the HIPAA Authorization Requirement: If the IRB determines that a request for an alteration or waiver, in whole or in part, of the HIPAA Authorization requirement meets the foregoing waiver/alteration criteria then it may grant the alteration or waiver and provide the Researcher with documentation of the approval. The PI is responsible for providing a copy of this documentation to the appropriate unit or person within that unit that is a part of an Emory University Covered Component that will be providing any PHI for the Research, and a copy of the documentation also will be placed in the protocol file. The documentation provided by the IRB must include the following elements:

A statement identifying the IRB and the date on which the grant of the alteration or waiver of the HIPAA Authorization requirement occurred;

A statement that the foregoing waiver criteria have been satisfied;

A statement identifying whether the request for alteration or waiver was reviewed under normal review procedures or expedited review procedures;

A statement that briefly describes the PHI for which use or access has been determined to be necessary by the IRB, subject to the Minimum Necessary Rule (see below); and

The signature of the IRB Chair, or another member of the IRB as designated by the Chair.

Partial HIPAA Authorization Waivers: The IRB may grant a partial Waiver of HIPAA Authorization may be granted to allow access to PHI for the purpose of identifying potential subjects prior to subject enrollment. Once a potential subject has been identified, no further PHI may be reviewed or collected until the subject gives HIPAA Authorization at the time he/she decides to participate in the study.
Sample Forms: A sample application for a waiver of HIPAA Authorization is set forth on the Emory IRB website. Researchers who are granted a Waiver of HIPAA Authorization requirement should sign, and have all Research staff members who will have access to PHI sign, confidentiality agreements. A sample researcher confidentiality agreement is set forth on the Emory IRB website.

[Reference: 45 C.F.R. § 164.512(i)].

Minimum Necessary Rule: In determining the type and scope of the PHI for which the IRB determines use or access under a waiver or alteration of the HIPAA Authorization requirement is necessary, the IRB must limit access to only that PHI which is reasonably necessary to accomplish the purpose for which the request is made. For example, if the Research requires access only to certain test results in order to accomplish the purpose of the Research, the IRB should deny a request by the researcher for access to the entire medical record. If an Emory Covered Component is disclosing the PHI, it may rely on a researcher’s documentation or representations that the information being requested is the minimum necessary PHI if the documentation/representations have been reviewed by the IRB and reliance is reasonable under the circumstances.

[Reference: 45 C.F.R. § 164.514(d)].

Accounting Rule: If a researcher who is a part of the Emory Covered Component obtains PHI for Research purposes pursuant to a waiver of the HIPAA authorization requirement, then the researcher must account for any subsequent disclosure that is made of the PHI. Records of disclosure should be maintained for six years after the disclosure occurs. A Human Subject may request the Researcher to provide him/her with an accounting of the persons to whom and purposes for which his/her PHI was disclosed.

Acceptable Method of Accounting for Disclosure of PHI for Particular Research Purposes: If an Emory University Covered Component, or employee thereof, makes a disclosure of PHI to a Researcher for a particular Research purpose and the disclosure involves the PHI of 50 or more people (e.g., a disclosure of certain medical information from the records of 50 or more people to a Researcher for screening for subjects for a specific Research protocol), then the Emory University Covered Component/employee must keep an individual record showing the specific Research protocol or activity to which an Individual’s PHI was disclosed OR it may use the following more general method of accounting for such disclosures:

List of Elements in Disclosure: For each of disclosure within this category, keep a record of: (1) the name of the Research protocol or other Research activity for which the disclosure was made; (2) a description, in plain language, of the Research protocol or activity, including the purpose of the protocol and the criteria for selecting certain records; (3) a description of the PHI that was disclosed; (4) the period when the disclosures were made, including the date of the last disclosure made within this period; (5) the name, address and telephone number of the entity that sponsored the Research and or the Researcher to whom the information was disclosed; and (6) a statement that the PHI of the Individual who is requesting the
accounting may or may not have been disclosed for a particular protocol or Research activity.

Provision of List of Protocols Upon Request: If the general method of accounting is employed, then each individual who requests an accounting of the disclosure of his/her PHI in accordance with applicable HIPAA Regulations and Emory University HIPAA policies shall be provided with a list of all Research protocols at Emory for which the PHI of 50 or more people was disclosed. This list shall contain all of the elements set forth above in the subsection entitled List of Elements in Disclosure. In addition to providing this list of protocols (if any), the Emory University Covered Component/employee also shall provide the individual making the request with an accounting of any other non-Research related disclosures of that individual’s PHI or Research disclosures for fewer than 50 people, as required by applicable HIPAA Regulations.

Additional Assistance: If the Emory University Covered Component/employee provides its accounting of disclosures for Research protocols in the format described above (i.e., providing a list of Research protocols to which an individual’s PHI might have been disclosed, instead of providing a list of those protocols to which it actually was disclosed), then if it is reasonably likely that the individual’s PHI was disclosed to a particular protocol or activity, the Emory University Covered Component/employee must, upon the individual’s request, assist the individual in contacting the Research Sponsor and Researcher involved in the protocol.

Right to Revoke HIPAA Authorization. A Research subject may withdraw consent to participate in a Research study in writing, verbally or by failure to further participate. However, under HIPAA, unless the informed consent/Authorization form states otherwise, HIPAA requires a subject to revoke his/her Authorization in writing in order to revoke the subsequent use or disclosure of his/her PHI. The Authorization is required to state that Research subject has the right to make a revocation of the Authorization in writing, along with stating any lesser means for revocation that may be permitted (e.g., verbal revocation). [NOTE: Even though an Authorization form may specify that the revocation of Authorization is to be in writing, if a verbal revocation is received, or if the participant verbally withdraws from the study, then the Researcher should not access any further PHI of the participant from that point on.]

Revocation of a Compound Authorization: Where it is clear from the Research subject’s written revocation that only one part of a compound Authorization is being revoked, then the remainder of the Authorization may remain in effect. If the written revocation is not clear, however, then written clarification must be obtained from the Research subject as to which Research activities are in included in the revocation. If clarification is not forthcoming, then the revocation shall apply to all Research activities set forth in the compound Authorization.

Use of PHI After Withdrawal from Participation in a Study.

Withdrawal by Means Other than Writing. If the Authorization specified that revocation of Authorization was to be in writing, and a subject withdraws from participation in a Research study by any means other than in writing, then, when Authorized by the IRB, PHI that has been collected for approved Research purposes may
be included in data analysis and study results, unless otherwise stated in the informed consent form/Authorization. [NOTE: The most cautious approach with regard to such data, however, is to refrain from any further use or disclosure of the PHI except as is permitted in the sub-section immediately below.]

Withdrawal In Writing. Once a subject withdraws his or her Authorization in writing then no further use or disclosure of the subject’s PHI is permitted except to the extent that the Emory University Covered Component has taken action in reliance on the original Authorization or as is otherwise permitted as an exception to revocation under HIPAA that was set forth in the Authorization. For example, if data was already collected in reliance on the Authorization, enough of the data can be disclosed to a study Sponsor to advise the Sponsor of the subject’s revocation/withdrawal, and any data that was submitted to the Sponsor prior to the revocation does not have to be retrieved. In addition, data that was collected prior to the revocation may be submitted to a study Sponsor if the submittal is necessary to preserve the integrity of the study.

[Reference: 34 C.F.R. §§ 164.508 & 164.512].

Transition Period Provisions. PHI that was created or received before or after HIPAA’s compliance effective date of April 14, 2003 may be used for the Research purposes for which it was obtained, if the PHI was obtained pursuant to one of the following means, and then, only to the extent allowed by the means by which it was obtained:

- An Authorization or other express legal permission from an Individual to use or disclose PHI for the Research.
- The informed consent of the Individual to participate in the Research.
- A waiver by the IRB of informed consent for the Research; provided, however, that if informed consent is sought from an Individual after the HIPAA effective compliance date, then an Authorization must be sought and obtained as well.

Additionally, HIPAA authorizations and waivers of informed consent and authorization obtained prior to January 25, 2013, shall remain effective.

De-Identified Data, Limited Data Sets and Research Using Decedent's Information: Emory University’s requirements for the Research use of use of De-Identified Data, Limited Data Sets and Decedent’s Information are described in Emory University’s HIPAA policies, Sections C.4 and C.5 at [http://www.orc.emory.edu/hipaa/policies.html](http://www.orc.emory.edu/hipaa/policies.html).

Other Applicable Privacy Laws: In the event that the data used in a particular research is governed by laws other than HIPAA, the IRB shall seek the advice of the Office of General Counsel with regard to legal requirements regarding the acquisition, disclosure and use of the data.

Reference: 45 C.F.R. § 164.532.

Applicable Regulations:
See specific regulatory references above and see Modifications to the HIPAA Privacy, Security, Enforcement and Breach Notification Rules Under HITECH and GINA; Other Modifications to the HIPAA Rules, 78 F.R. No. 17, p. 5566-686 (January 25, 2013).
75 RESEARCH DATA AND/OR SPECIMEN REPOSITORIES CONTAINING PHI – HIPAA REQUIREMENTS

POLICY:

The establishment of databases and data repositories that contain PHI by units within the Emory University Covered Component must be done in accordance with all applicable HIPAA Regulations.

PROCEDURES:

Definitions: [insert definition of data repository as distinguished from a database used for just a specific research study]

Informed Consent and HIPAA Authorization Required: The Emory IRB requires that Researchers have participants sign an informed consent form, and HIPAA Authorization in order to permit their private information and/or specimens to be included in any data repository, unless the activity meets the criteria for waivers of such consent and authorization. If the information/specimens are being collected primarily for a specific research study, then the HIPAA Authorization and informed consent for also storing the information/specimens in a database/repository may be separate from the informed consent and HIPAA Authorization employed for the collection and use of the information/specimens for the specific Research protocol, or they may be combined as set forth below. The storage of information/specimens from a specific research study may be optional or required as part of enrollment in the study; the applicable case must be clear in the informed consent. Storage of information/specimens gathered solely for use in a database/repository must always be optional, and requires affirmative consent and HIPAA authorization (not “opting out”).

Compound HIPAA Authorization: Although in some cases in may be simpler and/or necessary to have separate HIPAA Authorizations for the inclusion of PHI in a database/repository (e.g., “front door” consent and authorization per which all patients at a clinical are requested to authorize collection of certain PHI in a database to be used for future subject recruitment), in some situations the Authorization for the collection of the PHI for the database and the use of that PHI for Research may be combined in one Authorization document.

Specifically, the Authorization for both database and Research activity may be combined into a single Authorization document if: (a) the use of the PHI for the database/repository is described in the Authorization; (b) the use for a specific Research project and/or future Research is described in the document; (c) all elements required for a valid HIPAA Authorization are met for both the database/repository and for any current and/or future Research project described in the Authorization; (d) the Authorization clearly differentiates between any conditioned and unconditioned components as described in Policy and Procedure 72, HIPAA; (e) the Authorization provides the individual with an opportunity to affirmatively opt-in to the Research activities that are described in the unconditioned component; and (f) an Authorization
for the use or disclosure of Psychotherapy Notes can only be combined with another Authorization for the use and disclosure of Psychotherapy Notes

No Blanket HIPAA Authorization for Unspecified Future Research: The HIPAA Authorization may not seek blanket consent or HIPAA Authorization for any and all unspecified future Research. Rather, the HIPAA Authorization must include a description of any use or disclosure of PHI for future Research purposes. The description of the future Research purposes must provide reasonable notice to the individual that would cause him/her to expect that his/her PHI will be used or disclosed for the described future Research purposes. Alternatively, if a waiver of HIPAA Authorization is sought, the application for the waiver must describe the specific Research project for which the waiver is sought.

Databases and Repositories Created Prior to the Passage of the HIPAA Regulations: A Researcher does not need to obtain a HIPAA Authorization for on-going Research using PHI that was entered into databases prior the effective date of the HIPAA Regulations on April 14, 2003 if:

The PHI was entered into the database/repository pursuant to an express written legal permission from each individual that permitted the use of the PHI for Research purposes; provided, however, that the use is limited to the Research purposes described in the permission document;

The PHI was entered into the database/repository pursuant to the informed consent of the individual to participate in the Research; provided, however, that the use is limited to the Research described in the informed consent; or

The PHI was entered into the database/repository pursuant to a waiver of informed consent granted by the IRB; provided, however, that the use is limited to the Research described in the protocol for which the waiver was granted.

If at any time the Researcher plans to use the data in the database/repository for a new use that is not covered by the original legal permission, informed consent or waiver of informed consent, then he/she must either (a) obtain a new HIPAA Authorization from the individual for this use; or (b) obtain a Waiver of HIPAA Authorization for this new use. Similarly, if at any time the Researcher obtains the informed consent of a participant whose PHI was included in the database/repository for a new Research project that uses the PHI in the database/repository, or if the Researcher wants to enter into the database/repository PHI obtained from the participant after April 14, 2003, then the Researcher must have the participant sign a HIPAA Authorization or for the inclusion of this PHI into the database or obtain an IRB Waiver of HIPAA Authorization.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR §§ 164.502(f) & (g)(4); 164.512(g); 164.514(a)-(c) & (e)(1); 164.512(i); & 164.532.

See also, NIH Publication Number 04-5489, Research Repositories, Databases, and the HIPAA Privacy Rule, January 2004 at http://privacyruleandresearch.nih.gov/researchRepositories.asp
76 CERTIFICATES OF CONFIDENTIALITY & INCLUDING RESEARCH INFORMATION IN THE MEDICAL RECORD

POLICY:
It is the policy of the Emory IRB to assure that the privacy and confidentiality protections are adequate for all Research participants. The Emory IRB may ask a PI to apply for a Certificate of Confidentiality, which. Investigators are also encouraged to apply for a Certificate of Confidentiality without a request from the IRB if they deem the Research eligible and appropriate for such protection.

To further increase safety, Emory also has policies regarding when research information is included in any medical record that a Research subject may have at Emory Healthcare.

PROCEDURE

Certificates of Confidentiality

Rationale for a Certificate of Confidentiality: Data collection about sensitive issues (such as illegal behavior, alcohol or drug use, or sexual practices or preferences) may require the protection of confidentiality beyond prevention of accidental disclosures. Disclosure of sensitive information may adversely affect a participant’s employability, insurability, financial standing and/or reputation.

A Certificate of Confidentiality provides protection for the Investigator and the participants against legally compelled disclosure, such as a subpoena or court order, of identifying information about individuals, such as names, addresses, social security numbers, fingerprints, photographs, etc., who participate in biomedical, behavioral, clinical, and other research.

Legal Basis for Certificate of Confidentiality: The statutory basis for a Certificate of Confidentiality is Public Health Service Act § 301(d), 42 USC§241(d). Under this Act, the HHS Secretary may authorize persons engaged in Research to protect the privacy of participants by withholding from all persons not connected with the conduct of the Research the names or other identifying characteristics of the participant.

Effect of Certificate of Confidentiality. Once a Certificate of Confidentiality is obtained for a particular study, Investigators may not be compelled in any Federal, State or local civil, criminal, administrative, legislative, or other proceedings to identify that study’s participants. In addition, identifiable Research information in the Investigator’s possession will be protected from legally compelled disclosure.

Eligibility for a Certificate of Confidentiality: Federal funding is not a prerequisite for requesting a Certificate of Confidentiality. Any Research that collects personally identifiable, sensitive information and that has been approved by an IRB is eligible to apply for a Certificate. The protection is available only when the Research is of a sensitive nature such that the protection is judged necessary to achieve the Research
objectives; however, the grant of such protection is not automatic. Certificates are granted sparingly.

**Research** can be considered sensitive if it involves the collection of **Sensitive Information** in any of the following categories:

- Research on HIV, AIDS, and other STDs; Information relating to sexual attitudes, preferences, or practices;
- Information relating to the use of alcohol, drugs or other addictive products;
- Information pertaining to illegal conduct;
- Information that if released could reasonably be damaging to an individual’s Financial standing, employability, or reputation within the community;
- Information that might lead to social stigmatization or discrimination if it were disclosed;
- Information pertaining to an individual’s psychological well being or mental health;
- Research on behavioral interventions and epidemiologic studies; and genetic information.

The above list may not be exhaustive. Investigators should check with the NIH regarding other categories of Research involving Sensitive Information that may be eligible for protection. (See NIH **Certificates of Confidentiality** Contacts)

Examples of Research activities that would NOT qualify for a **Certificate of Confidentiality** are:

- Projects that are not **Research** based;
- Projects that are not approved by an IRB in accordance with the NIH guidelines governing **Certificates of Confidentiality**;
- Projects that do not collect **Sensitive Information** or information that might harm the **Research** participants; or where all of the Sensitive Information is also present in other records that would not be covered by the Certificate of Confidentiality
- Projects that do not collect personally identifiable information.

**Voluntary Disclosures Not Covered:** The **Certificate of Confidentiality** does not govern the voluntary disclosure of identifying characteristics of Research participants, but only protects participants from legally compelled disclosure of identifying characteristics by the Investigator.
Personally identifiable information protected by a Certificate may/shall be disclosed under the following circumstances:

1. Voluntary disclosure of information by study participants themselves or any disclosure that the study participant has consented to in writing (including consent set forth in the informed consent and/or HIPAA Authorization documents), such as to insurers, employers, or other third parties;
2. Voluntary disclosure by the Researcher of information that is required by law or professional obligation to be reported including mandatory reporting of child abuse, elder or disabled adult abuse, reportable communicable diseases, possible threat to self or others, or other voluntary disclosures of a similar nature. [NOTE: All such disclosures must be spelled out in the informed consent form and/or HIPAA Authorization forms.];
3. Release of information by Researchers to HHS as required for program evaluation or audits of Research records or to the FDA as required under the federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. §301 et seq.).

Please note that if an Investigator contemplates any such voluntary disclosures (other than those by the participants themselves), the consent form should clearly indicate the nature and scope of the disclosure. It is critical that the participants be informed as to what information MAY NOT be covered by the Certificate and under what circumstances.

Requesting a Certificate of Confidentiality: The Investigator is responsible for submitting a request for the Certificate of Confidentiality from the National Institutes of Health (NIH). Additional information and submission instructions are located on the NIH website: Certificates of Confidentiality Kiosk: http://grants.nih.gov/grants/policy/coc/index.htm

Role of IRB Office and IO: The IO must sign the application before the Investigator submits it to NIH. Therefore, the PI should submit the application to the IRB Office, identifying the study by Emory IRB file number. The IRB staff shall conduct an administrative review of the application and update the IRB study records. They shall forward the application to the IO for review and signature. After obtaining the IO’s signature, the IRB office will return the application to the PI for submission to NIH.

The PI should keep the IRB informed about the outcome of the application for a Certificate of Confidentiality.

Research Information Included in the Emory Healthcare Medical Record:

The NIH has advised that information contained in a subject’s medical record will be covered by a Certificate of Confidentiality.

Informed Consent and HIPAA Authorization Forms: In order to ensure that medical personnel have appropriate information for treatment, for studies that take place at Emory University/Emory Healthcare sites, a copy of a subject’s informed consent and
HIPAA authorization will be included in any Emory Healthcare medical record that the subject has. These forms must state that they will be placed in the medical record.

**Inclusion of Information in a Subject’s Medical Record and Office of Clinical Research Database:** In general, the following standards will apply with regard to whether or not a subject has a medical record and the information contained therein:

a) Research subjects who are or have been patients at an Emory Healthcare facility will have an Emory Healthcare medical record.

b) Research subjects who are not and have never been patients at an Emory Healthcare facility will not have an Emory Healthcare medical record created for them.

c) Emory Healthcare information systems will include the following information in any Emory Healthcare medical record that a subject has: all research test and procedure results received from Emory Healthcare units. Results and reports that are read by facilities that are not authorized to provide clinical results (e.g., non-CLIA laboratories) will not be included in the medical record. In addition, results and reports that are read by non-Emory Healthcare facilities (e.g., sponsor-run central labs) are not required to be included in any Emory Healthcare medical record even if the test itself was performed at an Emory Healthcare facility. Results from tests that do not have a clinical reading done at an Emory Healthcare facility may or may not be in the medical record; however, it is important to let subjects know of any research-only tests that will be done during the study and that will not receive a clinical or diagnostic reading at Emory.

d) In addition to Emory Healthcare medical records, certain identifying information about each person who participates in a research study at Emory is kept in a database maintained in a Emory Office for Clinical Research Database, whether or not the participant otherwise has a medical record with Emory Healthcare. This information is kept to ensure patient safety and proper account administration for persons enrolled in clinical trials and the information will be used for healthcare operations (i.e., subject safety and account administration) as permitted under HIPAA. The database will not be used for research purposes.

e) Should a subject also be an Emory Healthcare patient, for patient safety reasons, the Emory Healthcare system will flag these individuals in the Emory electronic medical record as participating in a clinical trial. Specifically, names and identifying information for all persons entered into any clinical trial at Emory, will be entered into the aforementioned Clinical Trials Database by the Office for Clinical Research, along with the name of the trial in which the subject is enrolled and the name and contact information for the study’s principal investigator (PI). In order to alert Emory Healthcare providers, any subject who is or becomes an Emory Healthcare patient while in a clinical trial will be flagged in the EeMR system as a clinical trial participant for patient safety reasons.

f) In all events, the Informed Consent and HIPAA Authorization documents must clearly state what procedure/test results and other research information will be included in the subject’s medical record. The Informed Consent form also must let subjects know if the study includes any tests or procedures that are done
only for research and will not receive a clinical or diagnostic reading at Emory facilities, and therefore should not be relied upon for healthcare purposes.

g) The Informed Consent and HIPAA Authorization must be included in a subject’s existing Emory Healthcare medical record, and they must state that these forms will be so included. They also must state that the subject’s name, the trial’s name and information about the trial will be included in the Office for Clinical Research database.

For AVAMC Research, the Informed Consent and HIPAA Authorization forms may also be included in AVAMC medical records for AVAMC Research and the AVAMC medical record will be flagged to indicate subject participation in the trial.

Emory IRB Review: The Emory IRB will review each protocol to ensure compliance with applicable confidentiality and record-keeping requirements. The following

Applicable Regulations:

Section 301(d) of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. § 241(d)). See also Certificates of Confidentiality Kiosk at http://grants2.nih.ciov/grants/policy/coc/.
77 MANDATORY REPORTING TO LAW ENFORCEMENT AGENCIES

POLICY:
State law may require Researchers who are members of certain professions or employees of certain types of organizations to report to Enforcement Agencies certain information gained during Research the gives the Researcher reasonable cause to believe that a Child is a victim of Child Abuse or that a Disabled Adult or Elder Person has suffered Adult Abuse. The Emory IRB requires Researchers to inform participants of any such reporting requirements in any informed consent and HIPAA Authorization forms.

NOTE: Virtually all Researchers employed by or volunteering at Emory University are encompassed within the legal definitions of the below-listed terms, and therefore, have mandatory reporting obligations regarding suspected Child Abuse and Adult Abuse. Specifically, all Emory employees and volunteers are included within either the definitions of the various categories of “SCHOOL” personnel or “CHILD SERVICE ORGANIZATION PERSONNEL.” The legal definition of the term “SCHOOL” includes any college, university or institution of post-secondary education, and the legal definition of “CHILD SERVICE ORGANIZATION PERSONNEL” includes “persons employed by or volunteering at a business or an organization, whether public, private, for profit, not for profit, or voluntary, that provides care, treatment, education, training, supervision, coaching, counseling, recreational programs or shelter to children.

PROCEDURES:

CHILD ABUSE

Applicability: The following reporting requirements apply with regard to persons under 18 years of age who are suspected to have suffered Child Abuse.

Persons Required to Report: Under Georgia law, if any of the following persons has reasonable cause to believe that a Child has been the victim of Child Abuse, then he/she must make the reports to the individual or agency as described below. Note that the terms in ALL CAPS that appear below are defined in O.C.G.A. Section 19-7-5.

(a) Physicians licensed to practice medicine, physician’s assistants, interns, or residents; hospital or medical personnel;  
(b) Dentists;  
(c) Licensed psychologists and persons participating in internships to obtain licensing pursuant to O.C.G.A. Chapter 39 of Title 43;  
(d) Podiatrists;  
(e) Registered professional nurses or licensed practical nurses licensed pursuant to O.C.G.A. Title 43, Chapter 24;  
(f) Professional counselors, social workers, or marriage and family therapists licensed pursuant to O.C.G.A. Title 43, Chapter 10A;  
(g) SCHOOL teachers;  
(h) SCHOOL administrators;  
(i) SCHOOL guidance counselors, visiting teachers, school social workers, or school psychologists certified pursuant to O.C.G.A. Title 20, Chapter 2;
(j) CHILD welfare agency personnel, as defined pursuant to O.C.G.A. Section 49-5-12;
(k) CHILD-counseling personnel;
(l) CHILD SERVICE ORGANIZATION personnel;
(m) CLERGY members who receive information about child abuse outside of the context of
    confession or other similar communication;
(n) Law enforcement personnel; or
(m) REPRODUCTIVE HEALTH CARE FACILITY or PREGNANCY RESOURCE CENTER personnel
    and volunteers.

Privileged Communications and Reporting by Clergy Members: Suspected Child Abuse which is
required to be reported by any of the persons listed above shall be reported notwithstanding
that the reasonable cause to believe Child Abuse has occurred or is occurring is based in whole
or in part upon any communication to that person which is otherwise made privileged or
confidential by law; provided, however, that a CLERGY member is not be required to report
Child Abuse that is reported to him/her solely within the context of confession or other similar
communication required to be kept confidential under church doctrine or practice. CLERGY
members who receive information about Child Abuse in the context of confession, or similar
communication, and from any other source apart from such confession,
must comply with the Child Abuse reporting requirements outlined in this P&P.

Reporting Process: If a Researcher who falls under one of the above-referenced categories of
persons gains knowledge from the Research and/or interactions occurring during the Research
that gives him/her reasonable cause to believe that Child Abuse has occurred, then the
Researcher must adhere to the following reporting requirements:

If a person is required to report Child Abuse because that person has contact with a Child as a
part of the person’s duties as a member of the staff of a hospital, school, social agency, or
similar facility (a “Staff Member Reporter”), that Staff Member Reporter shall notify the person
in charge of the facility, or his/her designee. The person in charge (or his/her designee) shall
report to law enforcement authorities, as set forth below. The person in charge (or his/her
designee) may not control or make any modification or change to the information provided by
the Staff Member Reporter, although the Staff Member Reporter may be consulted prior to the
making of a report and may provide any additional, relevant, and necessary information for the
report.

Any required reporter, other than a Staff Member Reporter, who has reasonable cause to
believe that a Child has been the victim of Child Abuse shall report directly to Child Law
Enforcement Agencies.
An oral report shall be made immediately, but in no case later than 24 hours from the time the
reporter determines there is reasonable cause to believe a Child has suffered Child Abuse. The
oral report shall be followed by a report in writing, if requested, to Child Law Enforcement
Agencies.

Reports shall contain the names and addresses of the Child and the Child’s Parents or
caretakers, if known, the Child’s age, the nature and extent of the Child’s injuries, including any
evidence of previous injuries, and any other information that the reporter believes might be
helpful in establishing the cause of the injuries and the identity of the perpetrator. Photographs
of the Child’s injuries to be used as documentation in support of allegations by hospital
employees or volunteers, physicians, law enforcement personnel, school officials, or staff of legally mandated public or private child protective agencies may be taken without the permission of the Child’s Parent or Legal Guardian. Such photographs shall be made available as soon as possible to the chief welfare agency providing protective services and to the appropriate police authority.

Informed Consent and HIPAA Authorization Forms: For Research that involves (a) Children or other situations in which information regarding Children may come to light; and (b) Researchers who fall into the categories of persons listed above, the informed consent forms and HIPAA Authorization forms should clearly state that the Researcher may be required by law to report to Child Law Enforcement Authorities if he/she has reasonable cause to believe that a Child has suffered Child Abuse. All informed consent and HIPAA Authorization forms should state that information gained during the Research will be disclosed or reported as may be required by law. If a Certificate of Confidentiality is obtained for a study that involves Children or participants’ interactions with Children, mandatory reporting of suspected Child Abuse must be included as a voluntary disclosure that may be made and that will not be subject to the Certificate of Confidentiality.

Reporting Requirements Outside the State of Georgia: The Child Abuse reporting requirements set forth herein apply to Research activities that take place within the State of Georgia. If the Research activities take place in a jurisdiction other than Georgia and/or if the Child and/or his Parents/Legal Guardian live in a jurisdiction other than Georgia, the Researcher should consult the University’s Office of the General Counsel for guidance regarding applicable law and reporting requirements.

ADULT ABUSE

Reporting Adult Abuse of Disabled Adults or Elder Persons Not Residing in Long-Term Care Facilities:

Applicability: The following reporting requirements apply to Disabled Adults or Elder Persons who are not residing in Long-Term Care Facilities and who did not suffer the Adult Abuse that is being reported while they were a resident in a Long-Term Care Facility.

Persons Required to Report: Under Georgia law, if any of the following persons has reasonable cause to believe that a Disabled Adult or Elder Person has been the victim of Adult Abuse, other than by accidental means, then he/she must make the reports to the individual or agency as described below:

(a) Any person who is listed above in categories (a) to (n) under the section entitled “CHILD ABUSE.” [NOTE: All definitional information set forth in the CHILD ABUSE section also applies to this section.]
(b) Physical Therapists
(c) Occupational therapists
(d) Day-care personnel
(e) Coroners
(f) Medical Examiners
(g) Emergency medical services personnel who are licensed by the Georgia Department of Public Health.
(h) Emergency medical technicians, cardiac technicians, paramedics or first responders certified by the Georgia Composite Medical Board.

(i) Employees of a public or private agency engaged in professional health related services to Elder Persons or Disabled Adults.

(j) Clergy Members.

(k) Employees of financial institutions

[NOTE: Refer to Privileged Communications and Reporting by Clergy Members under the Child Abuse section above for specific reporting requirements when information regarding Child Abuse is obtained via privileged communications.]

**Reporting Process:** If a Researcher who comes under one or more of the above-referenced categories of persons gains knowledge from the Research that gives them reasonable cause to believe that a Disabled Adult or Elder Person has been the victim of Adult Abuse, other than by accidental means, then the Researcher must adhere to the following reporting requirements:

a) When the person having a reasonable cause to believe that a Disabled Adult or Elder Person has been the victim of Adult Abuse, other than by accidental means, performs services as a member of the staff of a hospital, social agency, financial institution, or similar facility, such person shall notify the person in charge of the facility. The person in charge, or his/her designee shall report or cause reports to be made as set forth below under subsection (b).

b) A report that a Disabled Adult or Elder Person has been the victim of Adult Abuse shall be made to a Georgia Department of Human Resources designated adult protection agency that provides protective services and to an appropriate law enforcement agency or prosecuting attorney.

c) The report may be made by oral or written communication. The report shall include the name and address of the Disabled Adult or Elder Person and should include the name and address of the Disabled Adult’s or Elder Person’s caretaker; the age of the Disabled Adult or Elder Person; the nature and extent of the Disabled Adult’s or Elder Person’s injury or condition resulting from Adult Abuse; and other pertinent information.

**Informed Consent and HIPAA Authorization Forms:** For Research that involves (a) Disabled Adults or Elder Persons or other situations in which information regarding such persons may come to light; and (b) Researchers who fall into the categories of persons listed above, the informed consent forms and HIPAA Authorization forms should clearly state that the Researcher may be required by law to report to Georgia adult protection agencies and to law enforcement authorities if he/she reasonable cause to believe that a Disabled Adult or Elder Person has suffered Adult Abuse.

All informed consent and HIPAA Authorization forms should state that Research information will be disclosed or reported as may be required by law. If a Certificate of Confidentiality is obtained for a study that involves Disabled Adults or Elder Persons or participants’ interactions with such persons, then mandatory reporting of suspected Adult Abuse must be included as a voluntary disclosure that may be made and that will not be subject to the Certificate of Confidentiality.
Reporting Requirements Outside the State of Georgia: The Adult Abuse reporting requirements set forth herein apply to Research activities that take place within the State of Georgia. If the Research activities take place in a jurisdiction other than Georgia and/or if the Disabled Adult/Elder Person lives in a jurisdiction other than Georgia, the Researcher should consult the University’s Office of the General Counsel for guidance regarding applicable law and reporting requirements.

Reporting Adult Abuse of Disabled Adults or Elder Persons Residing in Long-Term Care Facilities:

Applicability: The following reporting requirements apply to Disabled Adults or Elder Persons who are residing in Long-Term Care Facilities and/or who suffered the Adult Abuse that is being reported while they were a resident in a Long-Term Care Facility.

Persons Required to Report:

(a) Any person who is listed above in categories (a) to (n) under the section entitled “CHILD ABUSE.” [NOTE: All definitional information set forth in the CHILD ABUSE section also applies to this section.]
(b) Administrators, managers or other employees of hospitals or Long-Term Care Facilities
(c) Physical Therapists
(d) Occupational therapists
(e) Day-care personnel
(f) Coroners
(g) Medical Examiners
(h) Emergency medical services personnel who are licensed by the Georgia Department of Public Health.
(i) Emergency medical technicians, cardiac technicians, paramedics or first responders certified by the Georgia Composite Medical Board.
(j) Employees of a public or private agency engaged in professional health related services to residents of Long-Term Care Facilities
(k) Clergy Members.

[NOTE: Refer to Privileged Communications and Reporting by Clergy Members under the Child Abuse section above for specific reporting requirements when information regarding Child Abuse is obtained via privileged communications.]

Reporting Process:

If a Researcher who comes under one or more of the above-referenced categories of persons gains knowledge from the Research that gives them reasonable cause to believe that a Disabled Adult or Elder Person has been the victim of Adult Abuse at a Long-Term Care Facility, then the Researcher must adhere to the following reporting requirements:

- Immediately report in-person or by phone to the Georgia Department of Human Services and to an appropriate law enforcement agency or prosecuting attorney, as well as send a follow-up written report to the Georgia Department of Human Services within 24 hours after making the initial report.
The report shall include the name and address of the person making the report; the name and address of Disabled Adult or Elder Person; the name and address of the Long-Term Care Facility in which the reported event took place; the nature and extent of the Disabled Adult’s or Elder Person’s injury or condition resulting from the reported event; the suspected cause of the reported event; and other pertinent information useful in determining the cause of the Disabled Adult’s or Elder Person’s injuries/condition and in determining the identity of the responsible individual(s).

Informed Consent and HIPAA Authorization Forms: For Research that involves a) Disabled Adults or Elder Persons who are or were residing in Long-Term Care Facilities or other situations in which information regarding such persons may come to light; and b) Researchers who fall into the categories of persons listed above, the informed consent forms and HIPAA Authorization forms should clearly state that the Researcher may be required by law to report to Georgia adult protection agency and to law enforcement authorities if he/she has reasonable cause to believe that a Disabled Adult or Elder Person has suffered Adult Abuse while residing in a Long-Term Care Facility.

All informed consent and HIPAA Authorization forms should state that Research information will be disclosed or reported as may be required by law. If a Certificate of Confidentiality is obtained for a study that involves Disabled Adults or Elder Persons who are or were residing in a Long-Term Care Facility or interactions with such persons, then mandatory reporting of suspected Adult Abuse must be included as a voluntary disclosure that may be made and that will not be subject to the Certificate of Confidentiality.

Reporting Requirements Outside the State of Georgia: The Adult Abuse reporting requirements set forth herein apply to Research activities that take place within the State of Georgia. If the Research activities take place in a jurisdiction other than Georgia and/or if the Disabled Adult/Elder Person lives in a jurisdiction other than Georgia, the Researcher should consult the University’s Office of the General Counsel for guidance regarding applicable law and reporting requirements.

SPOUSAL ABUSE:

State of Georgia: There are no mandatory reporting requirements concerning spousal abuse in Georgia, unless the spouse falls within the category of Disabled Adult or Elder Person. Note, however, that any physician, nurse, security person, or other person with patient care related duties who is employed by a medical facility must report to the person in charge of the facility if they believe that a patient has had physical injuries inflicted other than by accidental means. The person in charge of the facility must, in turn, report the injury to local law enforcement agencies. The report must contain the following information: patient’s name and address; nature and extent of injuries; and any other information the reporter believes will be helpful in establishing the cause of the injuries and the identity of the perpetrator.

Informed Consent and HIPAA Authorization Forms: For Research conducted by Researchers who fall into the categories of required reporters and that involves activities that include the collection of Research information concerning participants’ physical injuries, the informed
consent forms and HIPAA Authorization forms should clearly state that the Researcher may be required by law to report to medical center administration, and in turn to law enforcement authorities, if he/she has reasonable cause to believe that an adult has suffered physical injuries caused by other than accidental means. All informed consent and HIPAA Authorization forms should state that Research information will be disclosed or reported as may be required by law. If a Certificate of Confidentiality is obtained, then mandatory reporting of physical injury caused by other than accidental means should be included as a voluntary disclosure that may be made and that will not be subject to the Certificate of Confidentiality.

States Other than Georgia: Researchers should check with the Office of General Counsel regarding spousal abuse mandatory reporting requirements in other jurisdictions.

Applicable Regulations:
O.C.G.A. § 16-6-9; 16-12-100
O.C.G.A. § 19-7-5
O.C.G.A. § 30-5-3 to -10.
O.C.G.A. § 31-8-8
O.C.G.A. § 49-5-12.
O.C.G.A. § 31-7-9
O.C.G.A. Title 20, Chapter 2
O.C.G.A. Title 43, Chapters 10A; 24, & 39
78 RECRUITMENT OF SUBJECTS

POLICY:

The Emory IRB must approve all recruitment methods and materials, as well as any study sponsor plans for encouraging recruitment of subjects, in order to ensure that they are accurate and non-coercive and do not unfairly bias subjects to participate or induce researchers to recruit subjects who do not meet enrollment criteria.

Special requirements apply to more than minimal risk Research subject to a DOD Addendum in which DOD or U.S. military personnel are enrolled as Human Subjects; as well as to FDA-regulated studies and to VA Research.

PROCEDURES:

Recruitment of Subjects: Per the HHS and FDA Regulations, the Emory IRB is charged with ensuring that the recruitment of subjects for Research studies at Emory is equitable and that all participation of subjects is strictly voluntary.

In order to ensure that these goals are accomplished, the Emory IRB requires researchers to submit to the IRB for review the following materials/information regarding a study under consideration by the IRB:

(a) The purpose of the research, the setting in which the research is conducted, the selection (inclusion/exclusion) criteria, and the amount and timing of payments to participants for equitable selection.

(b) Actual copies of all advertisement materials used to recruit subjects, including but not limited to, flyers, print ads, videos or audio presentations regarding the study, etc., and the final copy of printed advertisements to evaluate the relative size of type used and other visual effects. When advertisements are to be taped for broadcast, the final audio/video tape must be submitted. The IRB may review and approve the wording of the advertisement prior to taping to preclude re-taping because of inappropriate wording. The review of the final taped message prepared from IRB-approved text may be accomplished through expedited procedures. The IRB cautions investigators to obtain IRB approval of message text prior to taping, in order to avoid re-taping because of inappropriate wording.

(c) A description of any incentives and compensation that are to be provided to subjects for participation in the study. Incentives and compensation include, but are not limited to, gifts; gift cards or certificates; chances to win prizes; or monetary compensation to subjects.

(d) A description of any incentive or compensation provided by the study sponsor to researchers or Research staff for conducting studies or recruiting subjects into studies, including, but not limited to, monetary compensation, travel vouchers, gifts, etc.
**Review Standards**: The Emory IRB shall follow the standards below in reviewing recruitment materials and incentives in order to determine if they are permissible:

Advertisement materials must be truthful and accurate. Advertisement materials must not: (a) state or imply a certainty of favorable outcome or other benefits beyond what is outlined in the consent document and protocol; (b) include exculpatory language; (c) emphasize the payment or the amount to be paid, by such means as larger or bold type; and (d) promise “free treatment” when the intent was only to say participants would not be charged for taking part in the investigation.

Advertisements must be limited to the information prospective participants need to determine their eligibility and interest, such as: (a) the name and address of the investigator and research facility; (b) the purpose of the research; (c) the criteria that would be used to determine eligibility for the study; (d) a brief list of participation benefits, if any; (e) the time or other commitment required of the participants; and (f) the location of the study and the person or office to contact for further information.

Compensation or incentives given or paid to subjects may compensate participants for their time, discomfort, risk, travel, effort, and inconvenience in participating in the study, but should not constitute payment for deciding to participate in the research.

The timing of a study participant’s receipt of the incentive should not compromise or unduly influence the participant’s ability to withdraw from the study at any time.

Any incentives for study subjects that involve give-aways, chances to win prizes, lotteries, etc. must conform to all state laws regarding games of chance and gambling. In general, under Georgia law, lotteries and games of chance are prohibited.

Compensation for conduct of a study should not exceed the fair market value of the services provided.

Researchers may not accept any incentives from study sponsors that are in any way linked to or based on the number of enrollees in the study, (e.g., payment of monetary incentive for enrolling a certain number of study subjects). In addition, researchers must ensure that any incentives received from study sponsors conform to: (a) Emory conflict of interest policies; and (b) Emory Human Resources and any other applicable policies regarding gifts or incentives from persons with whom the University does business. As necessary, the Emory IRB may refer matters regarding incentives to the appropriate individuals committees or units in charge of reviewing matters of conflict of interest.

**FDA-Regulated Research and Advertisements**: For research that is FDA regulated, advertisements must not: (a) make claims about the drug, biologic, or device under investigation that are inconsistent with FDA labeling or; (2) use terms such as “new treatment,” “new medication,” or “new drug” without explaining that the test article is investigational.
**FDA-Regulated Research Compensation:** The IRB must not allow compensation for participation in an FDA-regulated trial to include a coupon good for a discount on the purchase price of the product once it has been approved for marketing.

**Clinical Trial Websites:** The Emory IRB recognizes that clinical trial postings on the web are an effective way to notify the public of important research for which they may want to participate. Basic descriptive information may be posted to the web without IRB review and approval. Basic information includes:

- study title
- purpose of the study
- protocol summary
- basic eligibility criteria
- study site location(s), and
- how to contact the study site for further information.

Information exceeding such basic listing information includes descriptions of clinical trial risks and potential benefits, or solicitation of identifiable information. When information posted on a clinical trial website goes beyond directory listings with basic descriptive information, such information is considered part of the informed consent process and therefore requires IRB review and approval.

**Special Requirement for VA Research:**
During the recruitment process, members of the research team must make initial contact with potential subjects in person or by letter prior to initiating any telephone contact, unless there is written documentation that the subject is willing to be contacted by telephone about the study in question or a specific kind of research as outlined in the study.

NOTE: If a research repository from a previous study is used to identify subjects, there must be an IRB approved HIPAA waiver for this activity in the new protocol.

Any initial contact by letter or telephone must provide a telephone number or other means that the potential subject can use to verify that the study constitutes VA research. If a contractor makes the initial contact by letter, the VA investigator must sign the letter.

NOTE: This paragraph does not apply to situations where a Veteran calls in response to an advertisement.

**Research Subject to a DOD Addendum:** When more than minimal risk Research enrolls Department of Defense or U.S. military personnel as human subjects then the following additional requirements must be included in the IRB application and followed:

(a) Non-commissioned officers shall not be permitted to influence the decisions of their subordinates as to whether or not to participate in the Research.

(b) Unit officers and senior non-commissioned officers in the chain of command shall not be permitted to be present at the time of research subject solicitation and consent during any research recruitment sessions in which members of units under their command are offered the opportunity to participate in the Research.
However, these officers and non-commissioned officers who are excluded shall separately be offered the opportunity to participate as research subjects.

(c) During recruitment sessions where a percentage of a unit is being recruited to participate in research as a group, an ombudsman not connected to the research or the unit will be present to monitor that the voluntary nature of participation is adequately stresses and that information provided about the research is complete and accurate.

**Applicable Regulations:**
45 CFR § 46.111(a)(3)
21 CFR § 56.111(a)(3)
38 CFR § 16.111(a0(3)
DOD Directive 3216.2 Para. 4.4.4.

**Applicable Guidance:**
FDA Guidance for Institutional Review Boards and Clinical Investigators 1998 Update
79 PAYMENT OF SUBJECTS

POLICY:

Payment in the form of money is sometimes an appropriate form of compensation for the time, effort, discomfort, and other contributions of human subjects to research. The Emory IRB must approve all payments to subjects, including the amount of payment and the proposed method and timing of disbursement, in order to ensure that such payments are not coercive and do not present undue influence.

PROCEDURES:

Payment to Subjects: Per the HHS and FDA Regulations, the Emory IRB is charged with ensuring that payments to subjects in Research studies are not likely to unduly influence (sometimes also expressed as coercing) the prospective subject to decide to participate. The subjects should not be put into a situation where the positive appeal of a payment is likely to prevent them from thinking clearly about the risks and benefits of participation. In order to ensure that these goals are accomplished, the PI of a Research study must submit the following materials and information for consideration by the Emory IRB:

A detailed description of proposed payments to research subjects. This description should include timing of payment, pro-rating schedule, payment for participants who withdraw before completion, and completion bonus plans, if applicable;

A description of any alteration in payments to research participants. This information should be submitted prior to implementation; and

An informed consent document that includes all information concerning payment. This information should not be included in the benefits section as payments are considered to be compensation, not a benefit. The informed consent document should state that the Researchers may have to collect the names and social security numbers of research subjects for accounting purposes.

If the total compensation is likely to exceed $600 in one calendar year, the Informed consent document must also state that the Internal Revenue Service requires Emory to report such payments.

Review Standards: The Emory IRB will include the following issues in its review of the proposed payments to research subjects:

The payment arrangements among sponsors, organizations, investigators and those referring research subjects to determine whether those arrangements are permissible;

The amount of payment and the proposed method and timing of disbursement to ensure that they are neither coercive nor unduly influential;
Any credit for payment should accrue as the study progresses and not be offered contingent upon the subject completing the entire study. Unless it creates undue inconvenience or a coercive practice, payment to subjects who withdraw from the study should be paid when they would have completed the study (or completed a phase of the study) had they not withdrawn. For example, in a study lasting only a few days, an IRB may find it permissible to allow a single payment date at the end of the study, even to subjects who had withdrawn before that date.

The amount paid as a bonus for completion must be reasonable and not so large as to unduly influence subjects who might otherwise withdraw to stay in the study;

Advertisements must not be coercive or present undue influence, and they must not emphasize the payment aspects of the Research or the amount to be paid by such means as large or bolded type;

Payment made to a minor must be appropriate in that it does not present the risk of undue influence; and

Payments to professionals in exchange for referrals of potential participants ("finder’s fees") are prohibited.

Payments designed to accelerate recruitment that were tied to the rate or timing of enrollment ("bonus payments") are permitted only if paid to compensate for additional recruitment costs (e.g., paid staff effort, advertising).

In reviewing a proposal to give human subjects payment or incentives to recruit other subjects (e.g., family member, friend), the IRB must consider the principle of fairness/justice, the principle of beneficence (minimizing risk and maximizing benefit), and respect for persons (informed consent). The IRB should consider whether the proposed arrangement would intervene negatively in the subject’s relationship with the other individuals, and whether the proposal introduces a new risk or higher level of risk to the study.

The Emory IRB (and the VA RDC, if VA research) will require that the PI of a Research study provide the following information for review if payment is to be made to a research subject:

Substantiate that proposed payments are reasonable and commensurate with the expected contributions of the research subject;

Include the terms of the research subject’s participation and the amount of payment in the informed consent; and

Substantiate that the payments are fair and appropriate, and that they do not constitute (or appear to) undue influence on the prospective research subject to volunteer for or continue to participate in the research study, or do not constitute (or appear to) coercion to participate or continue to participate in the research study.
Research Subject to a DOD Addendum: If Research subject to a DOD Addendum involves DOD personnel, including U.S. military personnel, then the following limitations regarding participant compensation apply:

(a) An individual cannot receive pay from more than one position for more than 40 hours of work in a calendar week. This limit on dual-compensation includes temporary, part-time and intermittent positions.

(b) Individuals may receive compensation for research activities if they do not take place during scheduled work hours.

(c) Federal employees while on duty and non-federal persons may be compensated for blood draws for research up to $50 for each blood draw.

(d) Non-federal persons may be compensated for research participating other than blood draws in a reasonable amount as approved by the IRB according to local prevailing rates and the nature of the research.

Applicable Regulations:

45 CFR §46
21 CFR §50.20
VHA Handbook 1200.05:
DOD Addendum; Dual Compensation Act; 24 USC 30
80 EMMORY UNIVERSITY AND OTHER STUDENTS AS SUBJECTS - INCLUDING DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION REQUIREMENTS

POLICY:

The Emory IRB is charged with ensuring that recruitment of subjects for Research studies is equitable and strictly voluntary. When the subjects to be recruited are students of Emory, additional consideration must be given to ensure that recruitment methods and materials are non-coercive and that confidentiality is strictly maintained. When subjects to be recruited are students of any institution, including Emory, the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA) applies.

Some Research involving students as subjects is funded by the Department of Education (ED). In addition, some schools where Research is conducted receive funding from the ED. This chapter also describes the additional rules and regulations that apply to such Research, including the Protection of Pupil Rights Amendment.

PROCEDURES:

Recruitment of Subjects: The Emory IRB must approve all recruitment methods and materials, in accordance with Policy & Procedure: Recruitment of Subjects, when students and/or employees are to be specifically targeted and recruited as Research subjects.

Recruitment of Students: In addition to following the procedures established in the P&P entitled: Recruitment of Subjects, the PI must also take the following issues into consideration when recruiting students for Research studies:

A PI who is a faculty member or instructor and is recruiting students for a Research study must advertise and recruit to students generally, rather than recruiting individual students. NOTE: An exception to this rule may be made when the use of the PI’s own students is integral to the Research study;

Where student participation is a class component:

The IRB may approve the giving of course credit or extra credit to students who are expected to participate in Research activities as part of a class curriculum only when alternative means of obtaining course credit or extra credit is available to students who do not wish to volunteer as Research subjects;

Research studies involving Emory students as participants should not include recruiting plans that unfairly or unduly pressure or coerce them to consent to participate based on the threat of withholding academic credit or favor, or by setting up an exclusive alternative that is proportionately more burdensome than participating;

The Research studies may not involve more than Minimal Risk.
The use of extra credit points for participation in Research studies should be limited as a reward, used only when the Research is closely tied to the course subject matter, and should not raise the student’s grade more than one-half of a letter grade;

Students should be recruited through general announcements, bulletin board postings, or advertisements, rather than individual solicitations. Students must be told that they can withdraw from the Research study at any time without losing the extra credit;

and

Research interventions should not be conducted during class time;
Students should not be recruited into Research of a sensitive nature (e.g., drug use, alcoholism, sexual preferences).

**Recruiting Emory School of Medicine students:**

Emory medical students may only participate in Research involving Minimal Risk and minimal interruption of time;

The Emory IRB has the authority to review and approve Research involving Emory medical students. Any Emory IRB concerns regarding the use of medical students should be promptly forwarded to the Office of the Dean of the School of Medicine for review; and

Emory medical students generally should not be recruited into Research of a sensitive nature (e.g., drug use, alcoholism, sexual preferences).

**Recruiting students from a particular Emory department or school:**

After the Emory IRB approval has been granted, Research studies targeted for or designed specifically for students from a particular Emory department or school may require the approval of the appropriate Dean before the study may begin.

**Applicability of Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA or the Buckley Amendment):**

Emory University, as well as many other educational institutions, are subject to the provisions of this Federal law, which affords matriculated students certain rights with respect to their educational records. FERPA applies when researchers obtain student records or personal education information from an education program as defined as any program principally engaged in the provision of education, including, but not limited to, early childhood education, elementary and secondary education, postsecondary education, special education, job training, career and technical education, and adult education. These records or information can only be obtained under the following conditions:
1. Consent -- Student consent is obtained; or

2. FERPA Research Exception – The FERPA Research Exception is utilized. Although student consent generally is required in order to release student education records containing personally identifiable information, requests for access to student educational records from researchers or research organizations acting on behalf of educational institutions may be permitted without prior approval from the student based upon the FERPA “research exception” provision. This exception permits the release of personally identifiable student records for research purposes, but only if all of the following apply:

a. The disclosure of student records is to be made to a research or research organization conducting studies, for or on behalf of, educational agencies or institutions, in order to:
   - Develop, validate, or administer predictive tests, or
   - Administer student aid programs, or
   - Improve instruction.

b. Researchers or Research Organizations desiring to obtain personally identifiable student records under this exception must first receive a determination from the Emory Institutional Review Board (“IRB”) that the exception applies to the intended research.

c. After receiving a determination from the Emory IRB that the exception applies, the Researcher or Research Organization must sign a written agreement with the institution that specifies the following:
   - The information to be disclosed
   - The purpose, scope, and duration of the study.
   - That information from education records may be used only to meet the purposes of the study as stated in the written agreement and which contains the current requirement in 34 C.F.R. § 99.31(a)(6) regarding disclosure and destruction of the information.
   - That the study will be conducted in a manner that does not permit personal identification of parents and students by anyone other than the Researcher or Research Organization or representatives of the Researcher or Research Organization with legitimate interests.
   - That the Researcher or Research Organization is required to destroy or return all personally identifiable information when no longer needed for the purposes of the study.
   - The time period after which the Researcher or Research Organization must either destroy or return the information.

Requests for access to student educational records based upon the above records must be submitted in writing to the IRB at the time of submission of the proposed research.
Per Emory Policy 8.3 on Confidentiality and Release of Information About Students, the following Emory student records containing personally identifiable information will not be approved for release by the IRB:

a. Counseling and Testing records  
b. Disciplinary Records  
c. Medical Records

3. Education records also may be released without informed consent under FERPA if all personally identifiable information has been removed, including:

a. Student’s name and other direct personal identifiers, such as the student’s social security number or student number.  
b. Indirect identifiers, such as the name of the student’s parent or other family member; the student’s or family’s address, and personal characteristics or other information that would make the student’s identity easily traceable; date and place of birth and mother’s maiden name.  
c. Biometric records, including one or more measurable biological or behavioral characteristics that can be used for automated recognition of an individual, including fingerprints, retina and iris patterns, voiceprints, DNA sequence, facial characteristics, and handwriting.  
d. Other information that, alone or in combination, is linked or linkable to a specific student that would allow a reasonable person in the school community, who does not have personal knowledge of the relevant circumstances, to identify the student with reasonable certainty.

Protection of Pupil Rights Amendment and Research Funded by the Department of Education (ED)

For Research projects conducted in a school that receives funding from the Department of Education, regardless of the source of funding for the Research, the PI must provide documentation to the IRB confirming that the school(s) are compliant with the Protection of Pupil Rights Amendment, by having policies and procedures regarding the following:

1. The right of a parent of a student to inspect, upon the request, any of the following, along with procedures for granting such requests:
   (a) surveys created by a third party before the survey is administered or distributed by a school to a student.  
   (b) any instructional material used as part of the educational curriculum for the student  
   (c) any instructional material used in a research or experimentation program.  
      (i) All instructional material—including teachers' manuals, films, tapes, or other supplementary instructional material—which will be used in connection with any research or experimentation program or
project shall be available for inspection by the parents or guardians of the children engaged in such program or project.

(ii) “Research or experimentation program or project” means any program or project in any program under 34 CFR §98.1 (a) or (b) that is designed to explore or develop new or unproven teaching methods or techniques.

(iii) For the purpose of the section children means persons not above age 21 who are enrolled in a program under §98.1 (a) or (b) not above the elementary or secondary education level, as determined under State law.

2. Arrangements to protect student privacy if a survey is administered to a student containing one or more of the following items (including the right of a parent of a student to inspect, upon the request of the parent, any survey containing one or more of such items):

- Political affiliations or beliefs of the student or the student’s parent.
- Mental or psychological problems of the student or the student’s family.
- Sex behavior or attitudes.
- Illegal, anti-social, self-incriminating, or demeaning behavior.
- Critical appraisals of other individuals with whom respondents have close family relationships.
- Legally recognized privileged or analogous relationships, such as those of lawyers, physicians, and ministers.
- Religious practices, affiliations, or beliefs of the student or the student’s parent.
- Income (other than that required by law to determine eligibility for participation in a program or for receiving financial assistance under such program).

If the Research is funded by the ED, then no student will be required, as part of any research project, to submit without prior consent to surveys, psychiatric examination, testing, or treatment, or psychological examination, testing, or treatment, in which the primary purpose is to reveal information concerning any of the above items. Prior consent means:

- Prior consent of the student, if the student is an adult or emancipated minor, or
- Prior written consent of the parent or guardian, if the student is not an emancipated minor

3. Policies and procedures on the administration of physical examinations or screenings that the school or agency may administer to a student.
4. Policies and procedures governing the collection, disclosure, or use of personal information collected from students for the purpose of marketing or for selling that information (or otherwise providing that information to others for that purpose), including arrangements to protect student privacy that are provided by the agency in the event of such collection, disclosure, or use. These should include the right of a parent of a student to inspect, upon the request of the parent, any instrument used in the collection of personal information before the instrument is administered or distributed to a student.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §46.111
21 CFR §56.111
Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA), 20 USC § 1232g; 34 CFR Part 99.
34 CFR §97, Subparts A and D
34 CFR §98
81  EMORY EMPLOYEES AS SUBJECTS

POLICY:

The Emory IRB is charged with ensuring that recruitment of subjects for Research studies is equitable and strictly voluntary. When the subjects to be recruited are students of Emory, additional consideration must be given to ensure that recruitment methods and materials are non-coercive and that confidentiality is strictly maintained.

If the proposed Research involving employees would take place elsewhere than Emory, the same principles of safeguarding against coercion and undue influence shall be applied.

PROCEDURES:

Employee Recruitment: In addition to following the procedures established in the P&P entitled: Recruitment of Subjects, the PI must also take the following issues into consideration when recruiting Emory employees for Research studies:

The PI should minimize the likelihood that employees who participate in Research programs perceive that the decision will affect performance evaluations or job advancement;

Employees should be recruited through general announcements, listservs or advertisements, rather than individual solicitations;

Employees of a particular PI or laboratory should not be directly recruited for participation in any study conducted by that PI or laboratory, although they may volunteer to participate;

PIs who include colleagues or subordinates as Research subjects should be able to provide a rationale other than convenience for selecting those individuals, and should show that recruitment methods do not lead colleagues to think that they will be compromised by not participating.

Review Standards: In addition to the standards established in the P&P entitled: Recruitment of Subjects, the Emory IRB will follow the standards below in reviewing the recruitment of students and/or Emory employees for Research studies:

The Emory IRB will exercise oversight of the use of faculty, instructors, students, medical students, and Emory employees as the targeted population in Research studies;

The Emory IRB will review the proposed involvement of faculty, instructors, students, medical students, and Emory employees as the targeted population in Research studies, and when making its final determination will assure that:
- Consent for participation is sought only under circumstances which minimize the possibility of coercion or undue influence, and which clearly identify methods used to maintain confidentiality;

- There are genuinely equivalent alternatives to participation available;

- The selection of *Research* subjects is equitable;

- The risk of coercion is minimized; and

- Added protections for *Vulnerable Populations* have been assured, if required.

The Emory IRB will promptly forward any concerns regarding the use of students to the Dean of the appropriate school or department.

**Departmental Subject Pool:** The Department of Psychology subject pool consists of all students enrolled in Psychology 110 and 111. Each student in Psychology 110 and 111 students must complete 6 credits of research (1 credit for 45 minutes, or portion thereof, of participation in an approved study) for course credit in each of these classes. Students who do not wish to participate in research studies will be provided with an alternative equivalent task (i.e., summary reports of journal articles) in order to earn the required credits.

The Department of Psychology conducts all *Research* and training in accordance with the ethical guidelines set forth by the American Psychological Association, and as appropriate, with the approval of the Emory IRB.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §46.111  
21 CFR §56.111  
Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA), 20 USC § 1232g; 34 CFR Part 99.
82 INVESTIGATOR QUALIFICATIONS

POLICY:

It is the policy of the Emory University IRB that all Investigators involved in human subjects research be appropriately trained and qualified to engage in such research. All investigators, including students, must comply with all requirements outlined below in order to be eligible to conduct Human Subjects Research at Emory University and its affiliates. It is further the policy of the Emory University IRB that all protocols submitted to the IRB from academic departments or units, including student submissions, shall include at least one investigator with faculty rank. Investigators from non-academic departments or units within Emory (e.g. administrative offices and clinical nursing quality-of-care review units staffed by non-faculty) do not need to have an investigator of faculty rank on the study. The study must still include appropriate collaborative care.

Any regular full-time or part-time faculty member in the School of Medicine is allowed to submit research proposals to external research sponsors on which he/she is listed as the Principal Investigator (PI), with the prior approval of the Department Chair, Dean's Office, and University. Regular faculty includes the following ranks on all tracks: Associate, Senior Associate, Instructor, Assistant Professor, Associate Professor, and Professor. All research proposals will be submitted through the Department, School, and University in accordance with School and University policies and procedures.

Faculty members who have active research portfolios and are retiring with emeritus status may be eligible to continue their research as PIs under the Emory IRB. The faculty member and Department Chair will agree upon the terms under which the research will be allowed to continue, with the prior written approval of the Department Chair and Dean’s Office.

Please see the P&P “Research Conducted by Students and Trainees” for more information regarding investigator eligibility.

DEFINED TERMS:

Study Personnel: Includes principal investigators, co-investigators, research coordinators, and any other research team members, including students, who have contact with research participants and/or their research data and identifiers for the conduct of the study. In general, individuals participating in the informed consent process are considered to be Study personnel. In general, individuals whose primary contact with the subject is in the context of clinical care, or who function solely as translators, are not considered Study personnel if they play no further role in the research.

PROCEDURES:

All employees, faculty, staff, students and/or agents of Emory University engaged in the conduct of human subject research must have reviewed and be familiar with the principles of “The Belmont Report: Ethical Principles and Guidelines for the Protection of Human Subjects of
"Research", along with applicable Federal and State laws and institutional policies regarding Human Subjects Research.

Training Requirement:

Prior to submitting research protocols for review and approval by the EU IRB, all Study personnel listed on an Emory IRB submission, regardless of their position, must be currently certified in the Emory or equivalent version of the web-based Collaborative IRB Training Initiative (CITI) Program in the Protection of Human Subjects in Research available at http://www.citiprogram.org/. The specific CITI training requirements, including which courses are required and the certification period are posted on the Emory IRB website under the "Education" area, and at the Emory CITI website.

In collaborative studies under the review of another institution’s IRB, the employees of the other institution should meet their own training requirements. Emory training requirements would not apply unless the other institution relies on Emory for IRB review under an IRB authorization agreement.

Researchers who are subject to VA regulations are required to: complete training in good clinical practice and the ethical principles on which human research is to be conducted before they may participate in human participants’ research. They must update such training every three years thereafter. VA shall ensure that all VA investigators and VA staff participating in human subject research complete all VA and Emory training requirements (per AVAMC Memorandum of Understanding).

Other training requirements may apply based on funding agency, research location, or other research context.

Investigator Responsibilities:

Prior to submitting research applications for the review and approval of the EU IRB the Investigator will:

- Complete and maintain currency for the required CITI training on human research protections (initial and continuing review);

- Complete the Clinical Research Key Concepts training for study investigators and coordinators;

- Complete any additional human research ethics or other training required by applicable funding agencies or other entities that oversee the research (e.g. AVAMC, Department of Defense).

- Disclose any conflicts of interest of the Investigator or key study personnel;

- Assure that other Investigators and key study personnel have completed the required CITI training (initial and continuing) and other applicable required training programs; and are
familiar with the proposed research;

Assure other Investigators and key study personnel are competent and licensed, if applicable, relevant to the scope and complexity of the research conducted.

Conduct research in accordance with the ethical principles of The Belmont Report, Federal and State regulations, Institutional policies and procedures, EU IRB policies and procedures, and if applicable, Good Clinical Practice standards.

Read, understand and agree to abide by all terms of the Statement of Investigator Responsibilities in conducting Human Subjects Research.

For VA Research:

- The principal Researcher, local site Researcher, and Researcher must uphold professional and ethical standards and practices and adhere to all applicable VA and other federal requirements, including the local VA facility’s standard operating procedures, regarding the conduct of research and the protection of human participants. The responsibilities of the Researcher may be defined in the protocol or IRB application
- Researchers are required to ensure appropriate telephone contact with participants. This pertains to contacting the participant by telephone. Research team members are prohibited from requesting social security numbers by telephone

Students (Including Post-Doctoral) Research Projects:

All student investigators must satisfy all applicable Investigator Responsibilities outlined above.

Additionally, all student submissions must, at a minimum, include a co-investigator with faculty rank who also shall be responsible for oversight of the research and compliance with HHS Regulations regarding Human Subjects Research.

Student activities that must be reviewed by the Emory IRB (or by another IRB under a reliance agreement) include, but are not necessarily limited to:

- All undergraduate honors theses, master’s theses and doctoral dissertations that involve Human Subjects Research; and
- Class projects that involve human subjects if they are intended to contribute to generalizable knowledge beyond the classroom or Emory-specific setting, or whose findings may inform future research studies.

Students and their faculty advisors are encouraged to consult with the IRB staff to determine if an IRB submission is required.

Students (including Post-Doctoral) may not hold an IND or IDE; if one is a requirement of a grant, a faculty member must make this commitment.
Listing of *Study Personnel* on Documentation Required for *FDA*-Regulated Clinical Investigations: The fact that a person meets the definition of *Study personnel* does not necessarily mean that that person should be listed on documentation required by Sponsors, *Sponsor-Investigators* or the *FDA* for clinical investigations subject to *FDA* regulations. Investigators should follow *FDA* regulations and guidance in determining the persons that should be listed on documentation associated with the conduct of *FDA*-regulated clinical investigations (e.g., Form 1572 – Statement of Investigator). Similarly, the fact that a person is listed on documentation associated with the conduct of *FDA*-regulated clinical investigations does not mean that such person automatically meets the definition of *Study personnel*. Rather, an independent assessment should be performed to determine if the person is *Study personnel*, according to the definition of that term listed above.

**Applicable Regulations:**

None

*See Information Sheet Guidance for Sponsors, Clinical Investigators, and IRBs: Frequently Asked Questions – Statement of Investigator (Form FDA 1572).*
83 RESEARCH CONDUCTED BY STUDENTS AND TRAINEES

POLICY:

Emory students and trainees who conduct Human Subjects Research are required to familiarize themselves with and adhere to all applicable regulations and policies. The requirements stated in these procedures constitute the minimum requirements for student protocols involving Human Subjects Research at Emory University. Emory College and/or the individual schools and departments may have separate, additional requirements for student Research protocols.

Student researchers are responsible for consulting with their faculty sponsors and/or schools and departments regarding any such additional requirements.

PROCEDURES:

Student Responsibilities: Emory students involved in the conduct of Human Subjects Research should become familiar with and develop a comprehensive understanding of its ethical and regulatory requirements as a part of their educational experience.

Students are encouraged to interact with both their faculty sponsors and the Emory IRB staff regarding questions about compliance with these requirements.

Emory Students - Status as Investigators: In general, Emory graduate students may be Principal Investigators on Research studies. Each school at Emory University has its own policy about whether students may or may not be listed as Principal Investigator on Research studies submitted to the Emory IRB.

For studies where the faculty advisor serves as Principal Investigator, departmental, not faculty, review is required and the study application does not need to indicate that it is “student research.” The faculty advisor is responsible for communicating to the students the ethical and regulatory requirements of Human Subjects Research, for ensuring the protection of Human Subjects and that a process is in place for obtaining voluntary informed consent from subjects whenever applicable; and for monitoring the students’ progress. Any questions should be directed to the IRB Office.

Emory College and Oxford College undergraduates may not serve as Principal Investigators. Their faculty advisor must serve as Principal Investigator while the undergraduate student is listed as Co-Investigator. (Such IRB submissions should not indicate that it is “student research,” which triggers the electronic system to require faculty advisor approval.) These studies require departmental approval.

Emory School of Medicine trainees, professional students, interns, residents, staff members, and fellows may not serve as Principal Investigators on Research studies. Generally, individuals in these categories may not hold and IND or IDE; if one is a requirement of a grant, a faculty member must make this commitment.
The medical student must have a faculty advisor who holds faculty rank named as the Principal Investigator, while the student is named as Co-Investigator. These studies also require departmental approval. The submissions to the Emory IRB should not describe the project as “student research” and do not require faculty advisor approval.

With special permission from department chair and faculty mentor, a post-doctoral fellow may submit a NIH grant application as Principal Investigator [see School of Medicine Principal Investigator Eligibility Policy.] In such exceptional cases, with documentation of permission, the IRB may accept a submission with a non-faculty Principal Investigator.

Rollins School of Public Health: the graduate student’s faculty advisor does not have to be listed as a Co-Investigator. The student’s application requires faculty advisor approval.

All other graduate schools at Emory (excluding School of Medicine and Rollins School of Public Health): the graduate student’s faculty advisor must be named as Co-Investigator on the study. The submission should indicate it is “student research” and requires faculty advisor review.

Classroom and Training activities: Faculty are responsible for determining whether any classroom or training activities (including dissertations, theses, special study projects, et cetera) constitute Human Subjects Research and are encouraged to contact the IRB Office for guidance.

In making a determination of whether or not a classroom or training activity constitutes Human Subjects Research and requires IRB review, the faculty is encouraged to err on the side of caution. Such approval may NOT be awarded retroactively. See the P&Ps entitled Human Subjects Research Determination and Exempt Research.

When designing a classroom or training activity that may involve Human Subjects, students should be instructed on the ethical conduct of Research and on the preparation of the IRB application when such is required. In particular, instructors should ensure that students

- understand the elements of informed consent;
- develop appropriate consent documents;
- plan appropriate recruitment strategies for identifying subjects;
- identify and minimize potential risks to subjects;
- assess the risk-benefit ratio for the project;
- establish and maintain strict guidelines for protecting confidentiality

VA Research

Students and other trainees (including residents and fellows), including VA employees, from schools with an academic affiliation agreement consistent with current VHA policy, may serve as Researcher within a VA facility, or use data, or human biological specimens that have been collected within VA for clinical, administrative, or research purposes.
A Researcher sufficiently experienced in the area of the trainee’s research interest must serve as principal Researcher or co-principal Researcher and is responsible for oversight of the research and the trainee.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR §§ 46.101; 46.102  
VHseehahi dA Handbook 1200.05
84 IRB REVIEW OF ORAL HISTORY PROJECTS

POLICY

The decision as to whether oral history projects are subject to the policies and regulations outlined in the Emory FWA and HHS regulations for the protection of human research subjects (45 CFR §46) is based on the prospective intent of the Investigator and the regulatory definition of Research. Oral history projects and activities that fall within the standards set forth in Section A below must be submitted to the Emory IRB for review and approval.

PROCEDURES

A. Standards for determining whether Oral History Projects and Activities require IRB review

Whether a specific oral history project or activity is subject to DHHS human subjects research regulations (45 CFR §46) and is therefore subject to IRB review requires evaluation of the investigator’s prospective intent and the application of the regulatory definition of Research.¹ The regulations define Research as:

“a systematic investigation, including research development, testing and evaluation designed to develop or contribute to generalizable knowledge.”

Accordingly, the determination of whether IRB review is required for oral history projects and activities hinges upon:

1. Whether the activity involves a prospective research plan that incorporates data collection, including qualitative data, and data analysis to answer a research question; AND
2. Whether the activity is designed to draw general conclusions, inform policy, or generalize findings.

Activities that meet both of the above standards are subject to the University’s human research protections policies and must be submitted for IRB review.

The principles and examples listed in Section B of this procedure should be helpful in making this determination.

¹ An institution should perform an initial two-step evaluation prior to deciding whether an activity constitutes human subject research:

a. determine whether the activity constitutes “research” as defined by 45 CFR §46.102(d), AND
b. determine whether the “research” includes human subjects as defined by 45 CFR §46.102(f).

Oral history activities, by their very nature, meet the second prong of this test (i.e., research includes human subjects because they involve the collection of data “through intervention or interaction with the individual.” See 45 CFR §46.102(f)).
B. General Principles for Evaluation of Oral History Projects and Activities:

The following principles and examples illustrate application of the standards set forth in Section A of this procedure.

Oral history activities, such as open-ended interviews, that ONLY document a specific historical event or the experiences of individuals without an intent to draw conclusions or generalize findings would NOT constitute "research" as defined by HHS regulations at 45 CFR §46.

**Example:** An oral history video recording of interviews with holocaust survivors is created for viewing in the Holocaust Museum. The creation of the videotape does NOT intend to draw conclusions, inform policy, or generalize findings. The sole purpose is to create a historical record of specific personal events and experiences related to the Holocaust and provide a venue for Holocaust survivors to tell their stories.

Systematic investigations involving open-ended interviews that are designed to develop or contribute to generalizable knowledge (e.g., designed to draw conclusions, inform policy, or generalize findings) WOULD constitute "research" as defined by HHS regulations at 45 CFR §46.

**Example:** An open-ended interview of surviving Gulf War veterans to document their experiences and to draw conclusions about their experiences, inform policy, or generalize findings.

Oral historians and qualitative investigators may want to create archives for the purpose of providing a resource for others to do research. Since the intent of the archive is to create a repository of information for other investigators to conduct research as defined by 45 CFR §46, the creation of such an archive WOULD constitute research under 45 CFR §46.

**Example:** Open ended interviews are conducted with surviving Negro League Baseball players in order to create an archive for future research. The creation of such an archive would constitute research under 45 CFR §46 since the intent is to collect data for future research.

Investigators are advised to consult with the IRB Office regarding the determination about whether their oral history project or activity requires IRB review.

**IMPORTANT NOTE REGARDING PUBLICATION OF RESULTS:** IRB review of the research protocol is often a required condition for publication of research results by many scholarly journals. Accordingly, many publishers require that a determination that the protocol is NOT subject to IRB review be made by the IRB itself, and not by the principal investigator. If the principal investigator is contemplating publication of results from oral history activities, he/she should submit the protocol to the IRB for determination of the need for IRB review.

**Applicable Regulations:**

45 CFR Part 46, including §§ 46.102(d); & .102(f).
38 CFR Part 16, including §§ 16.102(d); & .102(f).
85 GENETIC STUDIES

POLICY:

Genetic studies may involve various kinds of risks for Human Subjects and their relatives, including potential medical, psychological and economic consequences. Privacy interests of subjects also must be carefully considered in the review of genetic studies. Genetic materials collected and stored by Researchers working under the Emory FWA should be Anonymized whenever feasible under the protocol.

PROCEDURES:

Preference for Anonymized Information:

Genetic Research studies may create special risks to Human Subjects and their relatives. These involve medical, psychosocial, and economic risks, such as the possible loss of privacy, insurability, and employability, change in immigration status, limits on educational options, and creation of social stigma. Knowledge of one's genetic make-up may also affect one's knowledge of the disease risk status of family members.

The ability to identify subjects whose data is included in a genetic study is an issue of particular concern for the Emory IRB. Consequently, whenever feasible under the protocol, genetic materials collected and/or stored for research purposes should be Anonymized such that the identity of the individual who provided the specimen may not be ascertained in the future.

Items to be Addressed in All Protocols for Genetic Studies:

Protocols for genetic studies should provide the following information:

- Specific purpose of the genetic analysis;
- Particular genetic information that will be acquired;
- Kinds of biological specimens on which the genetic analysis will be performed;
- Whether specimens be stored, and if so where; for how long; for what purposes; with what associated information; and by whom and how will access and disposition be controlled.
- Whether the genetic information will be linkable in any way to the subject, and if so, where the master list linking code to subject will be stored and how will it be safeguarded; and what identifiers will be kept.
- Any potential consequences of the genetic information to insurability, employability or social esteem of the subject;
How, if at all, the genetic information will be transmitted to the subject and whether the subject will be given the options to know, or not to know, the results of the genetic analysis, and how that decision will be recorded. Specifically:

Whether subjects or family members will be given the choice as to whether or not to receive study information, and/or will research findings be provided to the subject’s healthcare provider for clinical use.

Whether family members will receive information regarding the research; at what point in the research such information will be received; the meaning and implications of the information (e.g., diagnostic, predictive, etc.); and how interim or inconclusive results will be handled.

Any practical limitations on the subject's right to withdraw from the Research, withdraw data, and/or withdraw DNA. Specifically:

How will data and samples be handled if: (a) a subject wishes to withdraw from a genetic study after it has begun; (b) if a subject wishes to withdraw after the study has been completed; or (c) if the researchers wishes to use the data/samples for different research purposes or transfer them to other researchers.

Whether the subject may participate in the treatment portion of a study while refusing to undergo genetic testing otherwise required by the protocol;

If Children are involved in the Research, whether they will benefit directly from participating in the project;

If extended family members are involved in the Research: (a) how they will be contacted and recruited in a way that does not unduly influence or coerce them to participate; (b) whether there are confidentiality issues involved (e.g., extended family members may not know an individual has a certain condition) and, if so, how they will be handled; and (c) what measures will be taken to minimize family pressure on children in the extended family to participate.

Provisions, if any, for genetic counseling.

**Human Subjects Research Determination:** Upon review of the protocol, the IRB will determine whether or not the genetic material/information can be identified with the individuals providing the specimens and whether the specimens were collected **retrospectively** or will be collected **prospectively**. See the P&Ps entitled *Research Involving Coded Private Information or Biological Specimens* and *Human Subjects Research Determination*.

**Risk Level:** Although genetic studies may be limited to a collection of family histories or blood draws, the IRB will not necessarily consider them to be **Minimal Risk**. The degree to which the information collected can be linked back to the individual providing the specimen will be a significant factor in the determination of risk.
Genetic Material to be Transferred to Research Subjects: For those protocols that involve the transfer of recombinant DNA to subjects, review by the University’s Institutional Health and Biosafety Committee and, in some cases, the NIH Recombinant DNA Advisory Committee (RAC) may be required. See the P&P entitled Emory IRB Coordination with Other University Compliance Entities.

See also the P&P entitled: Research Involving Coded Private Information or Biological Specimens (Coded and Private Information) and Collection Processing and/or Banking of Human Research Subjects Specimens.

Applicable Regulations:
45 CFR §46.102(d)
45 CFR §46.012(f)
86 COLLECTION, PROCESSING AND/OR BANKING OF HUMAN RESEARCH SUBJECTS
SPECIMENS

POLICY:

Any proposed Research that involves human tissue, blood, genetic material and data shall be reviewed by the Emory IRB to ensure that the Research and repository of these materials will operate in accordance with applicable HHS Regulations and HIPAA privacy and security regulations. The Emory IRB is not responsible for the oversight of specimens and/or data collected and stored as part of routine clinical care or hospital procedures.

PROCEDURES:

Applicability of HHS Regulations: The Emory IRB will review Research involving human tissue, blood, genetic material and data to determine if it constitutes Human Subjects Research and is therefore subject to HHS Regulations. Results of the review shall be documented in the IRB meeting minutes or in appropriate review documentation. See also the P&Ps entitled Human Subjects Research Determination, Genetic Studies, and Coded and Private Information.

Applicability of Other Regulatory Requirements: The Emory IRB also will review Research involving human tissue, blood, genetic material and data to determine if other Federal, state or local regulatory requirements apply in view of the nature of the Research and the source of the funding. Applicable state, local and Federal regulations may apply in addition to, or in lieu of, HHS Regulations. Results of the review shall be documented in the IRB meeting minutes or in appropriate review documentation. The Emory IRB shall consult the Office of General Counsel with regard to determining state and local regulatory requirements.

Review of Consent Documents:

The consent/authorization document for the donation of samples for possible future Research use should contain the following information:

Separate HIPAA authorization language within the main informed consent/authorization document for the banking and future research, if optional and if HIPAA applies; alternatively, a separate informed consent/HIPAA authorization document may be used. The description of the future Research purposes must provide reasonable notice to the individual that would cause him/her to expect that his/her PHI will be used or disclosed for the described future Research purposes. (See the P&P entitled HIPAA for more information on Compound Authorizations.)

If the banking is optional and described within the main consent/authorization form: A separate place for the subject to indicate that s/he has provided his/her consent and HIPAA authorization to the storage and genetic testing (if applicable) of the samples;

A statement as to whether or not there will be identifying information on the stored samples.
A statement that the samples may be used for possible future Research, including the area(s) of Research for which they will be used, if known;

If applicable: A statement that the Research subject does not have to agree to the donation of the samples in order to participate in any specific, current known Research project in which the subject has been asked to participate and for which the sample will be used;

If the samples are being donated, then the consent document should contain a statement to the effect that the subject has voluntarily donated the samples to Emory University; that Emory University will have full control over any further use and disposal of the samples; and that the subject will not have any rights in the samples or any profits or products derived from the samples. If the samples are not donated, then a statement should be included that describes the rights, if any, the subject has with regard to the samples and/or to profits made from products derived from his/her samples.

A statement regarding who other than the PI will have access to the samples, and with what identifiers, and whether the PI may transfer or dispose of the samples;

A separate sign-off requesting permission to re-contact the Research subject if the PI anticipates a need to verify information;

If samples will retain any codes linkable to the donor: An individual name and number to contact should a Research subject wish to have his/her samples destroyed and withdrawn from the future study, along with an explanation that out of respect for the subject, the University will honor such a request to the extent possible even in cases in which the samples are donated and the subject has no further rights in the samples.

The informed consent document for any primary, known Research project to be conducted using the sample at the time that the sample is received should contain any required elements of informed consent and appropriate additional elements of informed consent (see the P&P entitled Informed Consent Policy), as well as the following information:

If applicable: A statement that the subject may participate in the Research without the necessity for donating a sample for possible future Research use;

If applicable (verify plans in protocol for Sponsored multicenter studies): A statement that if the subject has not signed a separate consent donating any sample for possible future Research use, then the sample will be destroyed at the end of the Research project in which the subject is participating;

If a Certificate of Confidentiality is appropriate, the Emory IRB will recommend that the PI obtain a Certificate of Confidentiality, and will verify receipt of that Certificate of Confidentiality, and that the protections afforded by this Certificate are described in the informed consent documents.
**Specimens/Data Sent to Outside Repository:** If a PI plans to send any specimens/data to an outside repository for storage, AND the specimens/data can be linked back to a Research subject, the Emory IRB may request one or more of the following:

- The identification of the outside repository and a copy of its IRB approval;
- An external “Data Use Agreement” between the outside repository and the PI; and
- That a **Certificate of Confidentiality** be obtained by the PI to assure Research subject confidentiality if there is not an IRB overseeing the outside repository or when genetic information or tissue samples are involved.

**VA Policy on Banking of Human Subjects’ Specimens:** It is the policy of the VA that human biological specimens and their linked clinical data collected as part of Research projects conducted by VA investigators in VA facilities or approved off-site location, are maintained at VA approved tissue banks. This policy applies regardless of whether the Research study is funded or unfunded, and regardless of the source of funding, if any.

The following defined terms will be used for the purposes of this portion of this policy:

- **Human Biological Specimens:** Any materials derived from Human Subjects, such as blood, urine, tissues, organs, hair, nail clippings, or any other cells or fluids, whether collected for research purposes or as residual specimens from diagnostic, therapeutic or surgical procedures.

- **Banked Specimens:** Those specimens collected and stored for future research programs. They must be banked at a VA-approved or VA-sponsored tissue bank.

- **Non-Banked Specimens:** Specimens that are used only for the specific purposes described in a protocol and destroyed either when the specific use is complete or at the end of the protocol.

- **VA-Sponsored Tissue Bank:** A tissue repository or storage facility at a VA storage facility or approved off-site location that operates in accordance with VA regulations. It contains Human Biological Specimens collected under VA-approved Research protocols that are under both VA ownership and VA control.

- **VA-Approved Tissue Bank:** A tissue repository or storage facility located at a non-VA facility which has the appropriate approval from the Chief Research and Development Officer of the VA. It must meet safeguards similar to those of the VA-Sponsored Tissue Bank.

Research protocols requiring RDC review and approval and Emory IRB approval shall be reviewed in accordance with the P&P entitled Human Subjects Research at the Atlanta Veterans Affairs Medical Center (AVAMC)/Atlanta Research & Educational Foundation (AREF). In general, approval should first be obtained from the Emory IRB before being submitted for review/approval by the RDC.
New *Research* protocols submitted to the RDC should include a plan for the collection, processing, disposition and/or banking of *Human Biological Specimens*. Established *Research* protocols must provide such a plan at the time of continuing review.

The RDC will review the informed consent documents to verify that the requirements detailed in VHA Handbook 1200.5 are met, and that the informed consent documents clearly state:

- Whether the specimen will be used for future *Research*;
- That the subject will be allowed to choose how the specimen will be used;
- Whether *Research* results of re-use of the specimen will be conveyed to the subject;
- Whether the subject will be re-contacted after the original study is completed; and
- That the specimen and all links to the clinical data will be destroyed at the subject’s request.

If specimens are to be sent to a non-VA institution for analysis, the following conditions must be met:

- If the specimens are *Non-Banked Specimens*, then once the specific analyses are completed, the remainder of the specimens must be destroyed or returned to the VA for destruction. Destruction must be certified by the non-VA institution in writing.

- If the specimens are *Banked Specimens*, there must be a written agreement between the VA PI and non-VA institution specifying the analysis/use as defined in the protocol. Once the specific analyses are completed, the remainder of the specimens must be destroyed or returned to the VA for destruction. Destruction must be certified by the non-VA institution in writing.

  The PI storing the *Banked Specimens* must maintain a copy of the original consent and the protocol under which each specimen was obtained, and a record of the use of the specimen.

Linking of data generated by the specimens and the clinical data should occur within the VA and by VA investigators whenever possible. If this is not possible, the minimal amount of clinical data necessary to perform the analysis should be shared with those performing the analysis; such clinical data should not contain any unique identifiers.

Records for all new tissue banks within the VA shall be maintained by the Associate Chief of Staff for Research for the VA. The PI is responsible for reporting any tissue-banking activities to the Associate Chief of Staff for Research for the VA and the RDC.

Failure to comply with this policy could result in immediate withdrawal of VA funding for the program in question and/or suspension of the program.

**Applicable regulations:**
45 CFR §46
45 CFR §46.101(b)(4)
45 CFR §46.110(f)
45 CFR §46.116
45 CFR §164
Public Health Service Act §301(d), 42 U.S.C. §241(d)

_P&Ps Other regulatory agencies CLEAN.docx - Testing_
87 RESEARCH INVOLVING CODED PRIVATE INFORMATION OR BIOLOGICAL SPECIMENS

POLICY:

Any proposed Research that involves Coded Private Information or biological specimens shall be reviewed by the Emory IRB to determine whether the Research is or is not Research involving Human Subjects as defined under HHS Regulations for the protection of Human Subjects (45 CFR §46).

Under certain conditions, research involving only Coded Private Information or biological specimens is not Human Subjects Research. Such a determination shall be made based on the OHRP guidance document entitled Guidance on Research Involving Coded Private Information or Biological Specimens (October 16, 2008) at www.hhs.gov/ohrp/humansubjects/guidance/cdebiol.htm (hereinafter “OHRP Guidance Document”).

PROCEDURES:

The Emory IRB will review the research involving Coded Private Information or biological specimens to determine whether or not the research is Human Subjects Research as defined under HHS Regulations.

Use of Private Information Constituting Human Subjects Research: Obtaining Private information that is individually identifiable (i.e., the identity of the subject is or may readily be ascertained by the investigator or associated with the information) constitutes research involving Human Subjects.

Use of Private Information that MAY NOT Constitute Human Subjects Research:

In accordance with the OHRP Guidance Document, research will not be considered to be Human Subjects Research if the following conditions are met:

The private information or specimens were not collected specifically for the currently proposed research project through an interaction or intervention with living individuals; and

The investigator(s) cannot readily ascertain the identity of the individual(s) to whom the coded private information or specimens pertain because, for example:

The key to decipher the code is destroyed before the research begins;

The investigators and the holder of the key enter into an agreement prohibiting the release of the key to the investigators under any circumstances, until the individuals are deceased (note that the HHS Regulations do not require the IRB to review and approve this agreement);
There are IRB-approved written policies and operating procedures for a repository or data management center that prohibit the release of the key to the investigators under any circumstances, until the individuals are deceased; or

There are other legal requirements prohibiting the release of the key to the investigators, until the individuals are deceased.

Results of the review shall be documented in the IRB meeting minutes or in appropriate review documentation.

Research Not Involving Human Subjects versus Exempt Human Subjects Research:

Research involving Private Information or biological specimens is distinct from Human Subjects Research that is Exempt from the requirements of HHS Regulations. Exempt Research involves Human Subjects Research as defined in 45 CFR §46, but falls under one or more of the exemptions provided under 45 CFR §46.101(b). See the P&P entitled Exempt Research.

Research Involving Coded Private Information or Biological Specimens subject to FDA Regulations:

In some cases, HHS conducted or supported research involving Private Information or biological specimens may be subject to FDA Regulations. The FDA regulatory definitions of Human Subject (21 CFR 50.3(g), 21 CFR 56.102(e)) and Subject (21 CFR 312.3(b), 21 CFR 812.3(p)) differ from the definition of Human Subject under HHS Regulations at 45 CFR 46.102(f).

The OHRP Guidance Document does not apply to research regulated by the FDA involving coded private information or specimens, and guidance on that research should be obtained directly from the FDA.

Comparison with the HIPAA Privacy Rule:

The HIPAA Privacy Rule (45 CFR §160 and subparts A and E of §164) permits the Covered Entity to determine that Health Information is De-identified even if the Health Information has been assigned, and retains, a code or other means of record identification, provided that:

The code is not derived from or related to the information about the individual (see Note, below);

The code could not be translated to identify the individual; and

The Covered Entity under the HIPAA Regulations does not use or disclose the code for other purposes or disclose the mechanism for re-identification (see HHS Guidance entitled Institutional Review Boards and the HIPAA Privacy Rule, page 8, Q and A #3, at http://privacyruleandresearch.nih.gov/pdf/IRB_Factsheet.pdf).

Note – Differences between HIPAA Privacy Rule and HHS Regulations:
There are important differences between the **HIPAA Privacy Rule** and **HHS Regulations** regarding research involving **Coded Information** and Biological Specimens.

In contrast with the **HHS Regulations** for the protection of **Human Subjects** (45 CFR §46.102(f)), a key to the coded information may be retained without violating the **HIPAA Privacy Rule**; however, possession of the key by the investigator(s) will cause research involving **Coded Information** to constitute **Human Subjects Research** under 45 CFR Part 46 and will therefore be subject to all applicable **Human Subjects** protections.

Also, under **HHS Regulations** for the protection of **Human Subjects** (45 CFR §46.102(f)), information that is linked with a code derived from identifying information or related to information about the individual is **not** considered to be individually identifiable if the investigators cannot readily ascertain the identity of the individual(s) to whom the coded private information or specimen pertains.

For purposes of **HIPAA Privacy Rule** compliance, however, a **HIPAA Waiver of Authorization** is still required for research involving **coded information** even if the research does **not** constitute **Human Subjects Research** under **HHS Regulations** IF the code is “derived from or related to the information about the individual.”

**Applicable regulations:**

45 CFR §46.101(b)
45 CFR §46.102(d)
45 CFR §46.102(f)
45 CFR §160 and subparts A and E of §164
88 DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

POLICY:

Research conducted by or at Emory University that is conducted or supported by the Department of Energy (DOE) requires compliance with additional regulations. All research conducted at DOE institutions, supported with DOE funds, or performed by DOE employees, including research that is classified and proprietary, whether done domestically or in an international environment, must comply with all federal regulations and DOE requirements that address the protection of human subjects. These regulations may apply even when a project does not meet the definition of human subjects research as defined in 45 CFR 46.

PROCEDURES:

Even if the IRB does not view a project as meeting the literal definition of human subjects research as defined in 45 CFR Part 46, DOE requires initial review by the IRB of the application and supporting materials to determine whether the individuals included in the research will be properly informed and protected. Adherence to each specific requirement of 45 CFR Part 46 is not required in such a case, but DOE does require that:

- An application and supporting materials be submitted to the IRB;
- The Chair decide the level of review;
- During the review, the IRB assess risks associated with the research and whether the individuals to be included in such research will be properly informed and protected. SMEs should be used, as needed, in assessing risks and in determining whether risks have been mitigated to the extent practicable (to minimal risk).
- After the review, the Chair send a letter to the PI indicating that the project has been reviewed in accordance with DOE expectations and will be monitored and tracked by the IRB, which means that the PI will:
  - Implement any IRB recommendations before the project begins;
  - Notify the IRB of any proposed changes to the protocol in the future and ensure IRB review and authorization to proceed before implementing these changes;
  - Provide an annual update to the IRB; and
  - Follow the notification and reporting requirements in DOE O 443.1B for reporting adverse events, annual update of the DOE HSRD, etc.

Research studies supported by the Department of Energy include both physical procedures by which data are gathered (for example, venipuncture) and manipulations of the subject or the subject’s environment that are performed for research purposes. Generalizable studies in human environments (e.g., occupied homes and offices, classrooms, and transit centers like subway systems and airports) include studies that use tracer chemicals, particles, and/or other materials, such as perfluorocarbons, to characterize airflow.

Generalizable should be viewed in terms of contribution to knowledge within the specific field of study. Generalizable studies also include studies in occupied homes and/or offices that:
• Manipulate the environment to achieve research aims, e.g., increasing humidity and/or reducing influx of outside air through new energy-saving ventilation systems.
• Test new materials (e.g., sequentially changing the filter materials in the HVAC system while monitoring the effects on air quality and energy use).
• Involve collecting information on occupants’ views of appliances, materials, or devices installed in their homes or their energy saving behaviors through surveys and focus groups. Some surveys may be online surveys administered through providers such as Amazon Mechanical Turk and Survey Monkey.

Protection of Personally Identifiable Information (PII): Researchers are required to follow DOE requirements for the protection of PII by completing and complying with the requirements of the “Checklist for IRBs to Use in Verifying That HS Research Protocols Are in Compliance with DOE Requirements.” In order to comply with this checklist, studies under the Department of Energy regulations should provide the following information in the study protocol:

  o Process to ensure the privacy of PII;
  o Releasing PII only under a procedure approved by the responsible IRB(s) and DOE, where required;
  o Using PII only for purposes of the DOE-approved research and/or EEOICPA;
  o Handling and marking documents containing PII as “containing PII” or “containing PHI”;
  o Establishing reasonable administrative, technical, and physical safeguards to prevent unauthorized use or disclosure of PII;
  o Making no further use or disclosure of the PII except when approved by the responsible IRB(s) and DOE, where applicable, and then only:
    • In an emergency affecting the health or safety of any individual;
    • For use in another research project under these same conditions and with DOE written authorization;
    • For disclosure to a person authorized by the DOE program office for the purpose of an audit related to the project; or
    • When required by law.
  o Protecting PII data stored on removable media (CD, DVD, USB Flash Drives, etc.) using encryption products that are Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) 140-2 certified;
  o Using FIPS 140-2 certified encryption that meet the current DOE password requirements cited in DOE Guide 205.3-1;
  o Shipping removable media containing PII, as required, by express overnight service with signature and tracking capability, and shipping hard copy documents double wrapped via express overnight service;
  o Encrypting data files containing PII that are being sent by e-mail with FIPS 140-2 certified encryption products;
  o Sending passwords that are used to encrypt data files containing PII separately from the encrypted data file, i.e. separate e-mail, telephone call, separate letter;
  o Using FIPS 140-2 certified encryption methods for websites established for the submission of information that includes PII;
  o Using two-factor authentication for logon access control for remote access to systems and databases that contain PII. (Two-factor authentication is contained in the National
In addition to other reporting requirements, the PI must:

- Report the loss or suspected loss of PII immediately upon discovery (within two business days) to:
  - 1) the DOE Project Officer; and
  - 2) the applicable IRBs.
- Promptly (within 30 days) report the following to the Human Subject Research Program Manager:
  - Any significant adverse events, unanticipated risks; and complaints about the research, with a description of any corrective actions taken or to be taken.
  - Any suspension or termination of IRB approval of research.
  - Any significant non-compliance with HRPP procedures or other requirements.

**Applicable regulations:**

10 CFR §745  
DOE O 443.1B, Protection of Human Research Subjects  
[http://humansubjects.energy.gov/FAQ/DOEexpectations.htm](http://humansubjects.energy.gov/FAQ/DOEexpectations.htm)
DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE

POLICY:

Research conducted by or at Emory University that is conducted or supported by the Department of Justice (DOJ) requires compliance with additional regulations. The National Institute of Justice (NIJ) and recipients of its funds are required to comply with Department of Justice regulations at 28 CFR Part 46 (Protection of Human Subjects). If IRB approval is required for a project, applicants must submit a copy of the IRB’s approval as well as supporting documentation concerning the IRB’s institutional affiliation, necessary assurances, etc., to NIJ prior to the initiation of any research activities that are not exempt from the requirements of 28 CFR Part 46.

PROCEDURES:

Research conducted within the Bureau of Prisons must have an adequate research design and contribute to the advancement of knowledge about corrections. The Researcher must assume responsibility for actions of any person engaged to participate in the research project as an associate, assistant, or subcontractor to the Researcher, as required in 28 CFR 512.

Research requirements: The Organization, IRB and Researchers and Research Staff must follow the requirements of 28 CFR 512, including:

- The project must not involve medical experimentation, cosmetic research, or pharmaceutical testing;
- The research design must be compatible with both the operation of prison facilities and protection of human participants. The Researcher must observe the rules of the institution or office in which the research is conducted;
- Any Researcher who is a non-employee of the Bureau must sign a statement in which the Researcher agrees to adhere to the requirements of 28 CFR 512;

All research proposals will be reviewed by the Bureau Research Review Board. the Researcher must have academic preparation or experience in the area of study of the proposed research. When submitting a research protocol, the applicant must provide the following information:

A summary statement, which includes:
- Names and current affiliations of the Researchers;
- Title of the study;
- Purpose of the study;
- Location of the study;
- Methods to be employed;
- Anticipated results;
- Duration of the study;
- Number of participants (staff or inmates) required and amount of time required from each;
- Indication of risk or discomfort involved as a result of participation.

A comprehensive statement, which includes:
• Review of related literature;
• Detailed description of the research method;
• Significance of anticipated results and their contribution to the advancement of knowledge;
• Specific resources required from the Bureau of Prisons;
• Description of all possible risks, discomforts, and benefits to individual participants or a class of participants, and a discussion of the likelihood that the risks and discomforts will actually occur and description of steps taken to minimize any risks;
• Description of physical or administrative procedures to be followed ensure the security of any individually identifiable data that are being collected for the study and to destroy research records or remove individual identifiers from those records when the research has been completed;
• Description of any anticipated effects of the research study on organizational programs and operations;
• Relevant research materials such as vitae, endorsements, sample consent statements, questionnaires, and interview schedules.

A statement regarding assurances and certification required by federal regulations, if applicable.

NOTE: For research conducted within the Bureau of Prisons, the implementation of Bureau programmatic or operational initiatives made through pilot projects is not considered to be research.

IRB Responsibilities: The IRB should ensure that studies funded or conducted by the Department of Justice fulfill additional requirements. These requirements include:
  • That the selection of participants must be equitable;
  • That incentives may not be offered to help persuade inmate participants to participate. However, soft drinks and snacks to be consumed at the test setting may be offered
  • That reasonable accommodations such as nominal monetary recompense for time and effort may be offered to non-confined research participants who are both:
    o No longer in Bureau of Prisons custody;
    o Participating in authorized research being conducted by Bureau employees or contractors.

Informed consent requirements: For research studies funded by the National Institute of Justice, the informed consent form should additional element. Those elements include:
  • The name(s) of the funding agency(ies);
  • A statement describing the extent to which confidentiality of records identifying the subject will be maintained.
  • For studies sponsored by NIJ the subject should be informed that private, identifiable information will be kept confidential and will only be used for research and statistical purposes. If, due to sample size or some unique feature, the identity of the individual cannot be maintained, the participants need to be explicitly notified. If the Researcher intends to disclose any information, the participant needs to be explicitly informed what information would be
disclosed, under what circumstances, and to whom. The participant must be informed of any risks that might result from this disclosure and must explicitly provide written consent prior to participating in the research;

- Under a privacy certificate, Researchers and Research Staff do not have to report child abuse unless the participant signs another consent document to allow child abuse reporting;
- Identification of the Researchers;
- Anticipated uses of the results of the research;
- A statement that participation is completely voluntary and that the participant may withdraw consent and end participation in the project at any time without penalty or prejudice (the inmate will be returned to regular assignment or activity by staff as soon as practicable);
- A statement regarding the confidentiality of the research information and exceptions to any guarantees of confidentiality required by federal or state law. For example, a Researcher may not guarantee confidentiality when the participant indicates intent to commit future criminal conduct or harm himself or herself or someone else, or, if the participant is an inmate, indicates intent to leave the facility without authorization;
- A statement that participation in the research project will have no effect on the inmate participant’s release date or parole eligibility.

Additional requirements:
For National Institute of Justice-funded research

- A copy of all data must be de-identified and sent to the National Archive of Criminal Justice Data, including copies of the informed consent document, data collection instruments, surveys, or other relevant research materials.
- All projects are required to have a privacy certificate approved by the NIJ human subjects’ protection officer.
- All Researchers and Research Staff are required to sign employee confidentiality statements, which are maintained by the responsible Researcher.

For research conducted with the Bureau of Prisons, the study team should ensure the fulfillment of the following items:

- At least once a year, the Researcher must provide the Chief, Office of Research and Evaluation, with a report on the progress of the research;
- At least 12 working days before any report of findings is to be released, the Researcher must distribute one copy of the report to each of the following: the chairperson of the Bureau Research Review Board, the regional director, and the warden of each institution that provided data or assistance. The Researcher must include an abstract in the report of findings;
- In any publication of results, the Researcher must acknowledge the Bureau’s participation in the research project;
- The Researcher must expressly disclaim approval or endorsement of the published material as an expression of the policies or views of the Bureau;
- Prior to submitting for publication the results of a research project conducted under this subpart, the Researcher must provide two copies of the material, for
informational purposes only, to the Chief, Office of Research and Evaluation, Central Office, Bureau of Prisons.

- Except for computerized data records maintained at an official DOJ site, records that contain non-disclosable information directly traceable to a specific person may not be stored in, or introduced into, an electronic retrieval system.

- If the Researcher is conducting a study of special interest to the Office of Research and Evaluation (ORE) but the study is not a joint project involving ORE, the Researcher may be asked to provide ORE with the computerized research data, not identifiable to individual participants, accompanied by detailed documentation. These arrangements must be negotiated prior to the beginning of the data collection phase of the project.

**Applicable regulations:**

28 CFR § 512.
28 CFR § 46.
28 CFR § 22.

90  ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

POLICY:

Research conducted or supported by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) must be compliant with 40 CFR 26, and it sets forth procedures designed to help assure such compliance.

PROCEDURES:

Research studies conducted or supported by the EPA require the submission of IRB determinations and approval to the EPA human subjects’ research review official for final review and approval before the research can begin.

Specific requirements for vulnerable populations: the IRB will not approve research conducted or supported by the EPA, or intended for submission to the EPA, that intends to intentionally expose human subjects who are pregnant women (and therefore their fetuses), nursing women, or children to any substance.

Research studies conducted or supported by the EPA require application of 40 CFR 26 Subparts C and D to provide additional protections to pregnant women and children as participants in observational research, i.e., research that does not involve intentional exposure to any substance.

Research not conducted or supported by any federal agency that has regulations for protecting human research participants and for which the intention of the research is submission to the EPA, the EPA regulations protecting human research participants apply, including:

EPA extends the provisions of the 40 CFR 26 to human research involving the intentional exposure of non-pregnant, non-nursing adults to substances;

EPA prohibits the intentional exposure of pregnant women, nursing women, or children to any substance.

EPA-funded studies will adapt regulations of the Department of Health and Human Services providing additional protections beyond those of the Common Rule to pregnant women, fetuses and children as subjects in EPA observational research—i.e., research that does not involve intentional exposure to any substance.

The IRB may review and approve observational research involving children that does not involve greater than minimal risk only if the IRB finds that adequate provisions are made for soliciting the assent of the children and the permission of their parents or guardians, as set forth in 26.406. Research involving greater than minimal risk to the subjects can be approved by IRBs only when justified by direct benefits to the subjects.

The IRB may review and approve observational research involving children that involves greater than minimal risk but presenting the prospect of direct benefit to the individual participants if the IRB finds and documents that:
The intervention or procedure holds out the prospect of direct benefit to the individual participant or is likely to contribute to the participant's well-being;

The risk is justified by the anticipated benefit to the participants;

The relation of the anticipated benefit to the risk is at least as favorable to the participants as that presented by available alternative approaches;

Adequate provisions are made for soliciting the assent of the children and permission of their parents or guardians, as set forth in 26.406.

**Applicable regulations:**

45 CFR §26
EPA Order 1000.17 Change A1
91 GLOSSARY

Abused: See Adult Abuse and/or Child Abuse.

Adult Abuse: The exploitation, neglect and/or, willful infliction of physical pain, physical injury, Adult Sexual Abuse, mental anguish, unreasonable confinement, or the willful deprivation of essential services, to a Disabled Adult or Elder Person.

“Disabled Adult” means a person 18 years of age or older who not a resident of a Long-Term Care Facility, as defined in OCGA 31-8-4, but who is mentally or physically incapacitated or has Alzheimer’s Disease or Dementia.

“Elder Person” means a person 65 years of age or older.

“Exploitation” means the illegal or improper use of a Disabled Adult or Elder Person or that person’s resources through undue influence, coercion, harassment, duress, deception, false representation, false pretense, or other similar means for one’s own or another’s profit or advantage.

“Long-term Care Facility” means any skilled nursing home, intermediate care home, assisted living community, personal care home, or community living arrangement now or hereafter subject to regulation and licensure by the State of Georgia.

“Long-Term Care Facility Resident or Former Resident” means any person receiving treatment or care, or who previously received treatment or care, in a Long-Term Care Facility.

“Neglect” means the absence or omission of essential services to the degree that it harms or threatens with harm the physical or emotional health of a Disabled Adult or Elder Person.

“Adult Sexual Abuse” means the coercion for the purpose of self-gratification by a guardian or other person supervising the welfare or having immediate charge, control, or custody of a Disabled Adult or Elder Person to engage in any of the following conduct: (a) Lewd exhibition of the genitals or pubic area of any person; (b) Flagellation or torture by or upon a person who is unclothed or partially unclothed; (c) Condition of being fettered, bound, or otherwise physically restrained on the part of a person who is unclothed or partially clothed unless physical restraint is medically indicated; (d) Physical contact in an act of sexual stimulation or gratification with any person’s unclothed genitals, pubic area, or buttocks or with a female’s nude breasts; (e) Defecation or urination for the purpose of sexual stimulation of the viewer; or (f) Penetration of the vagina or rectum by any object except when done as part of a recognized medical or nursing procedure.

Adult: A person, or persons, who has/have attained the legal age of majority under the applicable law of the jurisdiction in which the Research will be conducted.
Adverse Event: any untoward physical or psychological occurrence in a human subject participating in research. Any Adverse Event can be an unfavorable or unintended event including abnormal laboratory finding, symptom or disease associated with the research or the use of a medical investigational test article. An Adverse Event does not necessarily have to have a causal relationship with the research or any risk associated with the research or the research intervention, or the assessment.

Adverse Experience: An experience or event that has a negative impact or outcome. The experience is undesirable and unintended but not necessarily unexpected and does not necessarily have a causal relationship with the treatment.

Allegation of Non-Compliance: An unproved assertion of Non-Compliance.

Anonymized Information: Information for which all potential identifiers have been removed and no key exists by which the information could be linked back to the individual who provided the specimens.

Anticipated Event: An event (including an experience or event associated with a drug or device) that negatively affects the rights, safety or welfare of subjects and is described as such in the materials describing risks associated with the study.

Anticipated Problem: An Adverse Experience or event (including an experience or event associated with a drug or device) that negatively affects the rights, safety or welfare of subjects and that is described as such in the materials describing risks associated with the study.

Approval in Principle: There are two circumstances in which the IRB may grant approval required by a sponsoring agency without having reviewed all of the study procedures and consent documents. One is if the study procedures are to be developed during the course of the Research, but Human Subjects approval is required by the sponsoring agency. The other is if the involvement of Human Subjects depends on the outcomes of work with animal subjects. The IRB may then grant Approval in Principle without having reviewed the as yet undeveloped recruitment, consent and intervention materials. However, if the proposal is funded, the PI must submit such materials for approval at least 60 days before recruiting Human Subjects into the study or into any pilot studies or pre-tests. Approval in Principle is granted to satisfy sponsoring agency requirements or to allow investigators to have access to funding to begin aspects of the project that do not involve Human Subjects.

Approval Pending: The status of a research protocol that has been submitted and reviewed by the IRB and is missing minor supporting documentation or simple changes to informed consent documents are necessary for approval. The PI may not begin any activities under the Research protocol until the IRB Chair, Vice Chair or a designated reviewer accepts the information/changes on behalf of the Emory IRB.

Approval: The determination by the IRB that the research protocol has been reviewed and may be conducted within the constraints set forth by the IRB and by other institutional and Federal requirements. [21 CFR § 56.102(m), 45 CFR § 46.102(h)]

Approved Research/Approved: Research protocols that have been reviewed by the IRB and that may be conducted as clinical investigations within the constraints set forth by the IRB.
and by other institutional and Federal requirements [21 CFR § 56.102(m), 45 CFR § 46.102(h)]

**Assent:** A Child’s affirmative agreement to participate in Research. Failure to object, absent affirmative agreement, shall not be construed as Assent. [45 CFR § 46.402(b)].

**Assistant Director:** The Assistant Director oversees the review process or research protocols and assists the Director in developing, implementing, evaluating and improving operational policies and procedures related research protocols. The Assistant Director’s is also responsible for: updating Emory FWA, Emory IRB registration and IRB Committee membership rosters; providing updates to OHRP; maintaining updated P&Ps; and ensuring agreements are in place for review of Human Subjects Research from other entities and/or deferral to other IRBs for review of Emory-related Research involving Human Subjects.

**Associated:** One of the following types of connectivity between an event or experience and interventions associated with a study:

**Definitely Associated:** Any event that meets all four of the following conditions: (a) has a reasonable temporal relationship to the intervention; (b) could not readily have been produced by the research participant’s clinical state; (c) could not readily have been due to environmental or other interventions; or (d) follows a known pattern of response to the intervention.

**Possibly Associated:** Any event that: (a) has a reasonable temporal relationship to the intervention; (b) could not readily have been produced by the research participant’s clinical state; (c) could not readily have been due to environmental or other interventions; or (d) follows a known pattern of response to the intervention.

**Probably Associated:** Any event that meets three of the following conditions: (a) has a reasonable temporal relationship to the intervention; (b) could not readily have been produced by the research participant’s clinical state; (c) could not readily have been due to environmental or other interventions; or (d) follows a known pattern of response to the intervention.

**Authorization Agreement:** With regard to any Research that falls within the jurisdiction of the Emory IRB, the Emory IRB reserves the right to defer to another appropriately constituted IRB for the review of the Research. In the event of a deferral to another IRB, the Emory IRB must enter into an Authorization Agreement with the other IRB. The Authorization Agreement must describe the Research that it covers and provide that the IRB to which the Emory IRB is deferring will provide the Emory IRB with documentation or correspondence regarding that IRB’s review of the deferred Research protocol(s), including copies of those portions of the reviewing IRB’s minutes that document that review or other action by the reviewing IRB. In a manner similar to that set forth above,
the Emory IRB may choose to accept from another appropriately constituted IRB the deferral of the review of Research. In such case, the Emory IRB and the IRB that is deferring to the Emory IRB also would enter into an Authorization Agreement as set forth above and this agreement should set forth the same information described above.

**AVAMC Memorandum of Understanding** The document that outlines the responsibilities of the AVAMC/AREF and Emory University through its Emory IRB. Emory University, AVAMC, and the AREF have documented their relationship through the AVAMC Memorandum of Understanding. The Emory IRB is subject to and agrees to abide by the terms of its FWA: Number FWA00005792 (the Emory FWA). The Emory IRB agrees to provide initial review of and oversight to AVAMC Research in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Emory FWA and per the requirements set forth in these P&Ps.

**AVAMC Research and Development Committee (RDC):** Committee operated by AVAMC that is responsible for reviewing and approving all Human Subjects Research projects that take place at the AVAMC.

**AVAMC Research Office:** AVAMC office that provides administrative support AVAMC Research and the RDC.

**AVAMC Research Compliance Office:** AVAMC office that provides compliance oversight for AVAMC Research.

**AVAMC Research:** All Human Subjects Research that is to be undertaken by or under the direction of the AVAMC or AREF, involving AVAMC patients, conducted at the AVAMC and/or carried out by AVAMC-paid PIs. All AVAMC Research must be reviewed and approved by both the Emory IRB and the RDC.

**Belmont Report:** The Belmont Report attempts to summarize the basic ethical principles identified by the National Commission for the Protection of Human Subjects of Biomedical and Behavioral Research during the course of the Commission’s deliberations in February, 1976. It is a statement of basic ethical principles and guidelines that should assist in resolving the ethical problems that surround the conduct of research with human subjects.

**Captured or Detained Personnel:** For purposes of Research subject to a DOD Addendum that incorporates requirements specific to the Department of the Navy, Captured or Detained Personnel are defined as “any person captured, detained, held or otherwise under the control of DOD personnel, including Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, Retained Persons, Lawful and Unlawful Enemy Combatants. This term does not include DOD personnel held for law enforcement purposes.

**Certificate of Confidentiality:** A certificate of confidentiality is granted by NIH to protect identifiable study data from discovery pursuant to legal process. Regardless of funding source, NIH may grant a Certificate of Confidentiality to protect information that: (a) is identifiable; (b) is for research approved by the IRB; and (c) constitutes Sensitive Information.

**Chair:** The Emory IRB Committee member whose duty it is to convene and chair IRB Committee meetings. The Chair provides day-to-day oversight and leadership for the IRB Committee. The Chair’s duties include making the ultimate decision with regard to
which research protocols require IRB review and the type of review required. The Chair will also perform Expedited Reviews or delegate such reviews to Vice Chairs or other designated reviewers who are members of the Emory IRB.

**Child abuse**: Includes Child Abuse, Child Sexual Abuse, and Child Sexual Exploitation where “Child Abuse” means: (A) Physical injury or death inflicted upon a child by a parent or caretaker thereof by other than accidental means; provided, however, that physical forms of discipline may be used as long as there is no physical injury to the child; (B) Neglect or exploitation of a child by a parent or caretaker thereof; (C) Child Sexual Abuse; or (D) Child Sexual Exploitation.

"Child Sexual Abuse" means a person's employing, using, persuading, inducing, enticing, or coercing any minor who is not that person's spouse to engage in any act which involves: (A) Sexual intercourse, including genital-genital, oral-genital, anal-genital, or oral-anal, whether between persons of the same or opposite sex; (B) Bestiality; (C) Masturbation; (D) Lewd exhibition of the genitals or pubic area of any person; (E) Flagellation or torture by or upon a person who is nude; (F) Condition of being fettered, bound, or otherwise physically restrained on the part of a person who is nude; (G) Physical contact in an act of apparent sexual stimulation or gratification with any person's clothed or unclothed genitals, pubic area, or buttocks or with a female's clothed or unclothed breasts; (H) Defecation or urination for the purpose of sexual stimulation; or (I) Penetration of the vagina or rectum by any object except when done as part of a recognized medical procedure.

Child Sexual Abuse shall not include consensual sex acts involving persons of the opposite sex when the sex acts are between minors or between a minor and an adult who is not more than five years older than the minor. This provision shall not be deemed or construed to repeal any law concerning the age or capacity to consent.

"Child Sexual Exploitation" means conduct by any person who allows, permits, encourages, or requires that child to engage in: (A) Prostitution, as defined in O.C.G.A. Section 16-6-9; or (B) Sexually explicit conduct for the purpose of producing any visual or print medium depicting such conduct, as defined in O.C.G.A. Section 16-12-100

**Child Law Enforcement Agencies**: Any Child welfare agency providing protective services, as designated by the Georgia Department of Human Resources; or, in the absence of such agency, to an appropriate police authority or district attorney.

**Child/Children**: Person(s) under the legal age for consent to treatments or procedures involved in the Research under the law of the jurisdiction in which the Research is to be conducted. [45 CFR § 46.402(a)]. [NOTE: In Georgia, generally a person who has not attained 18 years of age is considered a Child, but there are certain procedures to which a person younger than 18 years of age can consent, as discussed in Section 42 (entitled: Legally Authorized Representatives & Surrogate Consent). Researchers should consult legal counsel for the University with regard to determining the legal age of consent in jurisdictions other than Georgia.]

**CITI Training Course**: The “Collaborative IRB Training Initiative (“CITI”) Human Subjects Research Education Program” a web-based program of courses for Biomedical Researchers and
courses for Social Behavioral Researchers, each focused on a different aspect of bio-ethics and human subjects research.

**Clinical Investigation:** Any Experiment that involves a Test Article and one or more Human Subjects and that either is subject to requirements for prior submission to the FDA under Section 505(i) or 520(g) of the FDA Act, or is not subject to requirements for prior submission to the FDA under these sections of the FDA Act, but the results of which are intended to be submitted later to, or held for inspection by, the FDA as part of an application for a research or marketing permit. The term does not include Experiments that are subject to the provisions of Part 58 [of Title 21 of the CFR], regarding non-clinical laboratory studies. The terms research, clinical research, clinical study, study, and clinical investigation are synonymous for the purposes of FDA regulations. [21 CFR Section 50.3(c), 21 CFR 56.102(c)].

**Coded:** (1) identifying information (such as name or social security number) that would enable the investigator to readily ascertain the identity of the individual to whom the private information or specimens pertain has been replaced with a number, letter, symbol, or combination (i.e., the code); and (2) a key to decipher the code exists, enabling the linkage of the identifying information to the private information or specimens. Guidance on Research Involving Coded Private Information or Biological Specimens (October 16, 2008) at www.hhs.gov/ohrp/humansubjects/guidance/cdebiol.htm

**Coded Information:** Information that would enable the Investigator to readily ascertain the identity of an individual or individual’s specimen that has been replaced with a number, letter, symbol, or combination thereof. Coded information also includes a key to decipher the code, enabling linkage of the identifying information to the private information or specimens.

**Common Rule, The:** Refers to the codification of federal policy for the protection of human subjects. DHHS regulations incorporate the Common Rule as Subpart A of 45 CFR 46. The common rule is incorporated in various other parts of the Code of Federal Regulations for other federal agencies which may be involved in human subjects research.

**Compassionate Use:** The FDA’s Compassionate Use provisions allow access to Investigational Medical Devices for patients who do not meet the requirements for inclusion in the clinical investigation but for whom the treating physician believes the device may provide a benefit in treating and/or diagnosing their disease or condition. The provision is typically approved for individual patients but may be approved to treat a small group.

**Conflict of Interest (COI):** means any Significant Financial Interest Requiring Disclosure that is determined by Emory University to significantly and directly affect the design, conduct or reporting of research. See also: Financial Conflict of Interest

**Continuing Non-Compliance:** A pattern of non-compliance that indicates a lack of understanding or disregard for the regulations or institutional requirements that protect the rights and welfare of participants and others, compromises the scientific integrity of a study such that important conclusions can no longer be reached, suggests a likelihood that non-compliance will continue without intervention, or involves frequent instances of minor non-compliance. Continuing non-compliance may also include failure to respond to a request from the IRB to resolve an episode of non-compliance or a pattern of minor non-compliance.
**Continuing Review:** Except for human research studies that have been granted Exempt registration, DHHS and FDA regulations require the Emory IRB to conduct substantive and meaningful review of ongoing research at intervals appropriate to the potential risk to participants, but at least annually [45 CFR § 46.109(e) and 21 CFR § 56.109(f)]. Continuing Review is the process through which the Emory IRB meets this statutory requirement.

**CoRe (Compliance Review) team:** A designated group of the IRB Chair, Director, and qualified IRB staff and/or qualified compliance staff from the AVAMC (for VA cases only) to investigate cases of reported events (including alleged non-compliance, potential UPs, potentially serious or continuing non-compliance), suspensions, and determinations. The CoRe team triages cases to determine whether they need review at a convened meeting of the Emory IRB. The CoRe may engage the assistance of ad hoc consultants. The CoRe team also reviews Conflict of Interest management plans, which they may also refer for further review at a convened IRB meeting.

**Corrective and Preventive Action (CAPA) Plan:** A plan developed by an investigator, with or without the assistance and guidance of the IRB, following a root cause analysis into an instance of noncompliance or other problems in the conduct of human subjects research. The CAPA must include measures designed to correct the immediate problem and prevent its recurrence or the recurrence of a similar type of problem. CAPA plans are reviewed and may be modified by the IRB before being approved. Investigators are responsible for implementing CAPAs in a timely manner.

**Covered Entity:** A health plan, a health care clearinghouse or a health care provider that transmits any health information in electronic form in connection with a transaction covered by HIPAA regulations. The Emory Units that are a part of an Emory University Covered Component are considered to be Covered Entities.

**Covered Function:** Those functions of a Covered Entity the performance of which makes the entity a health plan, health care provider, or health care clearinghouse.

**Data and Safety Monitor (DSM):** An individual assigned to conduct interim monitoring of accumulating data from Research activities to assure the continuing safety of Human Subjects, relevance of the study question, appropriateness of the study, and integrity of the accumulating data. The individual should have expertise in the relevant medical, ethical, safety and scientific issues.

**Data and Safety Monitoring Board (DSMB):** A formally appointed independent group consisting of at least three (3) members assigned to conduct interim monitoring of accumulating data from research activities to assure the continuing safety of Human Subjects, relevance of the study question, appropriateness of the study, and integrity of the accumulating data. Membership should include expertise in the relevant field of study, statistics, and Research study design.

**Data and Safety Monitoring Committee (DSMC):** Another term for DSMB.

**Data and Safety Monitoring Plan (DSMP):** A DSMP describes how the Principle Investigator plans to oversee the Human Subject’s safety and welfare and how adverse events will be
characterized and reported. The intensity and frequency of monitoring should be tailored to fit the expected risk level, complexity, and size of the particular study.

**Dead Fetus:** A Fetus that does not exhibit heartbeat, spontaneous respiratory activity, spontaneous movement of voluntary muscles nor pulsation of the umbilical cord.

**Deferral:** The decision by the Emory IRB to postpone approval and table further discussion concerning a protocol until certain information/instruments are submitted for review at another convened meeting.

**Delivery:** Complete separation of the Fetus from the woman by expulsion or extraction or any other means. [45 CFR § 46.202(b)].

**Department of Defense (DOD) Addendum to the Department of Health and Human Services Federalwide Assurance (“DOD Addendum”):** The DOD Addendum is an assurance of compliance with the Belmont Report, the Nuremberg Code, the DOD Regulations at 32 CFR Part 219 (DOD Regulations Regarding Protection of Human Subjects), the HHS Regulations at 45 CFR Part 46; the FDA Regulations at 21 CFR Parts 50, 56, 3123, and 812; 10 USC Section 980 (Limitation on Use ofHumans as Experimental Subjects); and DOD Directives 3216.02, 3210.7 and 6200.2. The DOD Addendum applies to all research conducted by or at Emory University that receives support from the DOD or a DOD unit that utilizes the DOD Addendum (i.e., DOD, Navy, Marine Corps and Air Force; the Army does not use a DOD Addendum, but imposes specific requirement through the contracting process). Emory’s DOD Addendum is from the Department of the Navy (DON), and therefore includes for any DON conducted/supported research, any DON-specific applicable requirements, including the SECNA VINST 3900.39D (Nov. 6, 2006); SECNAVINST 572044B (Nov. 1, 2005); SECNAV M-5210.1 (Dec. 1, 2005); and OPNA VINST 5300.8B (Apr. 23, 1997). Research conducted/supported by other DOD units would similarly be subject to any unit-specific requirements.


**Department of Defense (DOD) Requirements:** All mandates set forth in the regulations set forth at 32 CFR Part 219; the DOD Addendum; and any DOD unit specific mandates, i.e., mandates specific to the DOD unit (Navy, Marine Corps, etc.) that is conducting or supporting the research.

**Designated Reviewer:** A member who has been designated by the Chair to perform expedited reviews on a term basis, or as needed case by case, preferably in writing. To be eligible for consideration as a Designated Reviewer, the person must be a member in good standing from Emory IRB, meet current training requirements, and have been a member in good standing of the Emory IRB or other IRB for at least six months.

**Department of Health and Human Services (HHS):** The United States government’s principal agency for protecting the health of all Americans and providing essential human services. The department includes more than 300 programs, covering a wide spectrum of activities.

**Diagnostic Medical Device:** An instrument, apparatus, implement, machine, contrivance, implant, in vitro reagent, or other similar or related article, including any component, part, or accessory, which is (1) recognized in the official National Formulary, or the United States Pharmacopeia, or any supplement to them, (2) intended for use in the
diagnosis of disease or other conditions, or in the cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of disease, in man or other animals, or (3) intended to affect the structure or any function of the body of man or other animals, and which does not achieve its primary intended purposes through chemical action within or on the body of man or other animals and which is not dependent upon being metabolized for the achievement of its primary intended purposes. [21 U.S.C. § 321(h)].

**Director:** The member of the Emory IRB who directs, manages, implements and administers policies and procedures related to research involving human subjects. The Director provides for all compliance and regulatory functions of the IRB ensuring adherence to all federal, state, and local regulations and policies governing research involving human subjects including the Belmont Report and the requirements set forth in Title 45, Part 46 of the Code of Federal Regulations

**Disability:** A substantial disruption of a person’s ability to conduct routine life activities in comparison to level of function prior to the event. [21 CFR § 312.32(a)]

**Disabled Adult:** An Adult who is subject to Adult Abuse as a result of that Adult’s mental or physical incapacity and who is in need of Protective Services.

**Disapproval/Disapprove:** Research protocols that have been reviewed by the IRB and the IRB determines that the information is so lacking or the science is inappropriate for the study to occur.

**DSM:** see Data and Safety Monitor

**DSMB:** see Data and Safety Monitoring Board

**DSMC:** see Data and Safety Monitoring Committee

**DSMP:** see Data and Safety Monitoring Plan

**Elder Person:** A person 65 years of age or older who is not a resident of a long-term care facility as defined in O.C.G.A. Title 31, Chapter 8, Article 4.

**Emancipated Minor:** A person who has not attained the legal age of majority under the applicable law of the jurisdiction in which the Research will be conducted, but who is otherwise considered to have the legal capacity of an Adult due to the person’s specific circumstances or status. For example, in Georgia a person under 18 who is married is considered to be an Emancipated Minor.

**Emergency Research:** A limited class of research activities involving human subjects who are in need of emergency medical intervention but cannot provide legally effective informed consent. [21 CFR § 50.24(a)]

**Emory-affiliated Site:** Any site owned or operated by Emory University or Emory Healthcare, as well as the AVAMC, CHOA, Grady Healthcare, and any other entity subject to Emory IRB oversight by written agreement.

**Emory IRB:** Emory University’s Institutional Review Board. The Emory IRB has been formally designated by the University to review research involving humans as subjects, to approve the initiation of and conduct periodic review of such research. [21 C.F.R. § 50.3(i)]
**Emory University Covered Component:** Any of the units that make up the Emory University Robert Woodruff Health Sciences Center including the School of Medicine, School of Nursing, School of Public Health, and Yerkes National Primate Research Center; Emory Healthcare; Emory Hospitals; Emory Student Health Services; Emory Psychological Center; University Counseling Center and Oxford College Student Health Service and Counseling Center.

**Emory University HIPAA:** Emory University’s policies and procedures that ensure compliance with the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) for all Emory University biomedical research involving humans as subjects.

**Engaged in Human Subjects Research:** An institution is considered to be engaged in Human Subjects Research whenever its employees or agents for the purposes of the Research project obtain: (1) data about the subjects of the research through Intervention or Interaction with them; or (2) Identifiable Private Information about the subjects of the Research, unless the activity falls into one or more of the exceptions listed in OHRP’s formal guidance on engagement of institutions in human subjects research.

**Enrollment:** A subject is considered to be enrolled in a study when he/she gives informed consent to participate. Accessing the identifiable information of an individual similarly counts as enrolling a subject.

**Essential Services:** Social, medical, psychiatric, or legal services necessary to safeguard the Disabled Adult’s or Elder Person’s rights and resources and to maintain the physical and mental well-being of such person. These services shall include, but not be limited to, the provision of medical care for physical and mental health needs, assistance in personal hygiene, food, clothing, adequately heated and ventilated shelter, and protection from health and safety hazards but shall not include the taking into physical custody of a Disabled Adult or Elder Person without that person’s consent.

**Ex Officio:** A non-voting consultant of the IRB whose involvement is dependent upon the office from which he/she is representing.

**Exempt Research:** Research that is not subject to regulation under 45 CFR § 46 because it falls under the narrow exceptions set forth under 45 CFR 46.101(b).

**Expeditied/Expedited Review:** A procedure through which certain kinds of research may be reviewed and approved without convening a meeting of the IRB. The FDA and OHRP regulations (21 CFR § 56.110 and 45 CFR § 46.110 respectively) permit, but do not require, an IRB to review certain categories of research through an expedited procedure if the research involves no more than minimal risk. The IRB may also use the expedited review procedure to review minor changes in previously approved research during the period covered by the original approval.

**Experiment:** Any use of a drug other than the use of a marketed (FDA approved) drug in the course of medical practice. [21 CFR 312.3(b)].

**Expiration Date:** The date on which a protocol expires. Failure on the part of the PI to submit a protocol for continuing review prior to the protocol’s expiration date shall result in expiration of the protocol and immediate termination of all research-related activities, except for limited subject safety measures, as delineated by federal regulations.
**Exploitation:** The illegal or improper use of a Disabled Adult or Elder Person or that person’s resources for another’s profit or advantage.

**External events:** Events that involve study participants who are not enrolled at a study site approved by the Emory IRB, or where the PI is not under the oversight of the Emory IRB. The PI typically receives notification of these Experiences from the Sponsor (e.g., Investigator Alert, Med Watch Reports).

**External Serious Adverse Experiences:** Adverse Experiences that involve study participants who are not enrolled at a study site approved by the Emory IRB, or where the PI is not under the oversight of the Emory IRB. The PI typically receives notification of these Experiences from the Sponsor (e.g., Investigator Alert, MedWatch Reports).

**Family Member:** Any of the following legally competent persons: spouses, parents, children (including adopted children), brothers, sisters and spouses of brothers and sisters; and any individual related by blood or affinity whose close association with a Human Subject is the equivalent of a family relationship. [21 CFR 50.3 (m)].

**FDA Regulations:** The rules set forth by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration through Title 21 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

**FDA Regulations’ Definition of Human Subject:** An individual who is or becomes a participant in Research, either as a recipient of the Test Article or as a control. A subject may be either a healthy human or a patient. [21 CFR Section 50.3(g)]. In the case of an investigational medical device, a human subject/participant also means a human on whose specimen an investigational medical device is used.

**FDA Regulations’ Definition of Institutional Review Board:** Any board, committee or other group formally designated by an institution to review, to approve the initiation of, and to conduct periodic review of, biomedical Research involving Human Subjects. The primary purpose of such review is to assure the protection of the rights and welfare of the Human Subjects. This term has the meaning as the phrase “institutional review committee as used in Section 520(g) of the FDA Act. [21 CFR Section 56.102(g)].

**Federalwide Assurance (FWA):** A FWA is an assurance of compliance with applicable federal regulations for the protection of Human Subjects in all Research conducted under the auspices of the institution holding the assurance and that is conducted or supported by any U.S. department or agency that has adopted the Common Rule (see above). An FWA is approved by OHRP, as an agency of DHHS, for federal-wide use, and therefore, other federal departments and agencies that have adopted the Common Rule may rely upon the FWA for the Human Subjects Research that they conduct or support.

**Emory FWA:** FWA 5792, held by Emory University. The Institutional Official (IO) who has signed the Emory FWA is the Vice President for Research Administration, Emory University. The Human Protections Administrator named on the Emory FWA is the Emory IRB Director. Throughout these P&Ps, any references to the Emory FWA shall include a reference to the DOD Addendum for any research conducted by or at Emory University that is conducted or supported by the DOD or a DOD component that utilizes the DOD Addendum.
Fetal Material: Material obtained from a dead Fetus after Delivery, including, but not limited to, macerated fetal material and/or cells, tissue or organs excised from a dead Fetus. [45 CFR § 46.206(a)]

Fetus: The product of conception from implantation until Delivery. [45 CFR § 46.202(c)].

Final Approval Date: When a Research protocol is granted Approval Pending, the PI must provide the IRB Committee with documentation that he/she has provided any additional information or made any changes requested by the IRB Committee. The PI may not begin any activities under the Research protocol until the IRB Chair, Vice Chair or a designated reviewer accepts the information/changes on behalf of the Emory IRB. The date on which the information/changes are accepted is the Final Approval Date, and the Emory IRB shall send a written notice that sets forth the Final Approval Date and notifies the PI that the Research protocol is now approved.

Financial Conflict of Interest: A conflict of interest that exists when a designated reviewer(s) of the University reasonably determines that a Significant Financial Interest of an Investigator will directly and significantly affect the design, conduct, or reporting of research.

Full Committee Review: Review of proposed research at a convened meeting of the IRB, at which a majority of the membership of the IRB are present, including at least one member whose primary concerns are in a nonscientific area [45 CFR § 46.109; 21 CFR § 56.108].

Full Committee: A majority of the membership of the IRB, including at least one member whose primary concerns are in a nonscientific area.

Full Review: see Full Committee review.

FWA: see Federalwide Assurance.

Generalizable Knowledge: Knowledge from which conclusions will be drawn that can be applied to populations outside of the specific study population. It adds to existing scientific literature from which others may infer relevance to policy, or a body of scientific evidence.

Genetic Information: With respect to an individual, information about (i) the individual’s Genetic Tests; (ii) the Genetic Tests of family members of the individual; (iii) the manifestation of a disease or disorder in family members of such individual; or (iv) any request for, or receipt of Genetic Services, or participation in clinical research which includes Genetic Services, by the individual or any family member of the individual. This definition includes the genetic information of a fetus carried by the individual or a family member who is a pregnant woman; and an embryo legally held by an individual or family member utilizing assisted reproductive technology. This definition excludes information about the age or sex of an individual.

Genetic Services: (1) a Genetic Test; (2) genetic counseling (including obtaining, interpreting, or assessing genetic information); or (3) genetic education.

Genetic Test: An analysis of human DNA, RNA, chromosomes, proteins, or metabolites, of the analysis detects genotypes mutations, or chromosomal changes. Genetic test does not
include an analysis of proteins of metabolites that is directly related to a manifested disease, disorder or pathological condition.

**Guardian:** An individual who is authorized under applicable State or local law to consent on behalf of a Child to general medical care, [45 CFR § 46.402(e)] or when an FDA-regulated item is involved, to consent on behalf of a Child to general medical care when general medical care includes participation in Research, or who is authorized to consent on behalf of a Child to participate in Research. [21 CFR § 50.3(g)].

**Health Information:** any information, including Genetic Information, whether oral or recorded, in any form or medium that: (1) Is created or received by a health care provider, health plan, public health authority, employer, life insurer, school or university, or health care clearinghouse; and (2) Relates to the past, present, or future physical or mental health or condition of an individual; the provision of health care to an individual; or the past, present, or future payment for the provision of health care.

**Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA):** HIPAA is the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act, the federal law passed in 1996 that provides national standards and privacy protections for health information. It allows persons to qualify immediately for comparable health insurance coverage when they change their employment relationships. HIPAA establishes standards for privacy and security, unique health identifiers, as well as standards for Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). The two main goals of HIPAA are: making health insurance more portable when persons change employers, and making the health care system more accountable for costs, trying especially to reduce waste and fraud. [45 CFR §§ 160, 164].

**HHS Regulations:** The HHS Regulations set forth the Federal Policy for the Protection of Human Subjects.

**HHS Regulations’ Definition of Human Subject:** A living individual about whom an investigator (whether professional or student) conducting Research obtains: (a) data through Intervention or Interaction with the individual; or (b) Identifiable Private Information. [45 CFR Section 46.102(f).]

**HHS Regulations’ Definition of Institutional Review Board:** An Institutional Review Board established in accord with and for the purposes expressed in the HHS Regulations. [45 CFR Section 46.102(g)].

**HHS Secretary:** The head of the United States Department of Health and Human Services.

**HHS:** see Department of Health and Human Services.

**HIPAA Authorization:** The signed authorization which must be provided by an individual before a covered entity can use his/her PHI for research purposes. There are several areas where authorizations are likely to come into use. These areas include psychotherapy notes, research (except where waived by an IRB or privacy board determination) marketing, fundraising, and general requests for the release of protected health information (such as information required as part of an insurance coverage application). [45 CFR § 164.508].

**HIPAA Privacy Officer:** The individual responsible for developing, implementing, and maintaining the Privacy Policies and Procedures regarding the privacy of Protected
Health Information (PHI). The Privacy Officer is responsible for compliance with the HIPAA Privacy Rule for Emory. [45 CFR. § 164.530(a)].

HIPAA Privacy Policies: Emory’s policies and procedures that are developed to make Emory compliant with the HIPAA standards, implementation specifications, and other requirements of the HIPAA Privacy Regulations.


HIPAA Privacy Rule: The Privacy Rule, at 45 CFR §§ 160 and 164, establishes a category of health information, defined as protected health information (PHI), that a covered entity may only use or disclose to others in certain circumstances and under certain conditions. In general, the Privacy Rule requires an individual to provide signed permission, known as an Authorization under section 164.508 of the Privacy Rule, before a covered entity can use or disclose the individual’s PHI for research purposes.

HIPAA Regulations: The federal regulations found at 45 CFR Parts 160 and 164.

HIPAA Security Officer: The individual responsible for development, implementation, and oversight of the organization’s security policies and procedures as they relate to patient health information.

HIPAA Security Policies: Policies and procedures, to manage the selection, development, implementation, and maintenance of security measures to protect electronic protected health information and to manage the conduct of the covered entity’s workforce in relation to the protection of that information.


HIPAA Security Rule Policies: The Security Rule is intended to ensure the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of all ePHI an organization creates, receives, maintains, or transmits; protect against threats or hazards to the security or integrity of such information; protect against uses or disclosure of such information that are not permitted or required by the Privacy Rule; and ensure compliance by a covered entity’s workforce. Unlike the HIPAA Privacy Rule, which applies to protected health information (PHI) in "any form or medium," the Security Rule covers only PHI that is electronically stored or transmitted by covered entities. (Hence the abbreviation ePHI). Although protection against unauthorized use or disclosure is also a core goal here, this standard aims at assuring the integrity and availability of electronic PHI too. As such, the Security Rule addresses issues such as data backup, disaster recovery and emergency operations. The three key areas to satisfying HIPAA security are administrative safeguards (process and documentation), technical safeguards (methods for securing systems containing ePHI), and physical safeguards (ensuring that facility and environmental factors do not impact systems contaminant ePHI).

HIPAA Waiver/Waivers of HIPAA Authorization: In certain circumstances, the Emory IRB may grant a complete or partial waiver of the HIPAA Authorization requirement and permit a researcher working in or receiving information from an Emory Covered Component to access identifiable health information without a subject’s written HIPAA Authorization.
The IRB will not grant an alteration or waiver of the HIPAA Authorization requirement, in whole or in part, unless the researcher has submitted a HIPAA Waiver Application that establishes that specific “Waiver Criteria” are met.

**HIPAA:** see *Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act.*

**Human Fetal Material:** Material obtained from a dead Fetus after Delivery, including, but no limited to, macerated fetal material and/or cells, tissue or organs excised from a Dead Fetus. [45 CFR § 46.206(a)]

**Human Fetal Tissue, Embryonic Tissue or Cell Research:** Research that involves human embryonic stem cells, germ cells, stem cell-derived test articles and/or the transplantation of Human Fetal Tissue for therapeutic purposes.

**Human Fetal Tissue:** Tissue or cells obtained from a dead human embryo or Fetus after a spontaneous or induced abortion, or after a stillbirth. [42 USC § 498A(g)].

**Human Fetal/Embryonic Tissue or Cell Research:** Research that involves human embryonic stem cells, germ cells, stem cell-derived test articles and/or the transplantation of Human Fetal Tissue for therapeutic purposes.

**Human Research Protection Program (HRPP):** The Emory HRPP is a multi-tiered program involving the administration of the University, the *Institutional Official*, the *Institutional Review Board*, other research administrative and compliance offices, investigators and research support staff. The HRPP includes mechanisms to:

- Establish a formal process to monitor, evaluate and continually improve the protection of human research participants.
- Dedicate resources sufficient to do so.
- Educate investigators and research staff about their ethical responsibility to protect research participants.
- When appropriate, intervene in research and/or respond directly to concerns of research participants.

Emory University fosters a *Research* environment that promotes the respect for the rights and welfare of individuals recruited for, or participating in, *Research* conducted by or under the auspices of Emory University. Emory University is guided by applicable laws, regulations and principles in its review and conduct of *Human Subjects Research.* To fulfill this mission, Emory University has established a Human Research Protection Program. The mission of the Emory HRPP is:

- To safeguard and promote the dignity and well-being of participants in research conducted at or by Emory by assuring their rights, safety and welfare are protected;
- To provide timely and high quality review and monitoring of human subjects research; and
- To facilitate excellence in human subjects research by providing accurate guidance and education to Emory investigators, IRB members, and research officials.
- To ensure compliance with all regulatory and ethical obligations involved in Human Subjects Research conducted at or by Emory.
Human Subject(s): An individual who meets the definition of this term: (a) as set forth in the HHS Regulations (specified below); (b) and, for projects subject to FDA Regulations, the definition of this term as set forth in the FDA Regulations (specified below); and (c) for projects subject to a U.S. Department of Defense (DOD) Addendum the definition of Research Involving a Human as an Experimental Subject (specified below).

Human Subjects Research: Research that involves Human Subjects, including, for protocols subject to a DOD Addendum, Research Involving a Human Being as an Experimental Subjects.

Human Subjects Research (DOD Definition): Research that involves Human Subjects and/or for research projects conducted by or at Emory University that are covered by an U.S. Department of Defense (DOD) Addendum, Research Involving a Human Being as an Experimental Subject (defined below).

Human Subject (FDA Definition): An individual who is or becomes a participant in Research, either as a recipient of the Test Article or as a control. A subject may be either a healthy human or a patient. [21 CFR Section 50.3(g)]. When medical device research involves in vitro diagnostics and unidentified tissue specimens, the FDA defines the unidentified tissue specimens as human subjects.

Human Subject (HHS Definition): A living individual about whom an investigator (whether professional or student) conducting Research obtains: (a) data through Intervention or Interaction with the individual; or (b) Identifiable Private Information. [45 CFR Section 46.102(f).]

Human Subjects’ Legally Authorized Representatives: see Legally Authorized Representative.

Humanitarian Use Device (HUD) means a medical device intended to benefit patients in the treatment or diagnosis of a disease or condition that affects or is manifested in fewer than 4,000 individuals in the United States per year. [21 CFR 814.3(n)].

Humanitarian Use Device Exemptions (HDEs) are exemptions provided by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to allow the use and marketing of an investigational device that is “intended to benefit patients in the treatment and diagnosis of diseases or conditions that affect or are manifested in fewer than 4,000 individuals per year in the United States.” [21 CFR 814.3(n)].

Immediately Life-Threatening Disease or Condition: A stage of disease in which there is reasonably likelihood that death will occur within a matter of months or in which premature death is likely without early treatment.

Individual Investigator Agreement (IIA): A mechanism wherein an institution holding a FWA may extend the applicability of its FWA to cover two types of collaborating individual investigators: independent or institutional. Investigators covered by an IIA may not be an employee or agent of the assured institution and must be conducting the collaborative research activities outside the facilities of the assured institution. Independent investigators must furthermore not be an employee or agent of any institution with respect to his or her involvement in the research being conducted by the assured institution. Institutional investigators must furthermore be acting an
employee or agent of a non-assured institution which does not routinely conduct human subjects research.

**Individually Identifiable Health Information**: Health Information including demographic information, that identifies the individual or with respect to which there is a reasonable basis to believe the information can be used to identify the individual.

**Individually Identifiable Private Information**: Information that is a subset of health information, including demographic information collected from an individual, and:(1) Is created or received by a health care provider, health plan, employer, or health care clearinghouse; and (2) Relates to the past, present, or future physical or mental health or condition of an individual; the provision of health care to an individual; or the past, present, or future payment for the provision of health care to an individual; and (i) That identifies the individual; or (ii) With respect to which there is a reasonable basis to believe the information can be used to identify the individual. [42 C.F.R. § 160.103].

**Individually Identifiable**: Information in a form such that the identity of the Human Subject is or may readily be ascertained by the Investigator or associated with the information. [45 CFR Section 46.102(f)].

**Informed Consent**: A person's voluntary agreement, based upon adequate knowledge and understanding of relevant information, to participate in research or to undergo a diagnostic, therapeutic, or preventive procedure. In giving informed consent, participants may not waive or appear to waive any of their legal rights, or release or appear to release the investigator, the sponsor, the institution or agents thereof from liability for negligence. [21 CFR 50.20 and 50.25, 45 CFR § 46.116]

**Institutional Official (IO)**. The IO is the university official responsible for ensuring that the Emory HRPP has the resources and support necessary to comply with all federal regulations and guidelines that govern human subjects research. The IO is legally authorized to represent the institution, is the signatory official for all Assurances, and assumes the obligations of the institution’s Assurance. The IO is the point of contact for correspondence addressing human subjects research with OHRP and FDA. For AVAMC Research, the IO is the Medical Center Director of the AVAMC.

**Institutional Privacy Board**: Any board, committee or other group formally designated by an institution to determine whether an activity in question requires compliance with HIPAA Privacy Policies, and if so the processes and procedures that must be followed.

**Institutional Review Board (IRB)**: A convened group that meets the definition of this term as set forth in the HHS Regulations (specified below) and, for projects subject to FDA Regulations, the definition of the term as set forth in the FDA Regulations (specified below): HHS Regulations’ Definition of Institutional Review Board: An Institutional Review Board established in accord with and for the purposes expressed in the HHS Regulations. [45 CFR Section 46.102(g)]. FDA Regulations’ Definition of Institutional Review Board: Any board, committee or other group formally designated by an institution to review, to approve the initiation of, and to conduct periodic review of, biomedical Research involving Human Subjects. The primary purpose of such review is to assure the protection of the rights and welfare of the Human Subjects. This term has the meaning as the phrase “institutional review committee as used in Section 520(g) of the FDA Act. [21 CFR Section 56.102(g)].
Interaction: Interaction includes communication or interpersonal contact between investigator and Human Subject. [45 CFR Section 46.102(f)].

Intervention: Both physical procedures, by which data are gathered (e.g., venipuncture), and manipulations of the Human Subject’s or the Human Subject’s environment that are performed for Human Subjects Research purposes. Intervention includes communication or interpersonal contact between Investigator and Human Subject. [45 CFR Section 46.102(f)].

Investigational Device Exemption (IDE) An IDE allows an Investigational Device to be used in a clinical study in order to collect the safety and effectiveness data required to support a Premarket Approval (PMA) application or a Premarket Notification submission to the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). [21 CFR § 812(c)].

Investigational Device: means a device, including a transitional device that is the object of an investigation. [21 CFR § 812.3(g)] An investigational device is permitted by the FDA to be tested in humans but not yet determined to be safe and effective for a particular use in the general population and not yet licensed for marketing.

Investigational Drug or Investigational New Drug: An Investigational Drug or Investigational New Drug means a new drug or biological drug that is used in a clinical investigations or a biological product that is used in vitro for diagnostic purposes. [21 CFR § 312.3(b)]

Investigational New Drug Application: An application that must be submitted to the FDA before a drug can be studied in humans. This application includes results of previous experiments; how, where, and by whom the new studies will be conducted; the chemical structure of the compound; how it is thought to work in the body; any toxic effects found in animal studies; and how the compound is manufactured. [21 CFR § 312]

Investigator (or Researcher): A person (whether professional or student) who conducts Research. Any person (including but not limited to the Primary Investigator, any collaborator, co-investigator, staff member, student or visiting professor) who is responsible for the design, conduct or reporting of the Research project or proposed Research project. When an FDA-regulated item is involved, it means an individual who actually conducts a clinical investigation (i.e., under whose immediate direction the test article is administered or dispensed to, or used involving, a subject) or, in the event of an investigation conducted by a team of individuals, is the responsible leader of that team [21 CFR § 56.102(h)]. For purposes of the Conflict of Interest Policy, Investigator shall include the Investigator’s spouse or domestic partner and dependent children. [See 42 CFR Section 50.603 & 45 CFR Section 94.3].

IO: see Institutional Official

IRB Committees: The committees who hold regularly scheduled meetings for the purpose of providing initial and continuing review for Research protocols that come before the Emory IRB and for conducting IRB business.

Legal Guardian: An individual who is authorized under applicable State or local law to consent on behalf of a Child to general medical care, [45 CFR 46.402(e)] or when an FDA-regulated item is involved, to consent on behalf of a Child to general medical care when general medical care includes participation in Research, or who is authorized to consent on behalf of a Child to participate in Research [21 CFR 50.3(q)]. [NOTE: In Georgia, the
Guardian of a Minor is a person who has a legal relationship with a Minor in which the person is given responsibility for the care of the Minor. For Research conducted in jurisdictions other than Georgia, the Research must comply with the laws of the jurisdiction in which the Research is conducted. Legal counsel for the University will provide assistance with regard to making determinations as to applicable law.

Legally Authorized Representative: An individual or judicial or other body authorized under applicable law to consent on behalf of a prospective subject to the subject’s participation in the procedures involved in the Research. [45 CFR Section 46.102(c), 21 CFR § 50.3(l)]

Life-Threatening Adverse Experience: Any Adverse Experience that places the patient or subject, in the view of the Investigator, at immediate risk or death from the reaction as it occurred.

Medical Device: Any health care product that does not achieve its primary intended purpose by chemical action or by being metabolized. [21 U.S.C. § 321(h)].

Minimal Risk: The probability and magnitude of harm or discomfort anticipated in the Research are not greater than and of themselves than those ordinarily encountered in daily life or during the performance or routine physical or psychological examination or tests. [45 CFR Section 46.102(i); 21 CFR Sections 50.3(k) & 56.102(i)]. For Research involving Prisoners, Minimal Risk is defined as the probability and magnitude of physical or psychological harm that is normally encountered in the daily lives, or in the routine medical, dental, or psychological examination of healthy persons. For Research funded or conducted by the Department of Defense, the phrase “ordinarily encountered in daily life or during the performance of routine physical or physiological examinations or tests” is not interpreted to include the inherent risks certain categories of human subjects face in their everyday life (for example, in their work environment or through having a medical condition).

Minimum Necessary Rule: In determining the type and scope of the PHI for which the IRB determines use or access under a Waiver of HIPAA Authorization is necessary, the IRB must limit access to only that PHI which is reasonably necessary to accomplish the purpose for which the request is made. For example, if the research requires access only to certain test results in order to accomplish the purpose of the research, the IRB should deny a request by the researcher for access to the entire medical record. If an Emory Covered Component is disclosing the PHI, it may rely on a researcher’s documentation or representations that the information being requested is the minimum necessary if the documentation/representations have been reviewed by the IRB and reliance is reasonable under the circumstances.

Minor: A person who has not attained the legal age of majority under the applicable law of the jurisdiction in which the Research will be conducted. In the State of Georgia the legal age of majority is 18 years of age.

Neglect: The absence or omission of Essential Services to the degree that it harms or threatens with harm the physical or emotional health of a Disabled Adult or Elder Person.

Neonate: A newborn. [21 CFR § 46.202(d)].

Non-Compliance: Failure to comply with any of the regulations and policies in these P&Ps and failure to follow the determinations of the IRB. Non-compliance may be minor or
sporadic or it may be serious and/or continuing. Non-Compliance can be on the part of Researchers, staff, other employees, and of the IRB.

**Non-Scientist Member:** Member of an IRB who does not have a scientific background, but may be affiliated with the institution [45 CFR § 46.107(c); and, 21 CFR § 56.107(c)]. At least one nonscientist member must be present at convened meetings to approve research [45 CFR § 46.108(b); and, 21 CFR § 56.108(c)].

**Non-Significant Risk Device:** A device that does not pose a significant risk to human subjects. Examples of Non-Significant Risk Devices include most daily wear contact lenses and Foley catheters. [21 CFR § 812.3]

**Nonviable Neonate:** A Neonate after Delivery that, although living, is not Viable. [45 CFR § 46.202(e)].

**Not Associated:** Any experience or event for which there is evidence that it was Definitely Associated with a cause other than the investigational drug/agent/therapy.

**Not Within the Definition of Research:** Activities that do not meet the statutory definition of research as set forth in [45 CFR § 46.102.]

**Obtaining:** Means receiving or accessing identifiable private information or identifiable specimens for Research purposes.

**Office of Human Research Protections (OHRP):** The administrative agency that oversees the United States' system for protecting volunteers in research conducted or supported by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS).

**Other Research Review Committees:** Separate Emory University and non-Emory University Committees (collectively referred to in this section as the “Other Research Review Committees”) that have responsibilities with regard to the review of Research, including Human Subjects Research, conducted at Emory University, by Emory University faculty, staff or students, or using Emory University resources. These include (a) Emory University Radiation Safety Committee (RSC); (b) Emory University Institutional Health & Biosafety Committee (IHBC); (c) Emory University Conflicts of Interest Committee(s); and (d) National Institutes of Health (NIH) Recombinant DNA Advisory Committee (RAC).

**Parent:** A Child’s biological or adoptive mother or father. [45 CFR § 46.402(d)].

**Pediatrics Designation:** A classification assigned to research protocols involving children as Human Subjects.

**Periodically Reportable:** Events that the PI is required to report to the IRB within a certain time frame, which is most commonly at the time of renewal.

**Permission:** Agreement of the Parent(s) or Guardian(s) to participation of their Child or ward in Research. [45 CFR § 46.402 (c)].

**PHI:** see Protected Health Information.

**PI:** see Principal Investigator.

**PI's Research:** The Principal Investigators Research based on the design set forth in the Research Protocol and approved by the Emory IRB.
Planned Emergency Research is the planned conduct of Research in life-threatening, emergency situation in which the IRB has approved the waiver of informed consent.

Policy & Procedures (P&P) Subcommittee: A committee made up of at least three members of the IRB whose duty it will be, at least yearly, to participate in the review and revision of the IRB’s Policies and Procedures.

Pregnancy: The period of time from implantation until delivery. A woman shall be assumed to be pregnant if she exhibits any of the pertinent presumptive signs of pregnancy, such as missed menses, until the results of a pregnancy test are negative or until delivery. [45 CFR Section 46.202(f)]

Pregnant Woman: A woman who is experiencing Pregnancy.

Premarket Notification: An application submitted to the FDA to demonstrate that the medical device to be marketed is substantially equivalent to a legally marketed device that was or is currently on the U.S. market. [21 CFR § 807]

Pre-marketing Approval: (PMA) FDA approval granted after a drug’s manufacturer (the “Sponsor”) has demonstrated the safety and effectiveness of the drug to the FDA through data gathered in clinical investigations [21 CFR § 814]

Promptly Reportable: Events that the PI is required to report to the IRB within 10 business days if serious and 30 calendar days if not serious.

Protocol Deviations: A deviation is a departure from the IRB-approved protocol. Deviations may represent minor departures and/or non-compliance.

Principal Investigator (PI): The scientist or scholar with ultimate responsibility for the design and conduct of a research project.

Prisoner Representative: A member of the IRB who is knowledgeable about and experienced in working with Prisoners. [45 CFR § 46.107(a)]

Prisoner: Any individual involuntarily confined or detained in a penal institution. The term is intended to encompass individuals sentenced to such an institution under a criminal or civil statute, individuals detained in other facilities by virtue of statutes or commitment procedures which provide alternatives to criminal prosecution or incarceration in a penal institution, and individuals detained pending arraignment, trial or sentencing. [45 CFR § 46.303(c)].

Prisoner of War: For purposes of Research subject to a DOD Addendum that incorporates requirements specific to the Department of the Navy, a Prisoner of War is a detained person as defined in Articles 4 and 5 of the Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of August 12, 1949. In particular, one who, while engaged in combat under orders of his government, is captured by the armed forces of the enemy. For purposes of Research subject to a DOD Addendum from a DOD unit other than the Department of the Navy, that unit’s definition of the term Prisoner of War shall apply.

Privacy Officer: The individual who oversees all ongoing activities related to the development, implementation, maintenance of, and adherence to the organization’s policies and procedures covering the privacy of, and access to, patient health information in
compliance with federal and state laws and the healthcare organization’s information privacy practices.

**Private Information:** Information about behavior that occurs in a context in which an individual can reasonably expect that no observation or recording is taking place, and information which has been provided for specific purposes by an individual and which the individual can reasonably expect will not be made public (for example, a medical record). Private Information must be Individually Identifiable in order for the obtaining the information to constitute Human Subjects Research. [45 CFR Section 46.102(f)].

**Prospective:** Research utilizing human participants’ specimens/data that will be collected after the Research protocol is approved by the IRB.

**Protected Health Information (PHI):** Individually Identifiable Health Information that a Covered Entity transmits or maintains in electronic media, or in any other form or medium, excluding Individually Identifiable Health Information in records covered by the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA); certain student health records as defined in FERPA at 20 U.S.C. 1232g(a)(4)(B)(iv); employment records held by a Covered Entity in its role as employer; and records regarding a person who has been deceased for more than 50 years.

**Protective Services:** Services necessary to protect a Disabled Adult or Elder Person from Adult Abuse. Such services shall include, but not be limited to, evaluation of the need for services and mobilization of essential services on behalf of a Disabled Adult or Elder Person.

**Protocol Analyst:** The individual who, in consultation with the IRB Director or Assistant Director, shall make a preliminary review of Research protocols and other submissions to determine applicability of HIPAA Privacy Policies and forward recommendations in this regard to IRB Chair or Vice Chair. Protocol Analysts shall consult with the Emory University Privacy Officer as necessary with regard to matters concerning compliance with HIPAA regulations.

**Protocol Application:** The initial submission of a human subjects research plan by an investigator. All new protocol applications to the Emory IRB are currently filed through the eIRB online system found at: https://eresearch.emory.edu/Emory. Materials must include, but are not limited to, the scientific plan, informed consent and HIPAA materials, recruiting plan and materials, data and safety monitoring plan, site approval letters, and data collection instruments such as questionnaires.

**Psychotherapy Notes:** Notes recorded (in any medium) by a health care provider who is a mental health professional documenting or analyzing the contents of conversation during a private counseling session or a group, joint, or family counseling session and that are separated from the rest of the individual’s medical record. Psychotherapy notes exclude medication prescription and monitoring, counseling session start and stop times, the modalities and frequencies of treatment furnished, results of clinical tests, and any summary of the following items: diagnosis, functional status, the treatment plan, symptoms, prognosis, and progress to date.

**Quorum:** A quorum is the minimum number of members that must be present to conduct official Emory IRB business. A Quorum shall be established when the following criteria are met: (a) a majority of the primary IRB members (or their designated alternates) are
present (e.g., Quorum for an IRB Committee of sixteen (16) primary members would be nine (9)); (b) one of the voting members present is a non-Emory non-scientist (see Section 21, IRB Membership); (c) if a protocol involving an FDA-regulated article is being reviewed, then a licensed physician must be present; and (d) if AVAMC Research is being reviewed, then at least one of the AVAMC members of the IRB must be present during the review of such Research.

RDC: see Research and Development Committee.

Report of Non-Compliance: An allegation of Non-Compliance that is can reasonably be taken as true without the need for further investigation (e.g., self-report of Non-Compliance received from PI).

Research and Development Committee (RDC): A Committee operated by VAMC that is responsible for reviewing and approving all human subjects research projects that take place at the VAMC.

Research Protocol Analysts: see Protocol Analyst.

Research protocols: The formal design or plan of an experiment or research activity. The protocol includes a description of the research design or methodology to be employed, the eligibility requirements for prospective subjects and controls, the treatment regimen(s), and the proposed methods of analysis that will be performed on the collected data.

Research: A Clinical Investigation (as defined above) or a Systematic Investigation, including research development, testing and evaluation, designed to develop or contribute to Generalizable Knowledge. [45 CFR § 46.102(d); 45 CFR § 164.501]. Activities which meet this definition constitute Research for purposes of the HHS Regulations whether or not they are conducted or supported under a program which is considered Research for other purposes. For example, some demonstration and service programs may include Research activities. [45 CFR § 102(d)]. For the purposes of the COI Policy, this term encompasses basic and applied Research as well as product testing and development. The term includes, but is not limited to, any activity for which Research funding is available from a Public Health Service component that awards funds under grants, cooperative agreements or otherwise. For the purposes of FDA regulations, the terms research, clinical research, clinical study, study, and clinical investigation are synonymous [21 CFR 50.3 (c), 21 CFR 56.102(c)].

Research Involving a Human Being as an Experimental Subject: For projects subject to a United States Department of Defense (DOD) Addendum, this term means an activity, for research purposes, where there is an intervention or interaction with a human being for the primary purpose of obtaining data regarding the effect of the intervention or interaction. Examples of interventions or interactions include, but are not limited to, a physical procedure, a drug, a manipulation of the subject or subject’s environment, the withholding of an intervention that would have been undertaken if not for the research purpose. This term does not include:

Activities carried out for the purposes of diagnosis, treatment or prevention of injury and disease in members of the Armed Forces and other mission essential personnel under Force Health Protection programs of the DOD.
Authorized health and medical activities as part of the reasonable practice of medicine or other health professions.

Monitoring for compliance of individuals and organizations with requirements applicable to military, civilian or contractor personnel or to organizational units. This includes activities such as drug testing, occupational health and safety monitoring and security clearance reviews.

**Researcher:** see investigator.

**Retrospective: Research** utilizing human participants’ specimens/data that were previously collected (i.e., on the shelf) before the Research was approved by the IRB.

**SAE:** see serious adverse event.

**Select Agents:** Those biological agents listed in 7 CFR § 331, 9 CFR § 121, and 42 CFR § 73. The agents and toxins subject to requirements under these Sections are those that have the potential to pose a severe threat to public health and safety.

**Senior Research Protocol Analysts:** The member of the Emory IRB whose duty it is to provide guidance to PIs regarding consent forms and process; HIPAA forms; and changes to protocols recommended by the IRB Chair, Vice Chair, or IRB Committee members.

**Sensitive Information:** Sensitive Information is information regarding sexual attitudes, preferences or practices; information relating to the use of alcohol, drugs or other addictive products; information regarding an individual’s psychological well-being or mental health; genetic information or tissue samples; or information that if released might be damaging to an individuals’ financial standing, employability or reputation within the community or might lead to social stigmatization or discrimination.

**Serious Adverse Event (SAE):** Any adverse experiences occurring that result in any of the following outcomes: death, a life-threatening adverse experience, inpatient hospitalization or prolongation of existing hospitalization, a persistent or significant disability/incapacity, or a congenital anomaly/birth defect. For the purposes of this policy, death is never expected.

**Serious Disease or Condition:** A disease or condition associated with morbidity that has substantial impact on day-to-day functioning. Short-lived and self-limiting morbidity will usually not be sufficient, but the morbidity need not be irreversible, provided it is persistent or recurrent. Whether a disease or condition is serious is a matter of clinical judgment, based on its impact on such factors as survival, day-to-day functioning, or the likelihood that the disease, if left untreated, will progress from a less severe condition to a more serious one.

**Serious Non-Compliance:** Failure to follow any of the regulations and policies described in these P&Ps of failure to follow the determination of the IRB and which, in the judgment of either the IRB Chair or the convened IRB, increases risks to participants, decreases potential benefits, or compromises the integrity of the Human Research Protections Program. Research being conducted without prior IRB approval is considered Serious Non-Compliance.
Serious: Significant harm or increased risk for human subjects or others, including the following circumstances: findings from tests in laboratory animals that suggest a significant risk for humans (including reports of mutagenicity, teratogenicity or carcinogenicity); placing the subject at immediate risk of death; in-patient hospitalization or prolongation of existing hospitalization; persistent or significant disability or incapacity; congenital anomaly/birth defect; or any important medical event, when based upon appropriate medical judgment, the event may jeopardize the subject’s health or welfare and may require medical or surgical intervention to prevent death, life-threatening adverse experience, in-patient hospitalization, prolongation of existing hospitalization, persistent or significant disability or incapacity, or congenital anomaly or birth defect.

Sexual Abuse: A person’s employing, using, persuading, inducing, enticing, or coercing any Minor who is not that person’s spouse to engage in any act which involves: Sexual intercourse, including genital-genital, oral-genital, anal-genital, or oral-anal, whether between persons of the same or opposite sex; Bestiality; Masturbation; Lewd exhibition of the genitals or pubic area of any person; Flagellation or torture by or upon a person who is nude; Condition of being fettered, bound, or otherwise physically restrained on the part of a person who is nude; Physical contact in an act of apparent sexual stimulation or gratification with any person’s clothed or unclothed genitals, pubic area, or buttocks or with a female’s clothed or unclothed breasts; Defecation or urination for the purpose of sexual stimulation; or Penetration of the vagina or rectum by any object except when done as part of a recognized medical procedure. Sexual Abuse shall not include consensual sex acts involving persons of the opposite sex when the sex acts are between minors or between a minor and an Adult who is not more than five years older than the Minor. This provision shall not be deemed or construed to repeal any law concerning the age or capacity to consent.

Sexual Exploitation: Conduct by a Child’s Parent or caretaker who allows, permits, encourages, or requires that Child to engage in: Prostitution, as defined in Official Code of Georgia Annotated (O.C.G.A.) Section 16-6-9; or Sexually explicit conduct for the purpose of producing any visual or print medium depicting such conduct, as defined in O.C.G.A. Section 16-12-100.

Short Form: A written consent document stating that the elements of informed consent required by 45 CFR § 46.116 have been presented orally to the subject or the subject's legally authorized representative. [45 CFR § 46.117(b)(2)].

Significant Financial Interest: means holding any management position (e.g., director, officer, trustee, management employee) in a for-profit entity, or anything of monetary value, including but not limited to, gifts to the Investigator, salary or other payments for services (e.g., consulting fees or honoraria); equity interests (e.g., stocks, stock options or other ownership interests); receipt of patent/copyright licensing fees or royalties; and technology related to an Investigator’s teaching, research, administrative, or clinical duties at Emory.

The following items are NOT considered to be a Significant Financial Interest:

(a) Salary or other payments for services from Emory University.
(b) Gifts to Emory University provided the Investigator does not have signing authority for the Emory account.

(c) Income from non-promotional educational seminars, lectures, or teaching engagements sponsored and paid for by governmental entities.

(d) Income from service on advisory committees or review panels established by and paid for by governmental entities.

(e) Salary or other Compensation that when aggregated for the Investigator and the Investigator’s spouse or domestic partner and dependent children currently and over the next 12 months are less than $5,000 UNLESS the value of the Compensation can be affected by the Investigator’s Research, in which case ANY amount of Compensation shall be considered to be a Significant Financial Interest.

(f) Equity interests in publicly traded companies [1], excluding mutual funds, that are less than $5,000 in value as determined through reference to public prices or other reasonable measures of fair market value.

[1] A publicly traded company is one whose stock is traded on a stock exchange such as NYSE, NASDAQ, etc. All equity holdings in privately held companies related to Research must be reported.

**Significant Financial Interest Requiring Disclosure** means, for non-PHS projects, an Investigator’s Significant Financial Interest (a) that would reasonably appear to be affected by the Research on which the Investigator is working; or (b) that is held in an entity whose financial interests would reasonably appear to be affected by the Investigator’s Research.

PHS Investigators must disclose all Significant Financial Interests related to their Institutional Responsibilities – teaching, research, clinical or administrative duties. Additionally, they must disclose any reimbursed or sponsored travel (i.e., the travel was paid for on their behalf, but not reimbursed to them by Emory), related to their administrative, clinical, or teaching duties at Emory. It does not include travel that is reimbursed or sponsored by the following:

- Federal, state, or local government agency,
- an Institution of higher education,
- academic teaching hospital,
- medical center, or
- research institute that is affiliated with an Institution of a higher education.

**Significant Risk Device:** A Investigational Medical Device that (i) is intended as an implant and presents a potential for serious risk to the health, safety or welfare of a subject; (ii) is for use in supporting or sustaining human life and represents a potential for serious risk to the health, safety or welfare of a subject; (iii) is for a use of substantial importance in diagnosing, curing, mitigating, or treating disease or otherwise preventing impairment of human health and presents a potential for serious risk to the health safety or welfare of a subject; or (iv) otherwise presents a potential for serious risk to a subject. Examples
of Significant Risk Devices include orthopedic implants, and cardiac pacemakers. [21 CFR § 812.3(m)].

**Sponsor:** A person who takes responsibility for and initiates a clinical investigation. The sponsor may be an individual or pharmaceutical company, governmental agency, academic institution, private organization, or other organization. The sponsor does not actually conduct the investigation unless the sponsor is a sponsor-investigator. [21 CFR § 312.3].

**Study Personnel:** Includes principal investigators, co-investigators, research coordinators, and any other research team members, including students, who have contact with research participants and/or their research data and identifiers for the conduct of the study. In general, individuals participating in the informed consent process are considered to be Study personnel. In general, individuals whose primary contact with the subject is in the context of clinical care, or who function solely as translators, are not considered Study personnel if they play no further role in the research.

**Suspend/Suspension:** An action taken by the IRB for any reason to temporarily withdraw approval for some or all Research activities short of permanently withdrawing approval for all Research activities. Suspended protocols are considered open (though not for enrollment or other Research activities), and the IRB will advise on a case-by-case basis if continuing review applications are required during a period of Suspension.

**Systematic Investigation:** An activity that involves a prospective Research plan which incorporates data collection, either quantitative or qualitative, and data analysis to answer a Research question.

**Tabled:** The IRB, for any reason, removes the item from the agenda or does not carry on discussion to a vote.

**Terminate/Termination:** An action taken by the IRB for any reason to permanently withdraw approval for all Research activities (except for those follow up procedures which are necessary to protect the health or welfare of the subjects). Terminated protocols are considered closed and do not require Continuing Review.

**Test Article.** A test article is a drug, device, or other article including a biological product used in clinical investigations involving human subjects or their specimens.

**Treatment Use of an Investigational New Drug:** The Treatment Use provisions of the FDA Regulations permit certain Investigational New Drugs to be used for the treatment of patients who are not enrolled as subject under the IND under which the drug is being studied. In general, in the case of a serious disease, the FDA may permit drugs to be made available for Treatment Use during Phase 3 clinical investigations or after all clinical trials have been completed, but before approval is granted. In the case of lifethreatening illnesses, a drug may be made available for Treatment Use earlier than Phase 3 clinical investigations, but not ordinarily earlier than Phase 2 trials. [21 CFR § 312.34.]

**Treatment Use Protocol:** Treatment Use of a drug may be made under a Treatment Use Protocol obtained by the Sponsor. The Sponsor who holds the IND under which the Investigational Drug is being studied may serve as a Sponsor for the Treatment Use of the drug by submitting a Treatment Use Protocol to the FDA for approval. Licensed physicians who receive the Investigational Drug for use under a Treatment Use Protocol
are considered to be PIs, and must meet all PI obligations. This mechanism allows promising investigational drugs to be used in "expanded access" protocols—relatively unrestricted studies in which the intent is both to learn more about the drugs, especially their safety, and to provide treatment for people with immediately life-threatening or otherwise serious diseases for which there is no real alternative. These expanded access protocols also require researchers to formally investigate the drugs in well-controlled studies and to supply some evidence that the drugs are likely to be helpful. The drugs cannot expose patients to unreasonable risk. [21 CFR § 312.34.]

**Unanticipated Adverse Drug Experience:** An Unexpected Adverse Experience that is associated with the use of a drug, such that there is a reasonable possibility that the experience may have been caused by the drug.

**Unanticipated Event:** An event or experience that has not been previously observed and/or described in the documents describing risks associated with the study or in the investigator brochure (rather than from the perspective of such experience not being anticipated from the properties of the investigational item).

**Unanticipated and Unexpected, as applied to VA Research:** The terms “unanticipated” and “unexpected” refer to an event or problem in VA research that is new or greater than previously known in terms of nature, severity, or frequency, given the procedures described in protocol-related documents and the characteristics of the study population (VHA HANDBOOK 1058.01, under DEFINITIONS §4 BB.P6).

**Unanticipated Problem Involving Risks to Participants or Others** (referred to herein as **UP**): Any unexpected problem related to the Research, including any Unexpected Adverse Experience, whether Serious or not, that affects the rights, safety or welfare of subject or others or that significantly impacts the integrity of the Research data. The problem may be physical, or it could involve social harm or risk (i.e., breach of confidentiality or harm to a subject’s reputation) or psychological or legal harm or risk thereof in the future. The problem may or may not involve drugs or devices. Examples: (a) breach of confidentiality stemming from theft of laptop computer containing identifiable data; (b) protocol violations; (c) complaints about research procedures or treatment by research study personnel.

*(Please note: it is important to bear in mind that a UP as defined here is not the opposite of an Anticipated Problem (defined above). The key distinction lies in the qualifying phrase “involving risk to participants or others.” By contrast, the true opposite of an Anticipated Problem would be an Adverse Experience or event (including an experience or event associated with a drug or device) that negatively affects the rights, safety or welfare of subjects and that is not described as such in the materials describing risks associated with the study.)*

**Unexpected Adverse Device Effect:** Any Unexpected Adverse Experience that impacts the subject’s health or safety, or poses any life-threatening problem or death caused by, or associated with, a device, if that effect, problem or death was not previously identified in nature, severity, or degree of incidence in the investigational plan or application (including any supplement); OR any other serious Unanticipated Problem associated with a device that relates to the subjects’ rights, safety or welfare.
Unexpected Adverse Event:
any adverse event and/or reaction, the specificity or severity of which is not consistent with the informed consent, current investigator brochure or product labeling. Further it is not consistent with the risk information described in the general investigational plan or proposal.

Unexpected Adverse Experience: Any Adverse Experience, the specificity or severity of which is not consistent with the risk information described in the general investigational plan; the current IRB application for the research protocol; or the current investigator’s brochure. Examples: (a) hepatic necrosis would be unexpected (by virtue of greater severity) if the investigator brochure (or other generally accepted medical literature) only referred to elevated hepatic enzymes or hepatitis; and (b) cerebral thromboembolism and cerebral vasculitis would be unexpected (by virtue of greater specificity) if the investigator brochure only listed cerebral vascular accidents. An Unexpected Adverse Experience (including those that involve drugs or devices) may constitute an Unanticipated Problem.

Unexpected Experience: An event or experience that has not been previously observed and/or described in the documents describing risks associated with the study or in the investigator brochure.

University Research Compliance Liaison Committee URCLC) The URCLC is composed of representatives from all University units that have day-to-day operational responsibility for University Research compliance activities. The URCLC meets on a monthly basis to ensure that dialog and coordination is maintained among the various units at the University that have compliance responsibilities.

VA Regulations: The Federal Policy for the Protection of Human Subjects (the Common Rule) as adopted by the Department of Veterans Affairs and set forth in 38 CFR Part 16 and Veterans Health Administration Handbook 1200.05, which sets forth the procedures implementing the Common Rule, are collectively referred to herein as the VA Regulations. VA Research: see AVAMC Research.

VA: see Atlanta Veterans Affairs Medical Center.

Viable: A neonate who, after Delivery, is able to survive (given the benefit of available medical therapy) to the point of independently maintaining heartbeat and respiration. [45 CFR § 46.202(h)].

Vice-Chair: The Emory IRB Committee member whose duty it is to assume and perform the responsibilities of the IRB Chair in the Chair’s absence. The Vice Chair will perform other duties as delegated by the IRB Chair and as set forth elsewhere in these P&Ps. On OHRP roster, listed as Alternate Chair.

Voting Member: An IRB member whose presence during review of an item at a convened meeting is counted toward satisfaction of the compositional requirements for that review, and is therefore eligible to vote on that item.

Vulnerable Populations: This is a regulatory phrase which refers to a group of people who have some condition or situation that makes them more susceptible to coercion or undue influence [45 CFR § 46.107(a)].
Wards of the State: Children who are under the care of a governmental agency either directly or through placement in an individual or institutional foster care setting.
APPENDIX #1:

Name of Institutional Official: David Wynes, Ph.D. Vice President for Research Administration, Emory University
APPENDIX #2:

CHAIR:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clifford Gunthel, M.D.</td>
<td>Assoc. Professor, Infectious Disease</td>
<td>Co-Chair of Overall IRB (operational structure, not reflected on OHRP roster); overall Chair of Biomedical Committee A per OHRP roster; presiding Chair of biomedical panel B1 of Cmte A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aryeh Stein, Ph.D.</td>
<td>Assoc. Professor, Global Health</td>
<td>Co-Chair of Overall IRB (operational structure, not reflected on OHRP roster); presiding Chair of biomedical/compliance panel Q of Cmte A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jill Perry-Smith</td>
<td>Assoc. Professor, Organization and Management, Goizueta Business School</td>
<td>Chair of Committee C per OHRP roster; operationally Vice Chair under Drs. Gunthel and Stein</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VICE CHAIRS PRESIDING OVER IRB PANELS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carlton Dampier, M.D.</td>
<td>Professor, Pediatrics, Hematology &amp; Oncology</td>
<td>Vice Chair, Committee A2 (Biomedical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann Haight, M.D.</td>
<td>Assist. Professor, Pediatrics, Hematology &amp; Oncology</td>
<td>Vice Chair, Committee B3 (Biomedical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amelia Langston, M.D.</td>
<td>Professor, Hematology &amp; Medical Oncology</td>
<td>Vice Chair, Committee B2 (Biomedical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susan Ray, M.D.</td>
<td>Assoc. Professor, Infectious Disease</td>
<td>Vice Chair, Committee A3 (Biomedical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larry Tune, M.D.</td>
<td>Professor, Psychiatry &amp; Behavioral Sciences</td>
<td>Vice Chair, Committee A1 (Biomedical)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>